1. **All you must know on Antecedent Basis**

Antecedent basis is not considered to be the only standard which will support the subject matter claim. Reasonably, appropriate and clear support is all that is indispensable. However, antecedent basis is one of the major problems which are encountered in a beginner patent writer claims. Depending on the claim requirement it is must to introduce each element of patent claim appropriately prior to modification and qualification of the elements.

**An Example to Understand Antecedent Basis**

Let’s say “Dynamic Movement of Shaft” in a claim is not appropriate if the “shaft” has not been introduced earlier in the claim. It means “the,” “such,” and, “said,” must not be used in the claim until and unless the following noun has ever been introduced earlier in the claim.

**Note:**  While using a definite article in the claim prior to the claim element, the exact elements must be introduced in the claim later if required.

Considering a dependent claim,  the antecedent basis out to be there in the dependent claim or any other claim on which claim depends. It is because claim includes entire claims from which it depends as per the reference. If there are multiple elements, the introduction of elements  must be in the plural to limit or distinguish among the introduced elements as a plurality. Hence, if four bulbs are being used in the invention, they must be defined in the claim as “four bulbs,” or “a plurality of wheels,”  or “at least four wheels” and many more.

**Our Approach**

We have experience of over 10 years of drafting quality patents. Our team of proficient professionals delivers high-quality patent drafting solution so that our clients own an accurate future readily enforceable patents.  Also, the drafter makes it a point that it sails through smoothly during the prosecution. To know more about services, please click on the [**link**](https://patentdraftingcatalyst.com/services/)**.**

**2.** **Why do you need a trademark monitoring?**

Trademark monitoring is important to protect trademark rights from potential infringements. It ensures that the applicant will be notified when an identical or confusingly similar mark is registered or published for acceptance thereby giving the owner an opportunity to oppose the filing.

## ****Major reasons why businesses must have a trademark monitoring service****

In order to ensure the valuable marks of businesses are protected and enforced properly trademark monitoring is important. So, here are the top reasons due to which this service is indispensable:

### ****Trademark Rights Failure****

A trademark owner may lose his/her trademark rights after failing to monitor the mark. Additionally, the trademark will degrade its brand value in the market place. It may lead to a weakening of the trademark and, in some cases; the right of a trademark may be lost entirely.

An effective trademark monitoring must be taken to avoid trademark right loss by opposing infringers if found.

In case of infringement, the applicant must enforce trademark rights using different legal methods. It includes sending of cease and desist letters, initiates opposition and cancellation process with the help of the [Trademark Trial and Appeal Board](https://www.uspto.gov/trademarks-application-process/trademark-trial-and-appeal-board).  However, the applicant can also opt for other relevant measures depending upon the situation.

### ****Inability to Enforce Against an Infringer****

Trademark enforcement can be delayed if the applicant fails to stop brand infringement even after knowing. It is known as the “equitable doctrine of laches.”  This doctrine raises a positive task for you to enforce your rights against infringers in the given time period.  Additionally, if trademark monitoring is done then the owner must be aware of infringements if any. If the answer is yes, the law gives you an opportunity to enforce your trademark duty.

### ****Reduce Business Damage****

Trademark monitoring avoidance reduces revenue. Further, leading to business demise if the infringement is effective enough. A strong monitoring plan and strategy will detect infringers early even before damaging your business identity. Also, it is good to identify and resolve the infringement as soon as possible.  Higher the amount infringer has invested in his/her business, more the probability of fight against you due to huge monetary loss and business identity damage. Here, trademark monitoring comes into action by detecting infringement at an early stage and stopping it before your business goes through financial loss due to the infringer.

## ****Why Choose Us?****

Trademark Filing Company is a prominent firm engaged in delivering best trademark registration as well as monitoring services to the clients.  Our team of experienced professionals works on customized monitoring parameters to deliver a comprehensive monitoring solution for businesses. The experts focus on coverage of all major jurisdictions globally to provide effective[trademark monitoring and filing services.](https://thetrademarkfilingcompany.com/trademark-filing-services/)

1. **What is a Utility Patent?**

Utility refers to the term that describes the usefulness of any good obtained by the user. Similarly Utility Patent means a Patent that defines the usefulness of a new or improved product, process, machinery or matter composition. It is also termed as ‘Patent for invention’.

Although Utility Patent is hard to get, consumes a lot of time, is expensive, difficult to write and understand, still it serves as a great advantage to the owner. You should be aware about [**how to write a patent**](https://patentdraftingcatalyst.com/write-patent-tips-tricks-hacks/). The Invention is labeled as ‘Patent pending’ after the submission of an application during the [**patent filing process**](https://thepatentfilingcompany.com/patent-filing-process-3-easy-steps/). If other parties tried to copy or use the invention during the ‘pending’ status, the Patentee can seek payments from them on behalf of Patent policies. This is done after the Patent gets granted.

### ****Classification of the Utility Patent****

They are divided into three subcategories according to the functioning of the invention:

* Electrical
* Mechanical
* Chemical

### ****Requirement for Filing utility patent****

If you want your invention to be eligible for the Utility Patent Filing then it must fall under the categories mentioned below:

The Invention must be Novel. It is not allowed to disclose any detail of the Invention to the public. The Invention types such as machines, processes, composition of matter, article of manufacture etc. are accepted. The Invention must be non-obvious, specific and user-friendly.

If the invention qualifies in filing for Utility Patent, it should be done without wasting much time. The one who files the Patent first is considered the Inventor.

## ****Types of Utility Patent application****

There are basically two types of Utility Patent Applications:

### ****1) Provisional Utility Patent Application****

[**Provisional Patent application**](https://thepatentfilingcompany.com/a-beginners-guide-for-provisional-patent-filing/) is used to fix a filing date. This ensures the registration of your invention and provides you a time period of 12 months for Filing for Non-provisional Patent application. It gives your invention a status of ‘Patent pending’ which helps you to prevent copying of your Invention during that period of time.

Requirements for this form are:

* Title for the Invention.
* The motive of the invention.
* Detailed description of the Invention in written.
* The steps taken for the making of Invention or components of the Invention.
* Mentioning the usefulness of the Invention for public.

### ****2) Non Provisional Utility Patent Application****

This is somewhat complex type of Patent application process. An experienced Professional should be preferred to avoid any type of error.

It must include the following key points:

* Detailed illustration of the Invention through drawings.
* An oath for the invention claiming it to be your intellectual property
* The datasheet of application.
* A statement with minimum one [**claim**](https://patentdraftingcatalyst.com/draft-accurate-patent-claim/).
* [**Fees required**](https://thepatentfilingcompany.com/patent-filing-cost/), including cost for patent search, its filing, and examination.

### ****How to file a Non Provisional utility Patent application****

1. Ensure that the idea is new and useful.
2. Then you make sure that the Invention or the elements of Invention do not disobey any segment of another Patent. This is done through a thorough Patent analysis or search.
3. In the next step you prepare the Patent application; this requires [**drafting claims**](https://patentdraftingcatalyst.com/multiple-dependent-claims-need/) and scientific details of the Invention with respect to the requirements of [**USPTO**](https://www.uspto.gov/).
4. Then you file the Patent application along with the filing fees.
5. USPTO will then assign an examiner for the application and they may ask you for further information or details and you have to act accordingly.
6. The final step is all about waiting for the decision, on getting successful you will have a Patented Invention and on rejection you can appeal for the decision later.

### ****Key points to remember while filing the Patent application****

The inventor must be named correctly. If more persons are related with the invention, then they all will be considered as combined inventors and can use the license solely.

Before the Patent is granted, it can be cross checked whether if it meets the requirements or not and even after the issuing of Patent, the invention’s validity can be questioned.

Utility Patents have 20 years validity time, but maintenance fees have to be paid every six month. If you fail to do so, your Patent might get cancelled.

## ****How TDPC serves you best?****

You can take benefits from our services and ensure proper judgment to your Invention while being in the safe hands of our expertise.

We at TDPC are always there for you with our experienced professional. Here you can easily find solutions to your every problem related to Patents and Patent drawings. We believe in precise working providing 100% customer satisfaction since the last decade.

1. **Why you need the Proofreading of Patent Claims?**

 [**Patent claims**](https://patentdraftingcatalyst.com/patent-claim-drafting-principles/) play a significant role in the application as it defines a boundary which protects the stated claims of the invention. So, it is must to draft patent claim with appropriate legal and technical knowledge. As the claim is one of the major parameters it is must for you to know- how the proofreading of patent claims is important.

## ****Proofreading of Patent Claims: Importance****

Even a minute mistake in the claims of your patent can waste your money and efforts. So, let’s discuss here the necessity of proofreading of patent claims before final submission:

#### ****To ensure no infringement & copyrights cases are missing****

“Marksman Hearing” plays a major role in this as it ensures the scope of the invention and patent claim meaning. District court local rules control the hearing to make sure that claims are drafted as per the laws of “claim construction.” Also, the court holds the authority to examine the potential patent infringements.

In order to prove infringement, the owner of the patent must have proof of adherence of patent claims to the laws. Ensuring no infringement is found is indispensable as then further application processing can be done.

#### Also read: [What is an Inferential Claim?](https://patentdraftingcatalyst.com/inferential-claim/)

#### ****To Confirm Optional & Primary Function of the Invention****

The patent claim must cover the entire important and optional invention feature on the basis of the protection type requested by the applicant. Additionally, it should incorporate the target audience, exiled institutions, and the people may dodge the laws. The target audience may include patent counsel, inventor, licensee, patent examiner and many more. So, during proofreading of patent claims, the chance of missing out any optional and primary invention functions goes down.

#### ****To ensure claim coverage****

Considering existing [**prior art**](https://thepatentsearchfirm.com/what-is-prior-art/)you need to draft your patent application broadly or narrowly. Moreover, inventor request for protection type must be incorporated. The applicant can discuss to an experienced patent attorney on how he/she can extend the claim coverage to avail maximum protection rights if required. But, it must be ensured that a patent claim is not too comprehensive and is adhering to the area of invention.

#### ****To prevent legal and language cases****

During claim drafting, it is important to present it in a comprehensive manner with complete detailed and relevant data. In art patents language is an important parameter as close attention is given to meaning recognition, scope sensitivity, etc. during the examination.

Hence, lines framing must be in a way that it shows the desired meaning of the applicant.

So, a drafter should not only consider infringements carefully but also draft an appropriate application incorporating all legal aspects and technicality.

**Also read:**[**Patent Drafting: A Primary Guide for Beginners**](https://patentdraftingcatalyst.com/patent-drafting-beginner-guide/)

#### ****To prevent rejection of patent application****

A good patent claim defines legal rights during a patent grant. Each comprehensive specification of patent ought to end with the claim defining the scope of the patent as per the Patent Act, 1970 §10(4). No matter, the type of **patent application**, the applicant gets information from examiner only after the issuance of the office action. Majorly, an applicant receives office action after the [**examination process.**](https://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/mpep/s2103.html)

However, the four major replies an applicant can get in office action is ‘Fix,’ ‘Amend,’ or ‘Try and Make’ i.e.’ FOAM.’ The patent applicant needs to make the corrections specified by the examiner in the office action or he/she can oppose the action by proving their work correct.

## ****How we can help you?****

We, at the Patent Proofreading Company, serve world class and accurate patent proofreading solution to our clients. Our team of fully skilled and professional proof-readers delivers effective patent proofreading solutions.  The experts use high-end software tools to provide our clients with comprehensive reports highlighting errors, discrepancies along with corrected suggestions. Additionally, we offer a “Certificate of Correction” if required.For our services, Visit [**The Patent Proofreading Company.**](https://thepatentproofreadingcompany.com/patent-proofreading-services/)

1. **Prior-Art Documents required for filing an IDS**

Prior-art documents play a significant role in the IDS filing procedure. Under U.S patent law it is must for each patent applicant to disclose to the USPTO any known prior-art documents. Also, the documents’ material can be material to the invention being claimed in the application. The duty is only applicable to the familiar prior art references. So, the applicant does not own the responsibility for the prior art search. But, any prior art references which are not in a patent search ought to be disclosed.

Also Read: Patent Paralegal: Duties to Perform

Prior-Art Documents Disclosure

This responsibility belongs to each inventor, patent attorney/agent/firms, and the assignee (if any). The prior art document of the information disclosure system includes not only patent literature (published patent applications and U.S. and foreign patents) but also non-patent literature. The non-patent literature includes printed publications such as website media, different literature types such as marketing and sales material. However, disclosure duty must not be only to the U.S. documents, but also to any other foreign country references.

If a patent application is in the mid because of the on-going duty process, it is obvious for an applicant to file many IDS statements via prosecution course of the application as new uncovered prior art references. It may occur in the case when prior art is cited in foreign application or PCT.

Also Read: Omnibus Claim: Importance of Narrow and Broad Claim Scope

Why Take our Services?

At Smart IDS, we have a team of experts who prepare cost effective and ready to file IDS forms under the USPTO guidelines. Our professionals make it a point to deliver the best quality IDS solution so that our clients focus on their patent draft. Also, we ensure the delivery of solution in quick turnaround time. To know more about service, please click here.

1. **How Patent Docketing Works?**

Patent docketing is a method or system for managing a patent application process. Organizing a large number of patent application task is a cumbersome process. Additionally, it is quite difficult to maintain a record of important documents, their timelines, deadlines, and reports, etc. without using any software tool. Here, patent docketing comes into action by keeping a track record of all patent documents effectively.

Moreover, automatic patent docketing software also plays an important role in the docketing process. It maintains a record of audit logs, schedules, documents, alerts and many more. Few of the programs are customizable so that it can customize dates and particular documents associated with a specific patent. Also, can process patents belonging to multiple countries. However, the extent of customization depends upon the budget and use of the law firm.

Also read: Why should you hire a Patent Docketing Specialist?

 Patent Docketing Process:

A docketing process initiates at the moment application arrives in the law office along with the relevant documents. Listed below are the points for patent docketing process:

Initially, a docketing specialist assigns each document with details like name, file number followed by an updating scan and feeding each record into the software.

The docketers create templates and send documents to other law firms depending on the requirement.

Further, relevant details are updated into the database to give attorneys idea about submission and pendency of the documents.

It is true that in the docketing process, to manage docket all the patent law insurance needs patent law firms. The docket is a database of patent application documents that notify recent deadlines of the application process to the attorneys. The major objective of docketing is to avoid malpractice lawsuit if a law firm misses patent filing date leading to rejection by the USPTO. Moreover, many big insurance companies avail two patent docketing to ensure safety and reliability.

Our Approach for Patent Docketing:

We have an experienced team of professionals who deliver optimum and high-quality patent docketing solutions to our clients. Our professionals work with the objective of serving assured life-cycle management of a patent portfolio. With our 100% reliable docketing support, we help our clients prevent missing any of their legal prospects. We have third-party software integration to offer extra techno-legal support to the clients. Moreover, we make it a point to ensure confidentiality and data redundancy using robust data security and backup system. To know more about our services, click here.

1. **Why to do a trademark search?**

“Why to do a trademark search? Or can I bypass the search”? –These are the question raised by almost all of our clients. The easy answer to this question is yes, but we never recommend it to our clients. It is because a trademark search is considered to be a vital step which must be taken before trademark filing. The reason due to which we are emphasizing on the need of trademark search is to help applicants avoid costly headaches and disputes which could be easily prevented with an appropriate trademark search. The search is to ensure whether the mark has been registered earlier. Through trademark search, the applicant gets to know if there exists registrability, potential conflicts if any to combat potential pitfalls.

Different Ways to Conduct Trademark Search:

The major objective behind the trademark search is to avoid picking up the mark which may create confusion with another mark. However, basically there are two major ways to conduct a trademark search:

Preliminary or Knockout Search:

It is the basic trademark search, under this USPTO records investigation is done to find out any potential conflicts or registrability issues. The search not only limits itself to the USPTO records but also extends to search for identical hits.

Comprehensive or Full Search:

This trademark search needs experts for the conduction as it covers all the state and federal registers, internet, business records, domain name registration, trade publications, and many other sources. A comprehensive report is generated at the end having written opinion about the trademark registration.

Trademark Search Benefits:

Trademark search is considered to be one of the most essential steps. It must not be ignored. Here are some of the benefits businesses can avail with trademark search:

An effective trademark search helps avoid spending both resources and money on a mark which may not be available for registration.

Gives the applicant an opportunity of utilizing time and flexibility to alter the mark before the launch of product or service in the market.

Prevents business cost related to rebranding.

Avoids the litigation cost of the dispute.

Also, offers a view on how to develop a trademark which gets easily registered.

Our Approach:

We, at The Trademark Search Company, provide super-easy trademark search and monitoring services to our clients. Our team of professionals conducts 100+ searches with no compromise in quality in quick turnaround time. The team’s objective is to help you focus on building the right brand for your business through our comprehensive trademark search service. Our professionals include widest search coverage of entire federal and state registers, domain name registration, internet, trade publications and many more. To know more about our services, click here.

1. **Whom to depend upon for the best Patent Illustration services?**

An illustration is a process of converting a 3-dimensional object, working model or an idea into a 2-dimensional figure, drawing or visual character. This is done for a better understanding of a third person. When we use the illustration process while filing a patent application, we call it Patent drawing.

In Patent illustration we define the Invention thoroughly with the help of drawings, graphs, charts etc.

Furthermore, a good Patent illustration plays a major role in getting a Patent application accepted.

A patent illustration is the most important part of drafting a patent. An inexperienced illustrator can make mistakes, leading to improper filing or even rejection of the Patent application in some cases. So, we need an expert for this job.

Patent illustration services: Need

Patent illustration helps to simplify our Invention for better understanding. To obtain good illustrations we require Patent illustration services.

An applicant can forget to mention some of the minute details about the invention while filing of Provisional Patent application. The Patent illustrator being an expert professional can cover those missing points in the illustration of the invention.

A Patent illustrator is also familiar with all the rules and guidelines provided by the USPTO for the Patent filing process. Therefore, he\she keeps the drawing within the laws. This helps the applicant by releasing most of the workload of Patent documentation. Additionally, It also increases the probability of the application to get accepted.

Some people understand better from drawings than understanding from the words. The illustration services ease their work by making them visualize the actual built of the Invention.

An invention is not limited to just a country and its jurisdictions. A Patent illustrator keeps in mind the standards of all the countries where the Patentee can apply for a Patent. Also, It helps to reduce further office actions and reworking of the drawing.

Points to consider while choosing a Patent illustrator

There are certain aspects that a Patentee should keep in mind while hiring a Patent illustrator.

Must hire a certified illustrator.

The illustrator must have knowledge about the USPTO guidelines for the Patent drawings.

He\She should have a good technical knowledge database for understanding the invention and its working.

He\She should own considerable artistic skills.

Head for the best

Patent Illustration Express provides you the best Patent illustration services with the help of our experts and professional team. Our squad is providing the most adequate solutions from the past decade. We are an organization that believes in Quality work and that too according to the customer.

So, we provide alterations until the satisfaction of the clients. We provide our results in a timely manner. We are among the top service providers of the field with budget-friendly charges.

1. **Trademark Monitoring Fundamentals: Know the Importance**

Being a trademark holder, it is important for you to have knowledge about trademark monitoring fundamentals. Trademark monitoring is an indispensable step to defend the trademark rights. An effective trademark monitoring strategy not only avoids your trademark loss but also prevent loss to your business. Moreover, it avoids the enforcing ability damage against infringers. So, let’s discuss effective trademark monitoring fundamentals.

Importance of Trademark Monitoring Fundamentals

Trademark monitoring facilitates a notification to the trademark owner if any similar trademark is registered. The major reasons due to which businesses must have trademark watch service are:

To avoid loss of the business

To retain a monopoly on name or logo of the business

In order to prevent enforcing ability damage against infringers

To prevent trademark rights damage

For example, we can consider a trademark named “KYAN.” Now, it is a problem for another company having the trademark “KYANOH” because the company requires to put extra efforts to increase their brand visibility. Otherwise, it may create confusion among their potential customers due to the similarity in the sound.

Related Articles: Benefits of Trademark Monitoring Services

Trademark Monitoring Fundamentals: What type of Service does it include?

Using online tools trademark monitoring can be done by own. Here are some major tools available online that are used by both experts and beginners for trademark monitoring:

Trademark Monitoring By Own:

TESS:

It is a Trademark Electronic Search System with the automated platform used to find infringement cases. Factors such as class, terms, categories, etc. are used for searching on the TESS portal.

Google Search:

It is one of the best platforms for trademark monitoring. For monitoring, you need to find potential infringers to your trademark. In order to search you can upload an image or icon of your trademark in the Google image search function. Simultaneously, you can search on Google in the search bar.

Note: This method of trademark monitoring is quite hectic and time-consuming.

Google Alerts:

It is a convenient method of trademark monitoring. Using Google alerts you can simply set an automatic search through which notification will come up on finding any trademark infringement.

Keyword Tools:

Google provides online service for both advertisement and web traffic via Google AdWords and AdWords Keyword Planner respectively. To confirm if anyone else is using your trademark Google Adwords can be used. However, Adwords Keyword Planner can be used to know the people strength that is actually searching for your trademark. The tools are helpful in ensuring whether anyone else is using your trademark. But, it does not give a complete idea about the identity of the infringer.

Related Articles: Global TM Search: Strategies and Advantages

 Third-Party Trademark Monitoring :

In safeguarding brand identity, trademark monitoring plays a significant role. There are many organizations that do not only take trademark search service but also avail trademark monitoring service. The objective of the service is to stop the misuse of the brand you have built with efforts.

Why Choose The Trademark Watch Company?

We, at The Trademark Watch Company, have a team of techno-legal experts who strive to stop infringers from misusing your brand. Our service has the most flexible and widest coverage to keep a vigilant eye on every trademark filing going in multiple countries. Do give a visit to know how things work and make a little inquiry to find our trademark monitoring search samples.

1. **Jepson Claims- Know the Importance**

A Jepson claim describes prior art scope followed by claiming prior art improvement. It depends on the subject matter which requires protection through patent claims. If defined correctly, Jepson claims is a combination of claims. The invention claimed includes the “preamble in the combination with the improvement.” While using Jepson form, the claim not only includes claim invention context but also the scope of the invention. Also, the inclusion of Jepson claim defines, in part, the structure of the elements of the claiming invention.

Also Read: What is an Inferential Claim?

Example of Jepson Claims:

Consider a simple example: “In the framework of developing a tool using elements x, y, and z (the prior art) wherein the enhancement includes (the transitional phrase and element w (intensive element(s)).”

Is Jepson Claims restricts the scope of the claim?

Yes, it is true that Jepson claims restrict the claims’ scope. However, some exceptions do exist in a few circumstances. The elements of Jepson claims are known to be in the prior art. Significantly, admission coming from a Jepson claim is only implied admission. The Federal Circuit believes that “the obviousness must not depend on an implied admission leading to the creation of imaginary prior art.

Also Read: How to Draft an Accurate Patent Claim?

Are Jepson Claims widely used?

The use of a Jepson claim is not very broad. Twenty years earlier it was observed by Judge Pauline that “as per Modern style, the claims of patent no longer cover the salient features.” Additionally, it was noted that Jepson claims merged as an exception in this movement. Supporting the points of Newman, stats of patent issue showed a significant decline in the Jepson claims numbers in the last twenty years.

How to use Jepson claims effectively?

To claim the invention specifically and clearly one can use Jepson claim. Before using the claim it is good to know the advantages and disadvantages of the same.

The practice does not claim the inventions’ silent features. However, claims the whole combination of both old and new elements. So, you must think before opposing the flow.

In a trial, the flexibility will get restricted in the argument of the scope of the claim due to Jepson claims use. However, you can opt for it if the clarity is critical.

Identify that the use of a Jepson claim must lead to easy patent issuance.

Why Take our Services?

We, at Patent Drafting Catalyst, have a strong team of professionals who deliver high quality “Patent Drafting Services.” Our aim is to provide our clients well-drafted future readily enforceable patents within quick turnaround time. Moreover, our team of 100+ drafters keep themselves updated about new software and tool to deliver world-class patent drafting solutions. Give a visit to our service page to know more.

1. **Qualities of Patent Illustrator – The Best 5**

Top qualities of patent illustrator include vast experience in drafting patent drawings along with a great sense of imagination. It helps illustrators in proper visualization of the product needs to be drawn and draft multiple views required to describe the invention. So, let’s discuss how to recognize the best qualities of patent illustrator through this article.

Related Article: How does a patent illustrator add value to your patent application?

The need for a Patent Illustrator

A good Patent drawing reflects the qualities of Patent illustrator. If we are unable to submit a proper Patent drawing of the Invention, the Patent examiners may hold the process of patent grant. In some cases, the examiners even nullify the whole Patent grant process. Therefore, for a proper Patent drawing we need a Patent illustrator.

A Patent illustrator provides the best illustration for an Invention. He\She helps us explain the invention in a more detailed manner to the patent examiner for better understanding. While using their imagination and artistic skills, they can draw every detail of the Invention on the Patent drawing.

Also, there are certain details that an applicant may forget to mention in the written patent draft. Thus, the Patent illustrator can cover up those details in the drawing. In fact, the Patent examiners give more weight to the Patent drawings for understanding the Invention.

Qualities of Patent illustrator: The Best Five

Here are a few qualities of Patent illustrator that you need to keep in mind before hiring them:

There is currently varied software in the market for creating drawings. A good Patent illustrator must know how to use the latest software.

The Patent illustrator must provide quality drawings with quick turnaround time and no errors.

He\She must be aware of the rules and guidelines provided by the USPTO.

The Patent illustrator must have a good experience of the Patent drawings. Secondly, he must have a wide technical database in order to understand the Invention first.

The last but not the least, He\She must be trustworthy so that the details about the Invention must remain confidential.

 Why choose Professional Patent Illustrators?

There are a number of Patent illustrators in the market at present. The only thing is who is the one we can trust? It is a tough job to choose among them. You don’t have to worry though.

Professional Patent illustrators is equipped with an expert team of technical staff and Professionals. We are devoted to your service regarding Patent drawings. You can rely on us for quality work and complete satisfaction. We provide you the most cost-efficient services in various formats for your ease.

Moreover, The Professional Patent Illustrators not only deliver what you want but also present what you need. To know more about our other services click here.

1. **Patent Paralegal: Duties to Perform**

Before getting on to what a Patent Paralegal does, let us first understand the term ‘Paralegal’. A Paralegal is a person of law and is responsible for handling the documentation work, briefing notes, transcribing statements, etc. Paralegals work under lawyers and attorneys, in law firms and corporate offices.

A patent paralegal is the core professional of patent law and research firms. He/She is a person of law responsible for handling patent documentation and prosecution proceedings.

Also Read: Patent Paralegal vs Attorney: The Differences You Must Know

Patent Paralegal Responsibilities:

In the sphere of Patent rights: patent paralegals work from the very first step of patent application filing till the final stage of patent grant.

What does a Patent Paralegal do?

 Their major responsibilities include:

IDS (Invention Disclosure Statement) preparation;

Interviewing clients;

Communicating with the attorneys at the USPTO;

Responding to office actions;

Maintaining the client’s application docket;

Proofreading of Patents to find errors (format related, technical or grammatical);

Performing a patent search;

Managing International patent filing requests and approved applications and other documents for various countries;

Patent Term Adjustment (PTA) – adjusts the term of the patent because of the delays occurred on part of the USPTO;

Conducting research on patent and copyright law;

Keeping a track on legal expenditure and invoice analysis;

Record maintenance of fee deposits made by the clients-patent filing fee, maintenance fee (depending upon the type of patent).

Resolving IP litigations: patent paralegals have expertise in resolving disputes aroused due to patent and license infringement.

PCT (Patent Cooperation Treaty) and/or US National application filing: keeping the record of PCT applications status (filed applications as well as the approved ones).

 What do we bring?

Our team of efficient and experienced paralegal personnel works from the very first stage of patent filing until patent grant. We provide end-to-end services of patent docketing, data verification, proofreading, IDS management and form preparation for clients across the globe. Our personnel are well-equipped with state-of-the-art tools. We are currently providing our services to our clients in more than 45 countries at pocket-friendly rates. To avail our services, do give a visit to Patent Paralegal Force.

1. **What are the costs/fees for patent registration in India?**

Patent Registration in India– Well there is no preset value or accurate answer to this question. However, we can help you by providing a generic view on the cost incurred which in turn will help you understand the cost structure. Your patent costs will actually depend on your decision- whether you want to get the patent process executed with the help of a patent agent/patent firm or you want to do it yourself. Here you can refer to one another article where you will know that Is it necessary to hire a patent agent to file a patent in India?

The cost of filing a patent in India or getting a patent can be divided into two cost components:

Statutory Fee: the fee that is mandatory and paid to the government office.

Professional Fee: the fee that is paid to the patent agent or patent firm.

Patent Registration in India

The statutory fee varies from individual inventors to companies. The fee also depends on the number of claims made and the total number of pages in a specification. Apart from this, one has to pay a certain amount to the Indian Patent Office (IPO) after the filing. It is therefore needless to say that the patent registration process is a costly one.

Overall Cost Estimate:

The cost of patent filing is approximately INR 50,000-INR 70,000. This cost is when you take the help of a professional patent agent to file your patent application.

You can save money by filing patent by yourself (avoiding professional support can also let you down!):

The patent agent will execute patent research, drafting, and filing of the patent application for the inventor or researcher. If any inventor or researcher files a patent without the help of any patent agent or professional then its needless to mention that the cost bore by him/her would be much less. The cost, in this case, is comparatively much less as the inventor would only pay the fees for the filing of patent and patent prosecution.

Do you know the complete procedure of Patent Filing in India? Learn here – How to file Patent in India? Requirements, Procedure, Specifications, Forms

Let’s have a look at how much it can approximately cost for an individual and what all steps he/ a company seeking patent has to go through to get a patent if he/she takes the help of a professional patent agent at different stages. The prices except for the mandatory government fees always vary depending upon the patent professional hired for executing the work.

Stage 1: Cost of Invention Disclosure

This is the first and foremost step that involves the documentation of invention. The researcher is required to gather all the details and particulars regarding his invention, the description and diagrams and any applicable experimental results and submit it to the patent professional. An Invention Disclosure Statement IDS form must be furnished in such a way that it will be able to avoid any non-patentable invention.

Stage 2: Cost of Patentability Search or Novelty Search

Patentability of an invention is determined by three factors – ‘new’, ’inventive step’, ‘industrial application’. Thus before applying for a patent, an inventor should conduct an exhaustive patentability search with the help of a patent professional to find out whether his invention satisfies the former mentioned three criterions.

The Section 3 under the Patents Act 1970 comprises of a list of the invention that cannot be patented even if they are novel, demonstrates an inventive step and is industrially applicable. An ’inventive step’ is defined under Section 2(1)(ja) of The Act as “a feature of an invention that involves technical advance as compared to the existing knowledge or having economic significance or both and that makes the invention not obvious to a person skilled in the art”.The charge for a detailed patentability search varies from professional to professional. Here you can check our professional and reliable services for patent filing in India.

The inventor needs to perform a patent search either on his own (for free) or by hiring a professional (professional will charge the fee accordingly).

Stage 3: Cost of making a decision to File Patent Application

Whether to go ahead and file a patent application for an invention solely depends upon the inventor’s decision. There are different types of patent application in India, you should choose the one or multiple as per your needs only.

The invention should have an “inventive step”, technically advanced from known prior-art and commercially viable. If the inventor is well convinced that his/her invention qualifies all the aforesaid criterions, he can go ahead for a patent filing. The next step after filing a patent is writing a complete patent application which is also referred to as patent drafting.

Stage 4: Cost of Patent Drafting

Drafting a patent is an extremely crucial job which requires a perfect blend of technical and legal knowledge of the drafter. It is seen in many cases that the inventor files a draft himself which completely focuses on the technical part and negating the legal aspect. Herein, comes the role of an experienced patent professional who can skillfully draft the patent application covering all the legal points along with the technical details.

An experienced patent professional adds an extra value to any patent application for an invention which is of great help and value to an inventor. The inventor can hire a professional draftsperson (professional will charge accordingly) or can create his own draft (for free).

Stage 5: Cost of FIling a Patent Application

Filing a patent application requires submission of forms to the patent office along with the prescribed fees. This is the first and foremost step towards securing an invention in India. If the inventor has a class 3 digital certificate he/she can submit the form online. In case of the online application, the Patent Office charges an additional 10% fee. Alternatively, one can send hard copies of the patent application (true copy) to the patent office too.

The fees for patent filing in India is as follows:

S. No. Description Patent office fee (INR) (e-filing) Comments

Natural Person (individuals)/ Startups Other than individuals

Small entity Other than Small entity

1 Application for grant of patent 1600 4000 8000 Mandatory

2 Provisional or Complete Specification No Fee No Fee No Fee Mandatory

3 Statement and Undertaking Under Section 8 No Fee No Fee No Fee Mandatory

4 Declaration as to Inventorship No Fee No Fee No Fee Mandatory

5 Request for Publication 2500 6250 12500 Optional

6 Request for Examination of Application for Patent 4000 10000 20000 Mandatory

Stage 6: Cost of making an Examination Request

This request is made by the researcher or inventor to the Indian Patent Office within 48 months from the Priority Date (first date of filing of the patent application) or else the application is not considered for examination. The application is considered to be withdrawn if the request is not mentioned within the stipulated date.

The cost of requesting for patent examination varies between 4,000 Rs to 20,000 Rs, depending upon the class (individual, startup, etc.) in which the inventor falls.

Stage 7: Cost of dealing with objections raised in the Examination Report

The examiner is the first person to submit the very first examination report to the controller regarding the patent application. In most cases, this report consists of objections which are comprised of prior-art related to the invention. This is referred to as the First Examination Report (FER), response to which, has to be submitted in the form of application for grant of the patent within 12 months from the date of issue of FER. The objections cover both technical and formal points. The aim of the inventor and patent agent should be to convince the controller by proving that the invention is far more superior than those of the pre-existing prior-arts. In situations, if the applicant fails to maintain the timeline of his/her application is considered to be abandoned.

The cost/fee for the Application for grant of patent ranges from Rs.1600 to Rs. 8000 depending on the class (individual, startup, etc.) in which the inventor falls.

Stage 8: Cost of Patent Grant

If an invention meets all the patentability criterions, the application would be placed for approval of the grant. This is notified in the Patent Office Journal. One can face Pre-Grant Opposition and Post-Grant Opposition before and after approval of the grant of a patent. Let’s have a close look at them as to what they mean.

Pre-Grant Opposition Post-Grant opposition

Under Section 11A of the Patent Acts, 1970 a pre-grant opposition can be filed by any person within six months from the date of publication of the application or before patent grant in the form of writing or representation to the controller.

No fees required for filing the pre-grant opposition.

A person interested may give opposition notice to the Controller against a patent granted within a period of 12 months from the date of publication of patent grant.

Fees required to file a post-grant opposition is of Rs. 1500 in case of natural person and Rs. 6000 in case of any person other than a natural person.

Stage 9: Cost of Patent Renewal

According to Section 53(1) of the Indian Patent Acts, 1970 a patent gets a grant for a span of 20 years and is calculated from the date of filing of the ordinary or conventional application. The renewal fee for patent applications entering the national phase in India through PCT Route is different and the details regarding the said can be found in Section 80 (1A).

A brief idea about the renewal fee details is provided below:

Renewal Fee-Year

Patent Owner

(Natural Person)

Patent Owner-Other Than Natural Person

Small Entity Other Than Small Entity

3 to 6 800 2000 4000

7 to 10 2400 6000 12000

11 to 15 4800 12000 24000

16 to 20 8000 20000 40000

How can YPT assist you?

We are a team of 225+ industry/technology experts who are working in the IP industry for more than 6 years, supporting 1000+ clients from more than 45 nations across the globe. We deal in multiple aspects from sciences, engineering, ICT to simple household inventions.

1. **Trademark Watch Services: Benefits**

Trademark Watch services help to avoid infringement or misuse of the trademark by a third party. The services also protect the intellectual property rights of the companies over their trademark.

After trademark registration, it is wise to take trademark watch services as it keeps an eye on the potential market dangers which may conflict your trademark uniqueness. Moreover, if any third party operates or misuses a similar trademark, these services notify the owner about the infringement activities. Also, It is very important to find these threats of infringement at earliest as they may lead to a loss in business as well as the company’s reputation.

Trademark Watch Services: Types

The Trademark watch services provide you a global aid in securing your Trademark. These services search for the marks that are infringing or may infringe the registered Trademark. Moreover, the services help the companies to avoid the misuse of their original mark. There are basically 2 types of Watch Services :

Identical trademark watch

Identical Trademark watch services identify the marks that are visually identical or sound the same as the original mark. These services target the marks that are directly infringing the registered trademark.

Similar trademark watch

Similar Trademark Watch Services deal with the identification of the marks with a confusing resemblance to the original mark. These services target the marks that are indirectly infringing the original trademark.

Related Articles: Trademark Monitoring Fundamentals: Know The Importance

Trademark Watch Services: Benefits

The Trademark Watch services prove beneficial to a company in numerous terms. Whenever a third party tries to infringe your registered Trademark, these services notify you. It helps you to take the required action in time. Some of the major benefits of the Services are :

The Services help the company to protect the intellectual property rights over their trademark or logo and prevent others from infringing the mark.

The Company can also earn profits in terms of revenue if a third party tries to infringe the trademark owned by the company.

These are also beneficial for business growth and approach.

For example – A company can keep an eye over other competitors and figure out the fields in which their competitors are entering. Thus, the company can adjust their business strategies accordingly.

Many companies don’t have the resources or time for continuously checking the market status in terms of trademark infringement. Thus, the Trademark Watch Services help the companies by handling the infringement protection part. Moreover, it allows the company to feed more time and efforts for their own betterment.

Marks identical or similar to the original trademark can affect the sale and reputation of the company. So, Services protect the rights of a company over the registered trademark and prevent other parties to use those rights.

There is a particular time period of 30 days to file the infringement application against the infringer. If you file the infringement application after 30 days, it is considered as untimely and may cost more. The Trademark Watch Services help to catch these infringing activities early and notify the owner.

Related Articles: Hire A trademark Attorney: What’s The Need?

The reason to choose The Trademark Watch Company

We, at The Trademark Watch Company, use manual search to look for the Infringements of your Trademark. Also, we have a wide range of search database. Our skilled team of experts provides our clients with a thorough search report with the help of a global database. We provide you the best quality work with minimum turn around time. Moreover, you can place and track your order online. You only have to provide us the mark details and search variants. Do give a visit to our service page to know more.

1. **Trademark Filing Basis: Things to know**

Trademark filing basis defines the basis with respect to which you file a Trademark application. It is necessary to define the filing basis while filing for a Trademark to clarify the motive of the Trademark. There are different requirements for every Trademark filing basis and you must follow those requirements to pursue the registration process.

Trademark filing basis: Types and requirements

There are different types of Trademark filing basis according to different situations. Each filing basis has its own criteria and requirements. Mostly it depends upon the product usage and international policies. Some general types of Trademark filing basis are:

1. ‘Use in Commerce’ basis

It is used when you are using the mark commercially at present.

The requirements for filing under ‘Use in Commerce’ basis are the date of first use and proof that you are currently using the mark in the respective country. The proof or ‘Specimens of use’ can be in the form of a website page, advertisement or declaration that defines the product/good and shows the trademark. Tags, logos and packaging are also accepted as proof.

2. ‘Intent to Use’ basis

This type of Trademark filing basis is used when you have future plans of using the mark commercially.

To file the Trademark under ‘Intent to use’ basis you have to go through a common registration process. It is necessary to show the proof of using the Trademark in the market after the application gets accepted for registration (generally after 10 months from the filing date). Also, you file a separate “Statement of use” to present the ‘proof of use’ to the Trademark office.

3. ‘Foreign Registration’ basis

You can file the application on ‘Foreign Registration’ basis if your Trademark is registered at another country. Therefore, the filing application requires no ‘proof of use’.

However, a scanned copy of registration certificate from the respective country and a translation approved by the translator are the only required things.

4. ‘Foreign Application’ basis

‘Foreign Application’ basis is included when you want to claim priority for a Trademark application already filed in another country. However, there can’t be a delay of more than 6 months between the filing of both the applications.

Additionally, you need to submit the date of filing, serial number and a verified declaration to genuinely use the mark commercially. Also, you need to submit an agreement form between the native country and the country for which you have filed the application.

Related Articles: Trademark Filing Timeline

Why Take Our Services?

Our technical experts and experienced teams at the Trademark filing company have been a pioneer in the field. The outcomes we provide are the most pertinent and satisfactory. Also, we present you the results with least turnaround time and free iterations until you get what you want.

As soon as we receive your queries, we start processing them and update you regularly with the status of work. We present you with pocket-friendly deals and post delivery services. To know more about our resources, click here.

1. **Patent Watch: Why Do I Need It?**

The Patent watch is a process of monitoring existing Patents/Patent applications. It is done to seek benefits in terms of technological update or obtaining revenue. Also, it helps to avoid possible threats of patent infringement. The basic principle behind the Patent monitoring is to find out Patents or Patent applications that may serve as an interest/profit or cause infringement to our already existing Patent.

The process includes keeping a track of all the competitors and their activities in the respective field. Also, It keeps an eye on a targeted application or Patent for their current status, publication of patent application or Prosecution details. Moreover, the Patent monitoring not only allows us to point out other Patents/applications that may infringe our Patent but also helps to avoid infringement from our end.

Patent Watch: Types

There are different types of watch services regarding Patents according to the need of the client. They can customize the monitoring criteria with respect to his/her requirement. Some of the watch types for Patent are:

Types

Description

Technical Patent Watch

This type of watch service covers the monitoring of newly granted or published Patents in the respective technical field. It monitors the technological part or Patents of the targeted contenders.

Competitor Patent Watch

This watch type provides services which include updates regarding publishing, granting, expiration and rejection of the Patents and Patent applications. The monitoring is done over the competitors of the respective field.

Patent Legal status Watch

The Patent legal status watch includes the monitoring of the prosecution process and steps after the post-grant stage of a Patent. Also, it considers the tracking of newly grant/published Patents. The monitoring helps to notify the client for any amendments, updates or changes required.

Design Watch

In Design Watch, services are provided for monitoring of the Design Patents that are recently published or granted. They also include keeping an eye on all the expired, rejected or abandoned Patent applications.

Infringement Watch

This Watch service includes monitoring for fresh EOU (Evidence of Use) in various forms such as Goods, services, process, etc.

Patent Watch: advantages

Patent monitoring provides a lot of advantages to the client. It helps in keeping the clients in touch with the current t status of other Trademarks. So, the client can take the necessary actions to avoid blames or accept opportunities.

Related Article: Need to Implement Patent Monitoring service

Some of the major advantages of the service are:

It helps us to remain updated on the latest technologies related to our field by surfing through the Patent application of other parties. This can prove beneficial for the R&D department for further innovative steps.

We can track and nullify the Patent applications or Patents that are infringing the novelty of claims in our Patent.

It also helps to keep a track of expired or abandoned Patents in order to use them for our benefits.

These services notify us if we are infringing the claims on another Patent. So, we can do the required changes or amendments on our behalf before any objection from other parties.

A continuous overlook on the present or upcoming Patents help to get a glace of various technologies and fields of competition. Thus, it ultimately leads to the proper planning of strategies in order to compete in the market.

Related Article: Patent Watch Benefits: What & How to Apply?

Why prefer The Patent Watch Company?

The Patent Watch Company provides you the most efficient service regarding the problems related to the monitoring of the Patent. The experienced members of the Watch team go through manual analysis of the global database. It gives you every possible outcome. We are a trusted organization for 100% customer satisfaction. You get the most Pertinent solutions with quick turnaround time. Also, you get regular update about the work status and can obtain the results online. To explore more of our services, click here.

1. **Patent Docketing Software: Its Importance and Applications**

Patent Docketing is a process of managing patent applications. In addition to managing Patent Applications, patent docketers also keep a track on the deadlines, due dates, updating the inventor the requirements as posed by the patent office. With the introduction of Patent docketing software the management of applications and documents associated with patent filing became a hassle-free task. Besides this, prompt fetching of the documents and updating the clients about the due dates has become an easy-to-do task.

Also read: Patent Filing: Know How to Proceed

Note: The automated docketing software services are not 100% accurate. Hence, to ensure the integrity of the docket made through an automatic mode is always followed by manual docketing. Therefore, maintenance of a manual docket is must by expert paralegals.

Features of a good patent docketing software:

Complies with the patent laws of the country.

Reflects PTO file history in a chronological manner.

Is adaptable to one’s style of docketing.

Sends real-time alerts of important due dates and deadlines to clients and attorneys maintaining an effective workflow.

Generates customized reports.

Generates invoice for clients automatically upon completion of tasks.

Many PTOs provide real-time access to their docketing databases for filing related applications.

Availability of Software Interface in different languages.

The software is secure, robust and future ready.

Patent Docketing Software - Its Importance

Patent Docketing Software: Significance/Importance

People these days, are becoming more aware of protecting their inventions with a patent grant. Hence, it becomes important to handle client’s patent documents proficiently and to update them about the due-dates beforehand. Therefore, along with manual docketing, docketing software has come into practice to ease the process of docketing.

The Patent Docketing Software helps to increase the efficiency of IP firms and/or corporations by –

Providing easy access to the patent portfolios;

Locating particular patent applications;

Differentiating domestic and international patent applications of the inventor;

Locating old patent applications on just a click;

Increasing efficiency and saves time and money;

Providing intimation of due-dates to the clients and attorneys on time;

Maintaining a track of the inward and outward movement of the documents.

Patent Docketing Software: Applications

Patent Docketing Software maintains-

International and Domestic patent details;

Inventor’s details (Name, Contact details and Address);

Information of the agents and attorneys associated with the inventor’s invention;

Locating Patents that are under the process of examination or prosecution;

Keeps a record of all the fee receipts received from the patent office.

What do we bring?

Our team of efficient patent docketing specialists makes sure to maintain our client’s patent portfolios are both in order and are accessible at the time of requirement. We ensure maintaining the authenticity of the information so provided by the client. Moreover, we provide double docketing solutions, reminders through email and/or phone, and updates regarding the necessities raised by the patent office to ensure a timely patent grant. Our expert docketers largely rely on their proficiency and on various dependable state-of-the-art-tools.To name a few- IP Manager, Anaqua, Memotech, Docket Trak, Patricia, Inteum, IPfolio, Claim Master, DIAMS, Alt Legal and Equinox. The practice of maintenance of a manual patent docket is religiously followed to ensure the credibility of the docket.

1. **Omnibus Claim: Importance of Narrow and Broad Claim Scope**

An omnibus claim is the description and/or illustrations as the subject matter of the claim. Also, the claim restricts the scope of a claim to the things disclosed by the applicant. However, there are many cases wherein omnibus claim supported infringement action and validity challenge as it was only left at the end.

Hence, the patent applications which are not very strong can use the claim as it plays a significant role in patent filing and provides a base for the claimed novelty protection. The claim is generally placed as the last claim so that illustrations and descriptions can be incorporated in the claim scope. It even makes sure that no aspect of the invention is missing. So, it is good to include an omnibus claim in a jurisdiction if required to protect the content disclosed through illustration and specification except for the claim.

Also Read: Significance of Patent Proofreading

Examples of Narrow Omnibus Claim:

An article being claimed in Claim 1, considered be describing and illustrating here.

A process or method got claimed in Claim 10, extensively illustrated and described here.

A compound claimed in Claim1, must be described and illustrated here.

A compound used in the processing of medicine should be illustrated and described here.

Examples of Broad Omnibus Claim:

A new article must be significantly described here.

A new building method should be described here substantially.

A new compound must be described here considerably.

New use of compound should be described here substantially.

A substance or composition for treatment method new use is substantially described here.

A compound prepared using the new process is described here substantially

Omnibus Claim Permit Coverage:

From the above, the conclusion is the claim adds good advantage to the patent application. Moreover, it acts as a useful tool for drafting patent application in terms of providing extensive protection. However, misuse of omnibus claim can be also done via claiming more than truly intended novelty as suggested by the inventor. So, because of this reason, extensive use of omnibus claim has been mingled.

Presently, it is accepted by the United Kingdom, New Zealand, and South Africa. However, India, China, United States, Israel, Australia, South Korea do not accept the omnibus claim. Also, in Canada and under European Patent Convention omnibus claim use is not allowed.

Also Read: How to Draft an Accurate Patent Claim?

Patent Drafting Catalyst Approach:

Our team of professional use unparalleled approach to provide high-quality patent drafting service to our clients. We have 100+ full-time drafters having more than 10 years of drafting quality patent. To deliver the best quality patent drafting solution to our clients we leverage the power of collaborative patent drafting. To know more about our services, click here.

1. **10 Major Benefits of Trademark**

The benefits of Trademark registration help the growth of an Organization. Also, a recent report justifies that, the trademark sums up to be 1/3 of the actual value of a corporate empire. An organization should not consider the registration and protection of a Trademark as unwanted expense among the business. Moreover, Trademark registration should count as Investment for Customer consideration which leads to an increase in sales.

Benefits of Trademark Registration:

 There are a lot of benefits for Trademark registration. It not only helps an organization to mark a place in the market but also protects the right of the company over the Trademark. Moreover, it provides future aids for the company at the time of business expansion. Some major aspects of Trademark registration are mentioned below:

Exclusive rights

Trademark provides a right to the owner to use the good or service exclusively. The registration of a Trademark comes with a number of rights for the owner to seek benefits through the Trademark. Moreover, a company can sue for the misuse of the Trademark and nullify the infringers with the help of these rights. benefits of trademark

Security

One of the major aspects of the Trademark is that it provides security to the novelty of the goods or service. Also, it secures the value of related goods or services.

Abstract property

The major role of the Trademark is to become a symbol of abstract property for the goods or services related to it. A trademark acts as a vessel for the market value and reputation of the related goods or services.

Licensing

Licensing is the best advantage for any Trademark. The owner can sell the rights to a third party to use the Trademark in a controlled way. This provides monetary benefits of Trademark to the owner. The owner can keep the record of the trademark in the Trademark register.

Assignment

It refers to the transfer of Trademark ownership to another party. The Trademark Assignment is done with the consideration of business.

Restraint

A registered trademark prevents another party to use Trademarks that are identical or similar to your trademark. The third parties become aware of the official belonging of the Trademark to the owner.

Use in Litigation

A trademark registration gives a right to the owner to file for the misuse or any other damage against the infringer. Also, the owner can seek revenue for prosecution fee and other legal cases.

Right to use the symbol ‘®’

You can use the symbol ® or “R” or the word “Registered” to notify the third parties about your exclusive rights over the Trademark. This is among the major benefits of Trademark.

Foreign policies

You can easily apply for Trademark registration in foreign countries after registering it to the native country. This is done to assure worldwide protection of the trademark rights.

Counterfeit Goods Act of 1997

The registration of a Trademark proves beneficial to avoid entries of counterfeit goods at the South African import points. The custom department can take legal action against the parties involved in the counterfeit activity.

The above benefits of Trademark help the owner to protect the novelty from it. Also, it allows the owner to maintain the reputation and demand for the goods or services in the market.

If you are a startup do read Trademark Fundamentals for Start-ups

Also Read: Trademark Filing: A Step by Step Process

Trademark Filing Fees: A Quick Overview

 Why should you go for The Trademark Search Company?

 We, at The Trademark Search Company, provide a solution to each of your query regarding the Trademarks. Our team consists of experts in the field and professionals. We do a thorough manual search for Trademarks on a global database to dig out every possible data. Also, we provide you the most relevant outcomes within the deadline. You can place your order online at a very pocket-friendly price. We believe in 100% customer satisfaction. To know more about our services, click here.

1. **Patent Filing Process in 3 easy steps**

To protect your invention via a patent, you should be familiar with the patent filing process. Filing a patent with the United States Patent & Trademark Office (USPTO) is the first and most important step towards protecting your invention. Hence, it’s essential to know the type of patent you should file and the requirements of each patent application. You need to be very prudent during the entire patent filing process, especially while drafting the application. This is to ensure that you have a seamless filing and a relatively straightforward examination.

Before anything else, you need to ensure that your invention is novel, functional, and non-obvious. You can do that through a patentability search. Once you are certain that your invention is patentable, you can go ahead with the patent filing process.

Patent Filing Process: An Overview

1) Decide the patent type

Before you start drafting your application, you need to identify the type of patent you need. The USPTO offers 3 types of patents:

Utility patent: It protects how a product or process functions. Utility patents protect functional and new inventions or systems.

Design patent: These cover the way a manufactured product looks but it isn’t concerned with its usefulness or function.

Plant patent: A plant patent is useful if you have created a new species of plant. It prevents other companies from breeding it.

2) Drafting the Application

After you are certain about the type of patent, you can move on to the actual patent filing process. It is important to remember that the USPTO follows a “First to file” regime.

Here is a list of the type of applications:

Provisional Patent Application

A provisional application is a quick and inexpensive way to establish an early effective filing date for your invention. You can claim it in a later filed non-provisional application. You do not have to provide claims, oath or declaration and public disclosure for a provisional application. However, it is advisable that you disclose the invention as completely as possible. You get a 12 month pendency period in which you must file the non-provisional application.

Nonprovisional (utility) Patent Application

A nonprovisional utility patent application is very elaborate and must include a specification. It needs to have the following:

Utility Patent Application Transmittal Form or Transmittal Letter

Background of the invention (for disclosure of material to patentability)

A description and a claim or claims

Drawings, nucleotide, and amino acid sequence listing, large tables or computer listings when necessary

An oath or declaration

The prescribed filing, search, and examination fees

As mentioned before, you are can convert a provisional application into a non-provisional one. You have to mention the specific reference to the provisional application in an application data sheet.

Related Article: How to Draft an Accurate Patent Claim

Design Patent Application

The design application has very similar requirements as the non-provisional application with a few additions, such as:

A description of figures for the drawing

A single claim

Feature description

Drawings or photographs

You cannot file a provisional application for a design patent.

Plant Patent Application

A plant patent application has the same requirements as a nonprovisional patent application with a few exceptions. In addition, you need to ensure that your specification must contain the following:

A complete botanical description of the plant

The characteristics which distinguish your plant over known, related plants

International Patent Application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT)

The PCT is an international treaty. It’s a system through which you can seek patents in multiple countries around the world on the basis of one international patent application. For more information on filing a patent under PCT, visit the PCT guide on the WIPO website.

3) Submit your application

The next step in the patent filing process is the submission of your application draft.

Online :-Whatever patent application you have to file, use EFS-Web. It is the USPTO’s electronic filing system for patent applications. It is also used for any official correspondence with the USPTO via the Internet.

Offline:- You can send the application via delivery by U.S. mail, or hand delivery to the Office in Alexandria, Virginia. But the offline method charges you a lot of extra money, so it is preferable to use the online method.

Why choose us?

Before you proceed with the patent filing process, you need to decide if you would need the assistance of a patent professional. Be mindful of the steps and deadlines involved. You should consider engaging a patent professional / firm who has years of experience in the patent field. We offer complete support for provisional patent application filing, design & utility patent Applications, patentability search reports, nonprovisional patent application filing, patent drawings and much more. For more information, visit our service page.

1. **When & How to File IDS?**

At every stage of patent prosecution, the applicant needs to disclose the relevant information found in the patent application/invention. Here comes the need to understand and learn about the time periods and procedure to file IDS. According to the U.S. patent law, 37 C.F.R. 1.56 USPTO (Duty to disclose information material to patentability) states that all known prior art or ‘material information’ must be to the USPTO in the form of an Information Disclosure Statement (IDS). A citizen (patent aspirant/ patent applicant) is bound to pay respect to this duty until the issuance of a patent to earn full respect for his/her patent. If not, you will lose the chance of getting a patent grant.

By material, the USPTO clearly states all that information which is found and considered relevant to the claimed subject matter. Material information includes related and valid U.S. patent applications or patent references cited in a PCT or foreign equivalent applications. In case,

If the information found to contradict or is inconsistent with the applicant’s position, or

If it contributes towards non-patentability in together or alone in all information

Then, the information will be considered strictly as ‘material’.

When to File IDS?

For official consideration of IDS by the examiner, it must be filed on time.

According to the USPTO 37 C.F.R. 1.97, you can file IDS at different stages of prosecution. For which the applicant may require to file different documents and pay a fee (if required), depending on the stage of prosecution. Prefer submitting IDS (and supplemental IDS) as early as possible to avoid extra costs. This section states different parts that include procedure and filing fee according to three prosecution stages with their respective 37 C.F.R. Section policies.

Also Read: Why Online Patent Paralegal Services are Important?

The table 1.a represents all the details and pre-requisites required for filing IDS.

Prosecution Stage 37 C.F.R Section Filing Period Requirements

1st Stage § 1.97(b)

Within 3 months of the U.S. filing date,

Before receiving a first office action, or

After filing the RCE.

Filing 37 C.F.R. 1.97(e) statement is not required.

Fee payment is also not required at this stage.

2nd Stage § 1.97(c)

After the first stage of filing is passed,

Before mailing Final Office Action,

After mailing Notice of Allowance, or

After mailing an Ex parte Quayle action.

IDS must be filed with either a 37 C.F.R. 1.97(e) statement, or

A government fee in accordance with 37 C.F.R. 1.17(p).

3rd Stage § 1.97(d)

After the second stage of filing is passed, or

Before or with payment of the issue fee.

IDS must be filed with both 37 C.F.R. 1.97(e) statement and government fee in accordance with 37 C.F.R. 1.17(p).

If a 37 C.F.R. 1.97(e) statement cannot be made, then an RCE has to file to have the IDS considered by the Examiner.

Table 1.a. USPTO Policies and details for filing IDS w.r.t 37 C.F.R. 1.97

 37 C.F.R. 1.97 Section Details

According to 37 C.F.R., 1.97(e) – That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement.

None of the information present insides was first mentioned or communicated in a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, to any person signing for certification, and to any individual that matches with individuals mentioned in 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing IDS.

37 C.F.R. 1.17(p)

Statements under this section include details about the USPTO fee structure for all the prosecution stages for filing IDS.

Patent Term Adjustment

PTA period (if any) can be decreased according to C.F.R. 1.704(c), if its IDS is not filed within 30 days of receiving the filing information. To avoid so, an applicant (with respect to § 1.56(c)) needs to include that:

All information was first mentioned in communication from a foreign patent office.

None of the people (with respect to § 1.56(c)) receive filing information within 30 days before filing IDS.

File IDS: Procedure or Method

Fill Form PTO/SB/08 for filing IDS with a written explanation included in the IDS doc code.

It may include IDS fees when you submit the IDS form:

Before the first action: at this stage IDS form is considered to be at the part of the first stage of filing.

After Non-final Action: either pay a fee or sign an IDS certification saying that you got to know about it in the last 3 months.

After final action: pay the fee and sign the certification.

Attach the following three documents with IDS form:

Transmittal Letter: indicates the contents of submission, including fee if applicable.

Foreign Reference: cited by the examiner or by the applicant originally and is viewable in IFW.

Non-Patent Literature: Document code indicating Non-Patent Literature (NPL). Either the applicant submits it or the examiner.

Also Read and understand the value of patent proofreading: US Patent Proofreading – with USPTO Best Practices

Our Approach:

We, at Smart IDS Solutions, provide ready-to-file IDS forms in the USPTO prescribed format. Our team makes sure to cover up all the IDS-related proceedings in a timely manner so that our clients don’t end up paying a fee for the same. Moreover, we ensure a 100% quality assurance for IDS preparation. We are providing our solutions in more than 45 countries at pocket-friendly rates. For further assistance, please click here.

1. **USPTO Guidelines for Patent Drawing Rules**

Patent drawing rules are the guidelines set by the USPTO for the applicant in terms of photographs, flowcharts, graphs, drawings, etc. While filing for a Patent application, keep the rules in priority.

Basically, Provisional Patent applications don’t require drawings but non-Provisional Patent requires a minimum of one drawing. While working on these drawings, you must keep in mind Patent application process rules, which include:

Use only black and white colors. You can use other colors also if required.

You must use India ink only.

The scale of the drawing must be 2/3 the size of the reduced illustration.

The drawing must include application number, Inventor’s name, Invention’s name, and identification.

Size of the drawing must be 11inch by 8.5 inches and must be white in color. It must be flexible, plane, non-shiny and free of overwriting, alterations and marks of erasing.

A margin of 1 inch at the top and left side, 3/8 inch at the right side and 5/8 inch at the bottom.

You can also use formulas but each one of it must represent a unique figure. You must keep the related information within the brackets.

You must avoid superimposing.

You can use symbols but you must avoid solid shading.

Numbering should be proper with guidelines to the respective parts.

You should not limit the drawings to just illustrations; one can also add graphs, charts, and process diagrams. However, if you want to add photographs then make sure that they are in high definition.

Importance of Patent Drawing Rules

Our application will be considered incomplete, we If we fail to follow Patent drawing rules. This can cause a delay in the filing of the Patent. It may give a chance to other competitors with similar ideas to take advantage of the situation.

Understanding and following the Patent drawings rules help the applicant to get a better hold of the Patent application process. He\she can utilize it for further filings in the future.

The early filing of the Patent application with the proper drawing rules increases its priority among similar Patents that are filed later. Working according to the Patent drawing rules also helps to save a lot of time and money as the Applicant has a higher chance of getting the Patent accepted for the first time.

Useful guidelines by USPTO

There are some key points provided by USPTO that may help to increase the documental value of your Patent drawing.

Neat and clean working is appreciated in terms of numbering, texts, and graphs.

There should be no error, overwriting or erasing mark on the drawing and overall neatness should be maintained.

Always prefer using the matrix system as it is widely accepted.

The applicant should try to make more eye-catching and creative drawings.

Are we the one to trust?

As we mentioned earlier, sometimes, making your drawings can be an extremely difficult task. There are a lot of guidelines that you need to adhere to.

If you need a patent illustrator, TPDC is at your service. We have the expertise and widest range of software/technologies to cater to any and every output format that exists. Our motto is 100% satisfaction of our customers. We offer timely solutions and are willing to make any number of iterations to meet your specific requirements. Our affordable prices ensure that we don’t bore a hole in your pocket.

1. **IPR Issues of India: Challenges to be Aware of before Filing**

India has been very progressive over the last 2 decades in the formulation of a strong intellectual property rights policy. However, there are still a lot of IPR issues that it needs to address. The US government has retained India on its “priority watch list” for its alleged poor enforcement of IP regulations. This was discovered in the US Trade Representative’s (USTR) Special 301 report. India’s inclusion in this report indicates the direness of the situation, and the need to address these issues immediately.

This article aims at explaining the current IPR issues that exist within the system.

IPR issues in India: Challenges to be aware of

1) The shift from process to product patents

India is a member of WTO and a signatory of TRIPS. Hence, it has to introduce product patents as per the requirement of the TRIPS agreement. This means disbanding its liberal patent regime that only identifies process patents.

A product patent protects a product. It offers higher protection to the original inventor as there wouldn’t be a competitor for the same product. A process patent protects the process through which one manufactures a product and not the actual product. It reduces the element of monopoly in the market. A developing country like India would prefer a process patent regime in such scenarios. The reason is to safeguard the interest of the ordinary people, who are struggling for basic necessities like food and medicines.

This becomes an issue while granting IP rights for pharmaceuticals and food products.

2) Evergreening of patents is not allowed

Section 3(d) in the Indian Patent Act poses as one of the biggest issues with regards to IPR This act bars the grant of patents to new forms of known substances unless the new form results in a significant enhancement in efficacy over known substance. Essentially, this shuts the door for “incremental” innovations such as “new dosage form” and “new delivery systems”. Simply abrogating Section 3(d) might not solve all the issues. There is a need to more effectively regulate the industry for quality and also create an enabling environment for strengthening the domestic pharma industry.

3) Compulsory Licensing & Drug Price Control Order

An even more daunting IPR issue is compulsory licensing. It’s a relaxation available to developing countries under the TRIPS agreement, something which organizations misuse sometimes. Under Section 84 of the IPA, a company can acquire a compulsory license for “private commercial use” under certain circumstances. Consider a scenario where the patent holder doesn’t produce the product in “sufficient” quantities or charges an “unaffordable” price. Under section 92, a compulsory license can be obtained if there is either a “national emergency” or “extreme urgency” or in cases of “public non-commercial use”.

With the Drug Price Control Order, the company needs to justify the price of a drug with regards to investments. If someone plays foul then the government has a right to intervene. Multinationals are asking the government to revoke this provision. However, the government is not ceding to the demands to protect the interest of the masses.

4) Subsidies & IPR issues

The government usually gives a subsidy to remove some type of burden on the public. A major form of subsidies in India includes food subsidy, fertilizer subsidy, education subsidy, etc. However, for the complete adaptation of TRIPS, the government needs to reduce or eliminate these subsidies. This poses a challenge for the Indian government to strike a balance between subsidies and IP rights.

5) IPRs, Community Property Rights & Indigenous Knowledge

Traditional knowledge in the field of medicine is a gold mine. It can be a pathway for pharmaceutical companies to create a new formulation and show the efficacy of traditional understanding. The Indian government wants to protect the rich source of traditional knowledge by not allowing multinationals to get patents on the traditional culture. The government has created a Traditional Knowledge Digital Library (TKDL) to prevent patenting of traditional knowledge. This is yet another IPR issue, as MNCs and developed countries are opposing it.

Why choose us?

Getting and enforcing IP rights in India is a complex process where plenty of clauses and provisions can interfere with the interest of patentees. Thus, it is important to invest wisely and foresee risks. You might require professional help while filing patents and protecting IP rights. Your Patent Team can help you in your journey from ideating to protecting IPs. YPT is a team of 225+ technology/industry experts who speak the inventor’s language and have a deep understanding of Indian & Global Patent Laws. We can help you secure IP rights for your invention in the most efficient and cost-effective manner. Our job is not limited to securing IP rights. We will assist you with the enforcement of those rights as well. Visit Your Patent Team, for more information.

1. **Importance of Understanding Technical Translation**

Technical Translation refers to the Translation of Technical documents from one language to another language. Here, Technical document means any specialized subject document that needs proper knowledge and definition to the related terminology. For example, subjects related to electronics, medical sciences, engineering, laws, etc.

However, Technical Translation for the Patents is the most commonly used Translation service. Also, Patent documentation involves creating claims that cover all the content for every possible application in the future on a similar product, method or technique. Thus, you must be precise with the terms and words that you would use to maintain similar meaning as that of the source file or document.

A scientific or technical document requires an experienced and professional technical person in order to translate the matter properly. Moreover, the translator must also have a good knowledge of the language in which the document is currently written.

Hence, a non-technical person will not be able to perform the translation properly.

Related Article: Patent Translation and Filing Cost: How To Manage?

Major Aspects of Technical Translation

There are some major points that a Technical translation includes. A translator must know about the key requirements of the Translation. One should consider the following points in order to get a useful and accurate translation:

Related Article: Patent Paralegal: Duties to perform

Translations are specific, to the point and include a number of technical points.

This makes the process time-taking, demanding and confusing as they contain logic and formal writing.

The words used in the translation should be easy to understand and should maintain the simplicity of the context.

The major parts of these documents contain technical or scientific terms, so it is necessary to find their correct and accurate replacements.

Every organization requires expert and professional technical translators as they work or plan to work in the international market. This assures the reputation and correct intentions of marketing to foreign customers.

There is no space for any mistakes regarding the translations as we are working on technical or scientific documentation. A single error may lead to misinterpretation of the original document. Thus, for the Translation process, a high level of accuracy and concentration is required.

Related Article: 5 Major Benefits of Patent Paralegal Service

To achieve the required accuracy and concentration, you need proper training in technical writing, language skills and ability to understand the sense of the content.

Services at Patent Translation Express

The Patent Translation Express has a professional techno-legal team. Our squad has multilingual experts that can provide you the desired translation. We assure complete satisfaction via technical writing. Also, we offer you free translations for a test purpose. Our services are budget friendly and you can obtain the outcomes within the deadlines. We deal with your every technical, legal, biological or scientific query regarding translation. To avail the best Patent Translation Services, Patent Translation Express is a one-stop destination for you.

1. **Patent Watch Service: Types & Advantages**

Patent watch service or patent monitoring is a process of tracking other Patent applications or Patents for any possible infringement from either side. However, Patent watch services also keep an eye on the Patents or Patent application that may prove beneficial to us.

Related Article: Patent Monitoring Report: Learn All Its Elements

Also, the service watches over any targeted patent or patent application for its current status or prosecution stage.

Patent Watch Service: Advantages

The watch service regarding Patent proves very useful for any client in order to keep a track of other Patents or Patent applications. Moreover, this helps the client to keep in touch with upcoming opportunities and dodge any threat in terms of Patents.

Related Article: Need to Implement Patent Watching Service

Some major aspects of Patent watch services are:

The continuous watch helps to get an idea of upcoming technologies. Also, this aids the R&D department of the firm in terms of new ideas.

It becomes easy to track and file against the Patent or Patent applications that may infringe the claims in your Patent.

We can identify abandoned and expired Patents and use them in the future.

If the claims in your Patent are somehow infringing the rights of other Patent/application, these services notify you. This allows you to make necessary changes before the third party files against you.

They help to remain updated with the field of competition. Thus, you can plan accordingly and prepare your strategies for competing.

Patent Watch Service: Types

According to the requirement of the client, He/she can customize the criteria of monitoring the Patents or Patent applications. The basic types of watch services for Patent are:

Technical Patent Watch

Technical Patent watch covers the search for recently accepted\published Patents in the related technical field.

Competitor Patent Watch

As the name suggests, the competitor Patent watch is done to get updates regarding the granting, rejection, expiration or publishing of the Patent application of the competitors in a similar field.

Related Article: Patent Paralegal: Duties to Perform

Patent Legal status Watch

This Watch service is provided to get the status of the Patent application during prosecution and Patent after grant. Moreover, it helps to address the client for any changes or alterations required in the Patent.

Design Watch

The design watch service helps to monitor newly accepted or published Design Patents. It also tracks down the expired, abandoned or rejected Patent applications.

Infringement Watch

The Infringement Watch service monitors fresh Evidence of Use (EOU) in different formats i.e. Goods, services, process, and others.

What does The Patent Watch Company serve?

The Patent watch company provides you the most efficient results with the help of our experts and technical team. We perform a manual search over a wide range of database to provide a result of the global level.

Also, we provide the results within the timeline and with minimum investment. We believe in quality work and proper satisfaction of the customer. You get better than what you ask for. To grasp more of our related services reach us at “The Patent Watch Company.”

1. **Important Tips and Tricks to Remember about Patent Illustrations**

Patent illustrations are a pivotal part of your patent application. Even if you have a phenomenal way with words while describing your invention, using patent illustrations is a great tool. An examiner runs a fine-tooth comb over your application. This involves comparisons with any relevant prior art. In order to boost your chances of getting a grant, you have to ensure that your claims and specifications stand out. A simple hack is utilizing your patent illustrations to the maximum. Furthermore, a good illustration helps you beyond the grant of your patent application. In patent infringement cases, a judge can make a more informed decision if your drawing is precise. However, ensure that you adhere to the USPTO guidelines so that your illustration helps your case and not hamper it.

This article aims to shed light some key tips to remember about patent illustrations.

Why do you need patent illustrations?

You need to include at least one patent illustration to explain your invention better. A patent illustration not only compliments your descriptions but it’s also a requirement under the US Patent Law. Your application might not make the cut if the description is vague or generic. The reason is that this makes it easier to find an overlapping prior art for it. Your explanation of the invention needs to be elaborate and distinct. Hence, including patent illustrations is always advisable.

What are the requirements of patent illustrations?

We shall now talk about the basic rules. Following are the vital instructions from The Manual of Patent Examining Procedures that you need to adhere to:

Create all your illustrations on white A4 matte paper that is flexible and strong. Dimensions are as follows: 21cm x 29.7cm or 21.6cm x 27.9 cm.

Margins should be as follows:

2.5 cm on the top

1.0 cm on the bottom

1.5 cm on the right side

2.5 cm on the left side

Every illustration must be black and white in color and no other color.

You may use colors only when a part of the invention absolutely requires you to use different colors while explaining. You must also file a separate petition with the USPTO to avail permission for the same.

You must use India ink for all illustrations.

Each illustration must include the invention name, name of the inventor, and application number.

Ensure that the upon rescaling the drawing, it will not be crowded when reproduced at 2/3 size. Don’t write indications of scale like “1/2” because that will lose its meaning upon rescaling.

You may use symbols and legends if necessary to describe the invention.

Use lead lines to redirect the reader from the drawing to the associated symbol in the description.

You can also include charts and diagrams in your illustrations.

The manual encourages you to use shading. However, avoid solid black shading except on bar graphs or to represent color.

Superimposition of drawings should not happen.

You don’t need an illustration if your patent is about a chemical compound or process.

The USPTO allows you to use photos, but only for Utility patents and Design patents. Photographs serve the purpose of providing intricate details of the invention which might be hard to draw. Hence, they must be in high definition to depict everything clearly. They must follow the same rules in terms of the type, size, and margins of the drawing.

Related article: When to use shading in Patent Illustrations?

Click Here to Download (Free Samples)

Patent illustrations: Views

If your invention is a physical object, you should cover all the angles; top, bottom, and all the sides. Wherever applicable, you should include the following views of your invention:

Six views (front, back, right, left, top, and bottom) for 3D objects and two views (front and back) for 2D objects.

Three-dimensional perspective views

Sectional views to depict the functionality

Exploded views to represent how each part works during the operation of the invention

You can choose not to depict the surfaces which are without ornamentations. We told you before that the USPTO law encourages shading. It is another essential component of patent illustrations. It depicts depth, contour, and texture. You should use dots, lines, and distinctive patterns for this.

How to make the illustrations?

You now know the important parameters to keep in mind while making patent illustrations. But how to finally create them? Generally, there are 3 broad ways to obtain your patent illustrations:

Hand-made Drawings

If you’re proficient in illustration skills and the invention is easy to represent then you can simply draw them yourself. However, consulting an expert to ensure that your drawings meet the USPTO requirements is a safe option. There is nothing wrong with hand-made illustrations. Therefore, as long as it’s serving the purpose of fully describing the invention and follows all guidelines, you can use it.

Computer Aided Design (CAD) Software Drawings

You can also use CAD software to create professional-grade patent illustrations. Such software has a wide variety of features which help you save a lot of time. It becomes easier to produce elaborate drawings and make changes to existing drawings when you are using a computer. Essentially, right from rendering a new drawing to reproducing one with modifications, working on a computer is faster and simpler. However, the use of such software drawings come with a little bit of a risk in the form of errors. So it is safer to consult a patent illustrator for your drawings.

Patent Illustrators

If creating your own drawings seems difficult for you, then you can seek professional assistance. Patent illustrators have a good understanding of the USPTO requirements for the drawings and are proficient in various illustration methods. A patent illustrator can make both hand-made and CAD drawing for you. Of course, there is a reassurance in their work because they have the right experience and knowledge. Hence, they can help you decide the best way to depict your invention to the best advantage.

Need a professional illustrator? – Patent Illustration Express

It is often the case that producing your own patent illustrations becomes overwhelming. The margins for error are too fine and the guidelines are too many. If you feel the need to consult a professional, Patent Illustration Express is here to help you. Our team of professionals boasts years of experience and diverse skill-set of software and handmade drawings. We specialize in Utility Patent and Design Patent drawings. Your satisfaction is paramount to us. We offer an incredibly high turn around time and unlimited iterations, all at an extremely affordable price. So what are you waiting for?

1. **Trademark Watch and its Significance**

Trademark watch helps in protecting the registered Trademark from the potential infringements. It monitors trademarks which are registered or in the mid of the registration process to check any potential infringement. If the company finds any mark resembling or violating the rights of the original Trademark, it can file an application against the infringing party.

Additionally, it helps companies to keep an eye on their trademarks as the infringement of the Trademark can cause serious troubles. It may lead to a drop in sales and degradation of the reputation of the company. Thus, Trademark monitoring is required.

Trademark Watch: Importance

It helps to monitor the Potential Infringers and allows the company to take certain steps to protect Intellectual property rights.

Additionally, it also strengthens the business policies.

For example – You can watch the activities of the competitors and know the fields they are going to enter. Thus, you can make the required changes to the Business policies accordingly.

Due to the shortage of time and resources, some companies cant keep a track of the Trademark infringement. Here, the Trademark watch service handles the work and allows the company to put more time and efforts for better output.

Trademark monitoring helps to identify the infringers. Thus, the company can generate revenue (penalty) from the infringing party for misusing their mark.

USPTO provides 30 days’ time period to file an application against Trademark infringement. Filing the application after the given time period is considered untimely and costs more. Trademark watch helps by notifying the company about the infringement at the earliest and ensures enough time to file an application.

Related Articles: Hire a Trademark Attorney: What’s The Need?

Our Approach:

We, at The Trademark Watch Company, have a tea of experienced professionals who deliver the best quality work to our clients. Our experts use a wide range of database to provide you a global level of outcome. We are a trusted organization in providing 100% customer satisfaction in quick turnaround time. Moreover, we work on manual search methodologies which prevent any useful information to slip through our hands. You can also obtain your desired outcome online. Do give a visit to know how things work and get our trademark watch samples by making a little inquiry.

1. **Importance of Patent Proofreading Services**

Patent proofreading services provide a thorough inspection of the patent draft to look for error(s), which may lead to patent objection and/or rejection. Objection for patent grant occurs when the draft is not in the proper format or when it has mistakes. Rejection for patent grant occurs when along with the mistakes the invention doesn’t stand the criteria of patentability. Patent proofreading comes into action after preparation of a patent draft. Since patent grant depends on well drafting of patent specifications, this makes patent proofreading indispensable after preparing a patent draft.

Errors in a patent draft are diverse require an eagle eye for in-depth scrutiny of the documents. They can be in the form of grammatical errors, format, technical, claim construction errors and errors in drawings.

Importance of patent proofreading Services

Patent Proofreading Services: Importance

Proofreading reduces the number of office actions raised at the patent office.

The enforceability of the patent depends on the delivery of the patent draft.

The inventor might not be able to highlight the errors at his end, an agent will provide with the details of the errors.

Help in proper claim construction so that it doesn’t infringe upon any prior invention or delimit the scope of our invention.

Patent proof-readers ensure zero redundancy in technical, format and grammatical mistakes.

For adding missing crucial aspects of the invention.

Saves the cost, time and efforts on the part of the inventor.

Also Read: Why you need the Proofreading of Patent Claims?

The Elements of Consideration:

Claims: proofreading of the claims removes the scope of ambiguity and also verifies if something is missing from the claim set.

Invention statement: proper and precise delivery of the invention statement is important. Invention statement targets both aware of and out-of-subject audience. Information delivery is in such a manner, that it educates people who don’t have prior knowledge related to the subject.

Grammar: patent proofreading services help deliver sentences in a precise and unambiguous way by narrow-downing the number of grammatical mistakes.

Terminology: the technical terminologies are the soul of a patent application. Therefore, one must not go wrong while elaborating the terminologies. Moreover, patent proofreading services help go through the technical jargons in order to deliver their literal meaning.

Drawing: patent drawings give a visual presentation of a well-elaborated invention. Patent proof-readers remove the unwanted complexity from the drawings, which in turn, increases the chances of getting a patent grant.

References: to cross verify references to check “already defined or mentioned” references and to nullify them.

Standards: patent proofreading ensures whether the format and language of the application is as per that jurisdiction laws or not.

Reliability Verification: patent proofreading services ensure a reliable portray of the invention. They do this by checking all its aspects, one more time, before drafting the final application.

What do We Ensure?

Our professional proofreaders make sure that your patent application sails smoothly through every prosecution tollgate. Our patent proofreading services team performs a visual inspection and cross-checking of all the patent applications. They use state-of-the-art tools to deliver a perfect patent draft. We provide a comprehensive report with correction suggestions and a certificate of correction (if required). We maintain 100% confidentiality of your data, satisfying our clients globally for more than 10 years. To reach us, visit The Patent Proofreading Company.

1. **Multiple Dependent Claims: When do we need them?**

Before getting on multiple dependent claims, let’s have a brief knowledge of what dependent claim is all about. A dependent claim is an embodiment of an independent claim of the invention. It defines the specificities of the invention. Multiple dependent claims define independent and dependent claims more explicitly. They work as an extension for a dependent or an independent claim filed seeking a similar patent.

Multiple dependent claims are basically dependent claims referring to more than one claim. Multiple dependent claims not individual claims and is equivalent to the number of claims on which they depend. Say, for instance, if a claim is dependent on 3 dependent or independent claims, then we have 3 claims instead of one.

Also Read: Omnibus Claim: Importance of Narrow and Broad Claim Scope

Multiple Dependent Claims in an example:

Claim 1: a door with a handle in the middle of the right.

Claim 2: the door of claim 1, wherein the handle is bolted from inside.

Claim 3: the door in claim 1 or 2, wherein the handle is made of leather.

Here, claim 1 is an independent claim; claim 2 is dependent on claim 1 and claim 3 is in reference to both claim 1 and 2, hence, multiple dependent claims.

Also Read: Jepson Claims- Know the Importance

Multiple Dependent Claims: Usage

No excess fees at the time of PCT filings: PCT doesn’t charge an excess fee for filing these claims, this helps to improve the scope of the claim at the time of international filing.

Claim(s) scope improvement: multiple dependent claims make the scope of the invention more explicit, this helps to avoid infringement.

What Do We bring?

Claims define the novelty of our invention and we, at Patent Drafting Catalyst, have a team of adept and experienced personnel engaged in the task of patent drafting. We provide anything and everything related to Patent Drafting service. We have 10+ years of experience catering the service. Our active team of 100+ patent drafters makes sure that the claims of your invention are so portrayed bypass the stages of prosecution without any hassle. For more information about our services, reach to us at Patent Drafting Catalyst.

1. **Trademark Filing Fees: A Quick Overview**

Trademark filing fees is an initial investment that protects your intellectual rights over your Trademark against any Infringement. The general range of Trademark filing fees is from 225$ to 400$. Also, it depends on the class of the goods/services mentioned in the application form.

Trademark application form: Types and Fees

Basically, there are three types of forms used for Trademark filing. These are classified according to the range of filing fees.

TEAS Plus

The TEAS plus form has the least filing price among the other forms (225$/class of goods or services). However, the filing requirements for this form are very strict. You must file a proper application and it is mandatory to fill all the fields in the form. Some major aspects to keep in mind while filing in TEAS plus category are:

It is preferable to file a certain medium of communication for concerns related to the application. It includes an online response to the office actions via TEAS. Also, for receiving all the queries regarding the application, mention a valid e-mail.

You must choose the goods/services that are present in the USPTO’s Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual (ID Manual).

It is necessary to pay the fees for all the classes in the application during the time of filing.

TEAS Reduced Fee

The TEAS reduced fee application charges $275/class of goods or services and you must agree to the following few requirements for filing this form:

You must submit all the relevant documents.

Must submit a valid e-mail so that USPTO can send you e-mails regarding the application status.

Key point: USPTO can charge you an extra fee of 125$/class of goods or services. If you can’t fulfill the necessities of TEAS Plus or TEAS RF.

TEAS Regular application

Filing the TEAS regular application charges the highest fee of $400/class of goods or services and must meet the minimum filing requirements.

Related Articles:Trademark Filing Timeline

Notice of Allowance

NOA is a written document to notify the successful crossing of the opposition phase for the Trademark application.

Some key points regarding NOA are:

The NOA (Notice of Allowance) is only applicable for Intent-to-use Trademark type applications.

The date of issue of NOA is very useful to decide the due date of filing the specimen of use (SOU). As you only have 6 months to file for SOU.

If you are unable to file the SOU or extension request during the given time period, your application is considered abandoned. This means that your application is removed from pending status and is not useful for registration process any more.

The fees for filing an extension request is 125$/class of goods or services.

Abandonment Fees

You need to pay a fee of 100$/class for continuing the application process if the application falls under the category of Abandoned status.

Document Maintenance Charges

 Other than the Trademark filing fees, you also pay for the Trademark maintenance. The Trademark filing fees is a part of the registration process and the Trademark maintenance fees is a part of the post-grant process. Some of the maintenance charges are mentioned below:

A statement approved by the Trademark owner is called Section 8 declaration. The filing date for the declaration lies between the fifth and sixth year of registration. The statement includes 2 main points:

The trademark is in commercial use with the goods/services mentioned at the time of registration.

The trademark is not in commercial use due to some special reasons or circumstances.

The fees for Section 8 declaration filing is 125$/class of goods or services.

USPTO accepts the Section 8 declaration statements after 6 months from the due date; this period is called grace period. Also, the charges of Declarations submitted on the grace period are 100$/class of goods or services.

Moreover, during the grace period, you do a combined filing of section 8 declaration and section 9 renewal applications.

The combined filing charges 200$/class of goods or services, 100$/class for each.

Services at The Trademark Filing Company

The Trademark filing company serves you with the most pertinent solutions. Our professional squad helps you to file a perfect Trademark application within minimum time. We also provide you with free iterations until complete satisfaction. Also, we have proved ourselves as a trusted organization in 100% positive customer review. Our post-grant services provide you long-lasting results. Place your order online at a very pocket-friendly price. We keep you update with every step of the process. To know more about our services, reach to The Trademark Filing Company.

1. **How to Perform a TESS Trademark Search?**

The TESS (Trademark Electronic Search System) is a searchable electronic database of registered, approved, and closed trademark applications. Also, it provides a free search over the data of the past three decades. The legal Trademark professionals perform the TESS Trademark Search on the database to check for any possible infringement.

The USPTO is responsible for publishing and maintenance of TESS. This includes updating up to three million pending or accepted applications per week.

Types of TESS Trademark Search:

The TESS consists of 19 term fields and eight search operations. Basically, there two types of Trademark search according to the search requirement. The search requirement is based on either word or design. The two types of Trademark searches are:

Basic Word Mark Search

It is the easiest way for using TESS and allows us to search for the accepted or pending applications. You can add singular/ plural terms or search for dead/alive registration process during the advanced search. The results are obtained from TARR (Trademark Applications and Registrations Retrieval) server.

Structured Word or Design Mark Search

It is used to find both Trademarks and design marks. However, open the Design Search Code Manual for the right code before you search for design marks. Moreover, you can decide the number of results you want to see on a single page. TESS Trademark Search

The site also contains Browse Dictionary function to find the Trademark Official Gazette. It is a weekly journal that contains recently published, canceled or updated applications. You can arrange them according to the registration or publication date. TESS Trademark Search

The Functioning of the TESS Trademark Search:

The basic functions like AND/OR help to find more than one term. Also, advanced functions like NOT, SAME, XOR or WITH help you to get more specific results. To search for a specific field, use Result Must Contain.

The advanced search provides more information to the user such as:

Basic index

Present status

Owner’s name

Filing date

A Full record contains the following points:

Link to check Trademark status on the TARR

ASSIGN status of the application

Link of the documents inside ‘Trademark Document status retrieval’

Status and files of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board

Trademark image

Steps for the TESS Trademark Search in USPTO:

Visit the USPTO website.

Now you are at the USPTO Trademark database. You can click on the TESS to proceed for the Trademark search. TESS Trademark Search

Here you will get 3 basic types of search options and 2 additional search options.

Basic Search Options:

Word Mark Search (New User)

You can use this option to search for word marks but not design marks. The only options you need to fill are a Search term, Field and Result must Contain. Moreover, you can select the Search type between live/Dead and Singular/plural.

Word/Design Mark Search (Structured)

You can use this option to search word/design marks simultaneously or selectively. Also, you can use operators like AND, NOR, XOR, NOT, SAME.

NOTE: Use the Design Search Code Manual to find the proper Design Codes.

Word/Design Mark Search (Free Form)

It allows you to construct word/design searches using Boolean logic and various search fields. You can also make choices between singular or plural search.

 NOTE: Use the Design Search Code Manual to find the related Design Codes.

Additional Search Options:

Browse Dictionary (Browse Dictionary)

It allows you to surf all the fields of the database, whether it be collective or particular fields. The outcomes are obtained in dictionary-style (alphabetic) format.

Search OG Publication Date or Registration Date (Search OG)

In this, you can search the Official Gazette for the marks that are published or registered on a certain date. However, you need to select the required options among Field, Operator, OG date, Plural, etc.

Now click on the Trademarks > Application process > Searching Trademarks. TESS Trademark Search

The benefits of The Trademark Search Company

The Trademark search company consists of a team of legal expertise. Our professionals keep themselves updated about new software tool and guidelines of the USPTO. It helps them to provide best Trademark Search Solution to our clients. As we perform a manual search on a global Trademark database. This ensures the most relevant and accurate outputs. Also, we always work for total customer satisfaction at a very budget-friendly price. Moreover, you can place your order online can obtain the results within the deadlines. To get a hold of more of our services, please do visit The Trademark Search Company.

1. **What is Prior Art?**

A Prior Art is everything about an Invention, already available in public before the registration of application by the Inventor. This simply means that the invention is no longer a novel as it was already available. It basically means any disclosure of the contents of a claim, prior to the application for patent. Claims section is the main area that decides the scope of Patent. Therefore, you cannot consider working as a Patent granting subject if similar claims are already stated somewhere else. Also, National patent laws provide various definitions of what constitutes prior art and in which situations. However, this may vary from one territorial rules to another. The patent application is rejected if the examination reveals that an invention is not novel. Also, the court can annul a granted Patent if it finds that the Invention was not novel.

Prior Art Pre-requisites

So, to invalidate a Patent, the first step is to locate the potential “prior art” documents against the patent’s claims. Now, the question arises so as what to consider as prior art and what not? You can easily figure out the answer by checking the three major pre-requisite conditions.

Patent application filing date: A new application is not suitable for patenting if the Inventor discloses claims that are already present in some existing valid publication. Anything found similar to existing publication before the date of its filing, will count as prior art.

Public availability: Before the filing day, if the public has access to the mentioned claims then it is considered as a relevant prior art. Since this will ensure that the invention is already out among the people and is no longer novel in its terms. Thus, making it invalid for attaining patentability.

Enabling disclosure: Public disclosure is fruitful when the document enables an average skilled person to practice the invention as claimed. However, the language may only describe the basic idea behind the invention but does not enable a skilled person to construct the invention. Well, You can consider a document ‘enabling’ in nature if it is able to educate a skilled person about the invention.

Related Article: Patent Filing Cost

Valid Prior Art Forms:

Invalidating a particular invention begins with searching for available literature that describes the invention in whole or in part. It must anticipate the same set of claims, either implicitly or explicitly, in the same composition to invalidate any invention. Since the invention is carried out on the basis of its claims. If so, the invention will no longer be novel over that prior art document. These art documents are termed as “killer prior art”.

Valid prior art

Publications: Prior art consists of any patents, scientific publications, textbooks, newspapers, lectures, demonstrations, exhibitions, and any other disclosure. It doesn’t depend on the language used, the targeted audience, the number of copies created, and whether any copies bought or read by third parties. All these instances constitute prior art, as long as a member of the public could gain access to it without violating a secrecy obligation or doing something illegal.

Publicly available products: A product that includes the same consistency of the same substances or chemicals as another is considered prior art. Also, those features which the public could observe must count as prior art. However, you need to ensure that the product is not sold and is only demonstrated to the public. Moreover, it creates an unfavorable condition for prior art if the invention was not used publicly.

Non-disclosure agreements: In case if the inventor wants to disclose his invention before filing a patent application. So as to evaluate the commercial value or to get help in developing a prototype. Everything that is done in confidence is not counted as prior art. A written non-disclosure agreement (NDA), signed by both parties would serve the best in maintaining the confidentiality of discussion.

Oral disclosures: Non-confidential discussions between the inventor and a third party, usually also count as prior art. Also, it can include any statement made orally, such as lectures. In some cases, a transcript or recording (if available) serves as a proof or prior art. Note that the transcript itself also counts as prior art from the day it was published. Thus, it becomes easier to use the transcript as prior art than to use it as evidence of an earlier disclosure. However, this happens if the patent application is filed after the publication of the transcript.

Invalid Prior art Forms:

After filing date of your application, if the Information becomes publically available, it is not considered as prior art. Similarly, those Patent applications do not qualify for prior art which is filed after the filing of your application.

Invalid prior art

Publications missing enabling details: The Patent can get rejected as the Prior art if it lacks disclosure of sufficient details that are crucial for making of the Invention. This means you should provide enough details about the Invention such that anyone can use them and easily rebuild the invention later.

Abandoned Patent Applications: In a few cases, the abandoned Patent applications remain confidential, this prevents them to be prior art. Also, you cant publish the Provisional patent applications that somehow are not converted to Non-provisional Patent applications.

Trade Secrets: You can’t use Trade secrets as prior art because they come under the category of confidential property. Thus, even if you developed the same Trade secret as of another company, they can’t file it as prior art against your application.

Confidential Disclosers: A company requires disclosure of the invention to grab good deals, investment, and interest of partners. However, the party cannot use this disclosed information as prior art against your patent application. Also, you must sign an NDA (Non-Disclosure Agreement) with the other party to make the information confidential.

We provide the best among the rest!

You now understand what prior art is. Also, what is the importance of ensuring that you don’t have any prior art for your invention? To be certain of this, you must conduct a comprehensive prior art search, covering all your bases. It is highly advisable that you hire a professional for this. TPSF has 8+ years of experience, and we boast 100+ full-time searchers in 30+ tech areas. Our comprehensive services are multi-lingual, covering 16+ languages and 100+ countries. We ensure that our search results help you draft applications that not only cover current state-of-the-art but all possible future infringements. To know more about us, please visit The Patent Search Firm.

1. **Top 5 most unusual Illustrations**

People come up with all sorts of ideas, which may include some unusual inventions too. Naturally, these inventions involve unusual illustrations which depict the invention. Unless the elucidation of the invention is concise, the application will almost certainly face rejection because of its perceptible absurdness. We already know that this means the illustrations will play a big hand here. So if you come across a weird, yet an innovative idea, don’t brush it off immediately. Entities in the past have had success in getting patents for such ideas.

This article talks about such absurd patents and their unusual illustrations. Patent illustrators might want to take a closer look here.

The most unusual illustrations ever created

1. High Five Machine

High Five Machine

Fig 1: High Five Machine

Patent No: US5356330A

The inventor got his “hands” on the patent in 1993. The purpose of the machine is to stimulate the celebratory effect of high-5’ing if there is nobody else around you. The patent instructs you to affix the high-five machine to the wall or set it on a table. This would give you a more realistic feel and serve its purpose better. Nonetheless, we still admire the illustrator for catching the intricacy here.

2. Anti-Eating Face Mask

Anti-Eating Face Mask

Fig 2: Anti-Eating Face Mask

Patent No: US4344424A

The patent grant came in 1982. The mask is cage-like and serves the purpose of not allowing anything to go into the mouth. It has a cup-shaped mesh to allow the person to breathe, but it makes it nearly impossible to eat anything. This can serve as an extreme measure for those wanting to lose weight but have little control over themselves. However, how would you stop hungry dieters from taking this contraption off? We don’t know, maybe the inventor does.

Is it just us or does this mask look like the one Bane from Batman wears? The unusual illustrations certainly make it look similar.

3. Reward Candy Dispenser

Reward Candy Dispenser

Fig 3: Reward Candy Dispenser

Patent No: US5823386A

The inventor got his “reward” of the patent in 1998. This unique innovation is for those of you who spend long hours at the desk. An optical sensor attaches to your screen to monitor your activity. When you accomplish a goal, a signal is sent to a container on your desk. Subsequently, the system will release a piece of candy into the chute. What a way to motivate your workers.

4. “Cool” Shoes

"Cool Shoes"

Fig 4: “Cool” Shoes

Patent No: US5375430A

The patent grant came in 1994. An ingenious inventor came up with these incredibly unique, air-conditioned shoes. The cooling mechanism is synonymous to any air-conditioner with a few tweaks. A series of chambers in the heel contract like mini-bellows as you take a step. This exerts force on a set of coolant-filled coils that turn the ambient heat to chilled air. A pad running under the foot expels this chilled air, literally cooling your heels. There is also a bonus. With an easy reversal, the cooling chambers reverse their function, becoming a foot warmer for winter months.

You can see the unusual illustrations for yourself and decide if you would ever want to have such “cool shoes”.

5. Banana Suitcase

Banana Suitcase,

Fig 5: Banana Suitcase

Patent No: US6612440B1

Who doesn’t love having bananas to recharge themselves in the middle of the day? Although, bad things can happen. Other items in your bag might press against your precious banana and ultimately squish it. Nobody likes that. But thankfully someone came up with a solution for this. This suitcase will not only serve as a banana protector but will also refrain it from suffocating inside, because of its breathing pores. An invention to cherish indeed.

Need help with your illustrations? Professional Patent Illustrators

You may have a brilliant invention, deserving of a patent. But by now you already know how important it is to get the illustrations on point. If you want a professional’s touch, reach out to us. Professional Patent Illustrators boast 10+ years of experience in delivering top quality patent illustrations. We specialize in Utility patents and Design patents, with thorough knowledge of the latest guidelines and norms. Our turn around time is incredibly fast and we guarantee any number of iterations until we satisfy your needs. To make an inquiry, contact us on Professional Patent Illustrators.

1. **Patent Docketing Software: Its Importance and Applications**

Patent Docketing is a process of managing patent applications. In addition to managing Patent Applications, patent docketers also keep a track on the deadlines, due dates, updating the inventor the requirements as posed by the patent office. With the introduction of Patent docketing software the management of applications and documents associated with patent filing became a hassle-free task. Besides this, prompt fetching of the documents and updating the clients about the due dates has become an easy-to-do task.

Also read: Patent Filing: Know How to Proceed

Note: The automated docketing software services are not 100% accurate. Hence, to ensure the integrity of the docket made through an automatic mode is always followed by manual docketing. Therefore, maintenance of a manual docket is must by expert paralegals.

Features of a good patent docketing software:

Complies with the patent laws of the country.

Reflects PTO file history in a chronological manner.

Is adaptable to one’s style of docketing.

Sends real-time alerts of important due dates and deadlines to clients and attorneys maintaining an effective workflow.

Generates customized reports.

Generates invoice for clients automatically upon completion of tasks.

Many PTOs provide real-time access to their docketing databases for filing related applications.

Availability of Software Interface in different languages.

The software is secure, robust and future ready.

Patent Docketing Software - Its Importance

Patent Docketing Software: Significance/Importance

People these days, are becoming more aware of protecting their inventions with a patent grant. Hence, it becomes important to handle client’s patent documents proficiently and to update them about the due-dates beforehand. Therefore, along with manual docketing, docketing software has come into practice to ease the process of docketing.

The Patent Docketing Software helps to increase the efficiency of IP firms and/or corporations by –

Providing easy access to the patent portfolios;

Locating particular patent applications;

Differentiating domestic and international patent applications of the inventor;

Locating old patent applications on just a click;

Increasing efficiency and saves time and money;

Providing intimation of due-dates to the clients and attorneys on time;

Maintaining a track of the inward and outward movement of the documents.

Patent Docketing Software: Applications

Patent Docketing Software maintains-

International and Domestic patent details;

Inventor’s details (Name, Contact details and Address);

Information of the agents and attorneys associated with the inventor’s invention;

Locating Patents that are under the process of examination or prosecution;

Keeps a record of all the fee receipts received from the patent office.

What do we bring?

Our team of efficient patent docketing specialists makes sure to maintain our client’s patent portfolios are both in order and are accessible at the time of requirement. We ensure maintaining the authenticity of the information so provided by the client. Moreover, we provide double docketing solutions, reminders through email and/or phone, and updates regarding the necessities raised by the patent office to ensure a timely patent grant. Our expert docketers largely rely on their proficiency and on various dependable state-of-the-art-tools.To name a few- IP Manager, Anaqua, Memotech, Docket Trak, Patricia, Inteum, IPfolio, Claim Master, DIAMS, Alt Legal and Equinox. The practice of maintenance of a manual patent docket is religiously followed to ensure the credibility of the docket.

1. **Patent Paralegal vs Attorney: The Difference You Must Know**

While dealing with legal matters people often come up with this query of taking their concern to a Paralegal or to an Attorney. They both are personnel of law and in many jurisdictions have overlapping responsibilities. But at the same time, they serve their purpose and have their specific tasks and responsibilities. This article will give you a clear view of the terms that distinguish between Paralegals and Attorneys.

Let’s get our facts straight by directly looking at the factors:

Paralegal Vs Attorney: Points of Difference

S.No. Criteria Paralegal Attorney

1 Paralegal vs Attorney: Basic Definition A legal assistant or paralegal by education training and work experience is a person of law. Employed or retained by a lawyer, law office, corporation, governmental agency. Furthermore, they are responsible for performing specifically delegated substantive legal work for which a lawyer is responsible. An Attorney acts as a representative for people in legal matters. That is, they speak for their clients in civil and criminal litigations.

2 Paralegal vs Attorney: Education (In the US) Distance learning and/or online paralegal programs (not recommended);

Community and Junior colleges offer 2-year Associates degrees;

Certificate programs offered by business and proprietary schools, ranging from several months to a year in length;

Four-year college and university programs offering degrees in paralegal studies;

Advanced degree programs offering master’s degrees in paralegal studies, legal administration, or legal studies

It takes 4 years of undergraduate study and 3 years of Law study.

A Graduate degree in English, Economics, History, Public Speaking, Mathematics, or a graduate in any discipline.

ABA-approved law schools take LSAT exam for testing the aptitude of the applicant.

3 Paralegal vs Attorney: Work profile Day of a paralegal involves preparing legal documents, research work, writing reports, filing and organizing important paperwork. They represent their clients in the civil and criminal litigations- Power of Attorney.

4 Paralegal vs. Attorney: American Bar Association (ABA) Exam Not compulsory to clear the bar council exam. However, graduates who take up ABA-approved paralegal programs get a distinct advantage over non-ABA approved paralegals. It is compulsory to clear the bar council exam. In order to maintain the ABA-license, pay a prescribed fee at regular intervals.

5

 Paralegal vs Attorney: Important Skills/Qualities Good oral as well as written communication skills: As paralegals work under attorneys, for clients, and with fellow paralegals. Therefore, it is important to have upright communication skills for having a good equation with them.

Prioritizing work and multi-tasking: work of a paralegal majorly involves preparing documents, memos, filing and communicating the work to attorneys and clients. This makes prioritizing task an important aspect of their work schedule.

Researching: a paralegal is a master of performing secondary research (internet research) and has investigation skills for finding out information.

Updated with Modern Technology: an efficient paralegal is well-versed with modern technology and software. Modern filing system involves using spreadsheets, e-filing, presentation software(s), etc.

Team worker: a paralegal is an efficient team-worker who balances working with people who are more experienced (Attorneys, opposing lawyers,) than him/her.

Communication skills: attorneys are great orators (speakers) as well as listeners which helps them convincing the Judge/ Jury in the courtroom.

Analytical skills: the analytical skill of absorbing and sorting the information put forth by the clients and opposition. At the same time, the attorney has to manage the information and come up to a reasonable conclusion.

Research skills: an attorney has an investigative mind in order to perform in-depth primary as well as secondary research.

Accurate judgment: attorneys have a great sense of judgment while dealing with their clients and the opposition. They have a strong ability to look for weakness and strengths of arguments.

Works in Solitude: An attorney spends time in solitude, thinks outside the box and comes up with creative solutions for solving problems faced in civil and criminal litigation.

 Abbreviations in the table:

ABA- American Bar Association; LSAT- Law School Admission Test.

Also Read: IP Paralegal Training: Know How to Start With

Our Approach:

Our team, at Patent Paralegal force, ensures best-in-class professional services to our clients across the world. The pool of services includes patent docketing for many countries, end-to-end IDS management, data proofreading and verification services using state-of-the-art tools. We monitor your patent application on a regular basis and notify you about the latest patents in your field of invention. Our timely delivery of paralegal support services is available at cost-effective prices. To know more about our services, reach us at Patent Paralegal Force.

1. **Significance of Information Disclosure Statement (IDS)**

Before analyzing the significance of Information Disclosure Statement, let’s first understand its literal meaning and the areas of its usage. IDS, as its name depicts is a statement that comprises of all the information or details regarding prior art. The applicant files a patent application according to the USPTO guidelines. While doing so he/she submits all the relevant background information of the invention to the USPTO during the patent prosecution process.

There is a possibility that an applicant may fail to submit all the information or misses any part of the relevant prior art. In this case, the patent may get into trouble regarding its issue or the application might become invalid. Not only it’s the responsibility of the applicant, but at the same time, patent attorneys or agents providing help must focus on disclosing the complete information. The applicant needs to ensure that complete information is there in the IDS.

Also Read: US Patent Proofreading – with USPTO Best Practices

Major Significance of Information Disclosure Statement:

In order to get on to the significance of IDS, first, understand the meaning and importance of prior art. Prior art, in short, is evidence which shows that your invention is known to people. It does not need to have physical form; it is anything that is previously explained by someone that contains the use of technology similar to your invention. IDS describes all the claimed prior art and technology in a patent invention.

Providing detailed IDS shows the good faith and candor of the applicant. Try to include all the information that may affect the patentability of your invention. It is on the applicant to come up with IDS. This is so because he/she is more knowledgeable of the prior art in the field of invention.

If you fail to comply with the rules of filing IDS, the patent grant over your invention becomes unenforceable. This will happen because; it gives an impression that the inventor didn’t disclose the prior art of which he/she was aware.

In short, Information Disclosure Statement, as the name suggests is about writing in detail about the prior art which the applicant has information about. He/she doesn’t need to perform prior-art search especially in order to file IDS.

Also Read: Things To Do Before Patenting Something

Need for filing Information Disclosure Statement:

According to the United States Code title 35 and related sections of 37 CFR and the Manual of Patent Examining Procedure (MPEP) it is the duty of the patent applicants to submit relevant art and background that the applicant is aware of.

If the prior art of your invention meets any of the following criteria, then you must file IDS-

if the prior art is used sold or known in the U.S.;

Got patent grant in another country;

Got featured in a publication in the U.S., or anywhere in the world;

Described in USPTO or other patent application; and

Already described in patented invention under USPTO.

Contents of Information Disclosure Statement:

The following things are must disclose in IDS in specified format:

Documents for consideration by the patent office- All Patents, Publications, applications or other information.

A legible copy of:

(i)Each foreign patent;(ii)Each publication or that portion of the publication, other than U.S. patents and U.S. patent application publications unless required by the Office;(iii)For each cited pending unpublished U.S. application.(iv)All other information or that portion that helped in the listing of the invention.

For each cited pending unpublished U.S. application.(iv)All other information or that portion that helped in the listing of the invention.

A concise explanation of the relevance, as understood by the individual most knowledgeable about the content of the information. The content includes each patent, publication, or other information that is not in the English language. The concise explanation is either separate from the applicant’s specification or incorporated therein.

A copy of the written English-language of a non-English-language document, or portion thereof which is readily available to any individual. Significance of Information Disclosure Statement

For further details refer USPTO 37 CFR 1.98.

How we serve the purpose?

With SmartIDS services, we prepare ready-to-file IDS forms in USPTO prescribed format. We compile the data with obligation, maintain and update it by timely and accurately reporting prior art references. Our team ensures 100% quality assurance with our IDS creation that has been remarkably appreciated by our corporate clients from more than 45 countries. Our services allow our clients to meet their IDS filing needs across many countries. To know more about our services, do visit SmartIDS Solution.

1. **Patent Filing Fees: A Quick Overview**

The patent filing fees are the basic amount an applicant pays to the patent office for submitting the patent application. It is a matter of utmost concern amongst the inventors about the cost incurred in order to get a patent grant. Moreover, various stages and factors can affect the cost of getting patent protection.

You as an inventor should be mindful of the fact that cost can differ from invention to invention depending upon the technology involved. Also, the procedure that you follow for filing your patent application can affect the cost of patent application filing.

Factors Affecting Patent Filing Fees :

Although the cost associated with the procedure of patent filing is constant. But, it can differ from invention to invention and from inventor to inventor.

The major factors include:

Patent Application Filing Mode: the cost changes with the change in the mode of filing the patent application. You can either go for online mode through EFS-Web or can follow the offline mode by reaching the patent office. For hand delivery, the applicant needs to reach the patent office in Alexandria, Virginia. You can also keep a track on the status of your application via Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR).

Note: you can avoid the non-electronic filing fee for a utility patent is by filing through EFS-Web (EFS-Electronic Filing System).

Small Entity status: the USPTO provides fee reduction for small and micro entity status organizations at the time of patent filing. You can follow 37 CFR 1.27 which defines small entity status and 37 CFR 1.29 which defines micro entities.

Patent Type: the application filing fee differs from the type of patent grant that you seek. The cost of filing a plant and design patent is the same while the cost of a utility patent is a bit higher.

Patent Application Types: a provisional patent application is an incomplete application which helps in seeking a priority date. The fee associated with a provisional application is comparatively less as compared to a non-provisional one. By filing a provisional patent application(s) one gets a period of 12 months to make improvements in their invention. This is how a provisional patent application works as a short term cost-effective solution.

Miscellaneous Factors: there are various other individual factors that might affect the total cost of filing a patent application. These include-

Reissuing patent application

Surcharge- late filing fee

More than 3 independent claim

Claims more than 20 in number

More than 20 reissue claims

Addition of Multiple Dependent Claims

Size fee of different patent application

Translation fees

Cost of sequence listing depending upon the size.

Classification of Patent Filing Fees:

The following tables describe the patent filing fees induced by the USPTO for various filing services. Also, how it differs from patent to patent, type of application, number of claims and many other factors.

Basic filing fees based on the type of patent and of provisional application:

The basic filing fees for a non-provisional application for a utility patent is comparatively higher from that of the provisional application. But the price of filing design and plant patent is comparatively lower.

S. No. Description Fee Small Entity Fee Micro Entity Fee

1. Utility Patent (paper filing requires non-electronic filing fees) $300.00 $150.00 $75.00

2. Non-Electronic Filing Fees $400 $200 $200

3. Utility Patent (electronic filing for small entities) n/a $75 n/a

4. Design Patent Filing Fees $200 $100 $50

5. Design Patent Filing Fee (CPA) $200 $100 $50

6. Plant Patent Filing Fees $200 $100 $50

7. Provisional Patent Application $280 $140 $70

Patent Reissue Fees:

A reissue patent comes into action when there is a need to correct an already issued patent. The filing fee of a reissue patent is the same as first time filing amount.

S. No. Description Fee Small Entity Fee Micro Entity Fee

1. Basic filing fees-reissue $300 $150 $75

2. Basic Filing Fees- Reissue (Design CPA) $300 $150 $75

Late Filing Fees:

The applicant pays a penalty amount if he/she fails to submit the fee before the due date given to them. The applicant pays both the basic filing fee and the fine of late filing stated below to the patent office

S. No. Description Fee Small Entity Fee Micro Entity Fee

1. Surcharge – Late filing fee, search fee, examination fee, inventor’s oath or declaration, or application filed without at least one claim or by reference $160 $80 $40

2. Surcharge – Late provisional filing fee or coversheet $60 $30 $15

Number and Types of Claims:

There is a set limit of 3 independent and 20 other claims. After reaching this number the applicant pays a certain amount for adding more claims to their patent application.

S. No. Description Fee Small Entity Fee Micro Entity Fee

1. More than 3 independent claims $460 $230 $115

2. Cost of Each reissue independent claim in excess of 3 $460 $230 $115

3. Cost of Each Claim more than 20 $100 $50 $25

4. Cost of Reissue Independent Claim more than 20 $100 $50 $25

5. Cost of Multiple Dependent Claims $820 $410 $205

Patent Application Size Fees:

The cost of filing increases with an increase in every 50 sheets of a patent application after a number of 100. This is applicable to all types of patent applications.

S. No. Description Fee Small Entity Fees Micro Entity Fees

1. Utility Application- for each additional 50 sheets that exceed 100 $400 $200 $100

2. Design Application- for each additional 50 sheets that exceed 100 $400 $200 $100

3. Plant Application- for each additional 50 sheets that exceed 100 $400 $200 $100

4. Reissue Application- for each additional 50 sheets that exceed 100 $400 $200 $100

5. Provisional Application Filing Fees- for each additional 50 sheets that exceed 100 $400 $200 $100

Submission of Sequence Listing and Non-English Translation Fees:

Patent office incurs a fee for translating the application from a foreign language to English. The applicant filed a certified translation, if not the examiner asks him/her to submit the same. In case of biological patent applications, patent office incurs cost on DNA sequence lists depending upon the length of the same.

S. No. Description Fee Small Entity Fees Micro Entity Fees

1. Non-English Translation Fees $140 $70 $35

2. Submission of sequence listings (300MB to 800MB) $1000 $500 $250

3. Submission of sequence listings (>800MB ) $10,000 $5000 $2500

What do we offer at The Patent Filing Company?

Patent filing is the most crucial step in the lifecycle of the patent. One needs to be very much aware of the crucial steps and the deadlines involved. Taking help of an expert works in favor of the applicant at the time of patent filing. Our experts at TPFC assist you throughout the patent filing process at fixed patent filing fees. Furthermore, we provide comprehensive patentability search report an IP licensing across many countries. To know more about services, do visit The Patent Filing Company.

1. **Importance of Patent Docketing Services**

Patent Docketing is all about managing the patent applications and other related documents. Thousands of patent applications are received at the USPTO, law firms and patent research companies. This demands the patent docketing services be efficient in managing the applications and of the related documents.

Patent docketing services are indispensable for law firms and patent research organizations. Files and statements in a patent application need a docket for their maintenance from point of patent filing till patent grant. A patent portfolio composed of detailed and specific information about the invention and the inventor. Additionally, legal fees (both due and paid) and client trust account no. details are also added.

Patent docketing involves managing the documents, sending reminders to the clients and attorneys of the upcoming deadlines. Along with this, docketers also keep scanned files of the documents, create templates for the same. They keep a log of all the e-mails received from the patent office (domestic and international PTOs and PCT offices).

What a Patent Docket contains?

Patent docket maintains patent portfolios. A patent portfolio has all the information about the inventor and his/her invention. Documents in the portfolio include- fee receipts, memos, drawings, specifications, etc. from the date of filing till all the proceedings. Patent docketer provides a docketing number which is a 25-digit long alphanumeric code uniquely identifies a patent application.

Also read: How Patent Docketing Works?

Patent Docketing Services: Significance

A patent draft associates with itself a lot of paperwork. Patent Docketing Services provide an efficient system for tracking and retrieval of that particular document when required.

Insurance companies associated with law firms provide patent docketing services to the firms. This prevents the cases of malpractice suits if the law firm misses any deadline.

Efficient patent docketing services builds trust amongst the clients towards their attorneys. (A missed deadline can lead to rejection of the application which in turn result in lost trust of the client).

 Our Approach:

We, at Perfect Patent Docketing, provide 4-eye quality check/ 4-phase hierarchy check of the docketed information. This involves-ensured docketing quality by the professional, by the peer and final validation by the subject matter expert. Our team of experienced professionals ensures the maintenance and procurement of all the necessary documents. Moreover, we make sure to meet all the deadlines in order to get you a timely patent grant. We have a quick turn-around-time of 3 days with an option of 1-day turn-around-time for urgent cases for docketing and procurement of information. Our efficient team of docketers with an experience of managing 6500+ portfolios. They work with the state-of-the-art docketing tools providing efficient patent docketing services to our clients. For more information, please do visit our service page.

# Patent Drafting : A Primary Guide for Beginners

Patent drafting is a process of writing a detailed application comprising patent description and claims. It is the very first step for patenting your invention. A patent draft is the soul of your invention and it conveys the information about the inventor and the invention. A patent draft comprises various parts. It requires both skill and science (technical knowledge) to prepare a draft that outshines others. Along with this, it follows a format which is in compliance with the intended jurisdiction.

Also read: Why Patent Docketing Process is Important for Your Patent?

Types of Patent Applications

Drafting a patent application is not an easy-to-do task. While preparing the draft the inventor keeps in mind the type of application he/she wants to go for. The composition and the purpose of drafting those patent applications are different from each other. Hence, it is essential to know the significance of the applications.

Also read: Patent Filing: Know How to Proceed

Patent Drafting broadly involves two types of Applications:

Provisional and Non-Provisional

S.No.

Provisional Application

Non-Provisional Application

1

Primary and incomplete application Final and complete application

2

Not checked by the examiner at PTO Checked by the examiner at PTO

3

Devoid of claims and drawings Comprised of claims and drawings

4 Helps seeking priority date

Filed within 12 months of filing a provisional application

Note:

Some Inventors hire agents and/or attorneys for preparing a patent draft, but it is not a compulsion. People hire agents so that their draft is in a proper format and is devoid of the mistakes that can lead to patent application objection and/or rejection.

Some attorneys prefer drafting complete non-provisional application while some prefer drafting it in parts.

The Priority date is the first filing date of the provisional patent application draft.

 Patent drafting A Quick guide for Beginners

Patent Drafting: Procedure

Prepare the Invention Disclosure Form: this form provides a detailed idea about your invention to the hired agent or attorney.

Interview with the Attorney/Agent: Interview with the attorney/ agent creates an in-depth understanding of the invention for both the inventor and the agent.

Create Sketches and Drawings: the sketches in your patent draft give a visual representation of your invention. Every figure should go with a little subtitle of what that drawing is about.

Draft the Claims: start writing the claims that have a broader scope and then the ones with a narrow scope. Claims are always written in single statements. Claims define the area on which we seeking a patent grant.

Prepare Abstract: after finalizing the figures and claims, prepare an abstract or summary which provides a quick go through of the invention. All the essential points regarding the invention are stated in a simple and unambiguous language.

Review the prepared draft: after preparing the final draft, the inventor/ applicant makes a final inspection of the draft.

Note: Prepare a patent draft keeping in mind the jurisdiction(s) and the language(s) accepted in that particular jurisdiction.

Also read about the importance of patent proofreading with USPTO best practices.

What Services Do We Provide?

At Patent drafting Catalyst, we have a team of more than 100 patent drafters who make sure that your patent application outshines the process of prosecution. We provide patent drafting services using state-of-art tools. We make sure that your patent application gets a timely grant with optimal disclosure that too at a budget-friendly rate. For more information, visit Patent Drafting Catalyst.

1. **Patent Types and IP Protections in India and the USA**

Organizations and individuals are filing patents for their inventions all over the world every day. The USA has made 3 classifications for patent types. More often than not, the same classifications top every search result when an individual searches for “Types of patents”. Sometimes, this information can prove to be misleading because this US-based classification does not apply to the Indian Patent System. It is important to understand that the Indian IP laws do offer similar protections for inventions. Strictly speaking, however, these protections don’t always fall under the category of any type of patent.

This article aims to eliminate this ambiguity. The purpose is to help inventors in India by guiding them towards the type of IP protection they should seek, depending on their requirements.

Also, Read: IPR Issues of India: Challenges to be Aware of before Filing

Patent Types : India and the USA

If you wish to seek any form of IP protection for your invention (in India and the USA), ensure that it is novel, functional, and non-obvious.

US-based patent types, their definitions, and their equivalents in the Indian IP laws.

Utility Patents – These are patents that cover how a product or process functions.

The term “Utility Patent” doesn’t exist in India. As mentioned before, there is NO such classification of patents in India, and what you get as a “patent” in India serves the same purpose as a “utility patent” in the USA.

Design Patents – A design patent covers how a product looks. A product’s usefulness has nothing to do with it. However, one can only get a design patent for a useful product or process.

There is no unambiguous term such as “design patents” in India. You can register an “Industrial Design” under the “Designs Act, 2000” if it meets the necessary requirements.

The Design Act states that:

The design should relate to features of shape, configuration, pattern or ornamentation applied or be applicable to an article.

The design should be applicable to any article via an industrial process.

The proprietor will get ‘copyrights in design’ for a period of 10 years, which is extendable at the proprietor’s wish. However, you should not get confused between The Design Act and The Copyrights Act.

A patent office will not involve itself with any issue relating to exploitation or commercialization of the registered design. Hence, you should register your invention under the Designs Act when you wish to protect only the design of the invention. For a higher level of protection, you should simply file a patent.

Plant Patents – If one creates a new species of plant, a plant patent prevents other people or companies from breeding it.

India is a member of WTO and a signatory of TRIPS. Therefore, it was compulsory for India to provide protection to plant varieties either by patents or by sui generis system or by both. Like most developing countries, India decided to exclude patents for plants and plant varieties but deployed a sui generis option. The sui generis system exists to ensure effective protection of plant varieties. India has enacted ‘The Protection of Plant Varieties and Farmers’ Rights’ (PPVFR) Act, 2001, for plant variety registration and protection.

Also, Read: Patent Registration in India: An all-encompassing guide

Why choose us? – Your Patent Team

An inventor should always be clear about the different patent types and other IP protections. If you are looking for protection for your invention, then consider Your Patent Team. YPT is a team of 225+ technology/industry experts who speak the inventor’s language and have a deep understanding of Indian & Global Patent Laws. We can help you with patent and industrial design registration along with many other IP services. Among other services, we provide IP commercialization and IP strategy support to help you decide the best level of protection for your invention.

1. **5 Major Benefits of Patent Paralegal Service**

A patent document is a legally structured document which requires expert supervision while construction. Patent paralegal service includes maintaining records, making new updates and timely retrieval and response drafting to the clients, and many more.

A Patent Paralegal not only works for IP matters but also work under the guidance of a patent attorney for various legal matters. Moreover, the work at a patent office and in patent research companies involves continuous paralegal services.

Before jumping onto the benefits of services of patent paralegal, let’s first understand the duties that patent paralegal perform.

Also Read: Patent Paralegal vs Attorney: The Differences You Must Know

Indispensable Patent Paralegal Duties:

Patent paralegals work under licensed patent attorneys and help in many aspects of patent paralegal matters. They do not practice law as licensed attorneys, but, their duties are vital for efficient legal workflow. Some of the major duties of a Patent Paralegal include:

Patent Document Preparation and Maintenance: Patent registration is a very hectic process and requires preparing and maintaining proper documents while filing. Furthermore, it involves maintenance of fee records (paid and unpaid), international filings requests and approved applications. Patent paralegals maintain a complete docket and timely update their clients about their due-dates.

Performing Patent Search: patent search is about finding already issued patents and published patent applications. In short, a patent search is a prior art search conducted while applying for a patent.

Patent Term Adjustment (PTA): this is about adjusting the lifespan of a patent grant. USPTO is responsible for carrying out the process. It happens when there is a delay while performing prosecution at the end of USPTO.

Responding to Office Actions: patent office examiner examines the application and informs the applicant about the errors if any. A patent paralegal thoroughly proofreads the application and removes even the slightest of the errors.

Conducting Research on Patent and Copyright Law: Patent Paralegals regularly update themselves with patent law and amendments so made by the USPTO. As the old legal procedures become obsolete with time. The updated information helps them keep up with the developments in the profession, also with this, they provide best-in-class services.

Also Read: Why patent assertion is important?

Benefits of Patent Paralegal Service

Benefits of Patent Paralegal Service :

Now that you are certain with what duties a patent paralegal performs. Let’s move on to what benefit it brings to us when we go out for filing a patent application.

Well-Informed Experts: Patent Paralegals are adept at dealing with legal documents. They assist you from the very first stage of patent filing till and beyond getting a patent grant.

Thorough Prior-Art Search: conducting a prior art search is becoming very crucial before filing a patent application. This is so because there are multiple inventors out there filing related patent applications. Therefore, one needs to conduct a thorough prior art search before taking another step. Performing a prior art search is an art in itself. As in, it takes a lot of technical understanding of the terms and to come to a conclusion. Patent paralegals are pro at fetching out any prior art if it so exists. This ensures you whether your invention is new or not.

Detailed Proofreading: while preparing patent documents, you might come up with minor mistakes that your eyes might not catch. These mistakes can emerge as a major setback for your patent application when it goes for prosecution. But, patent paralegal service agents ensure complete elimination of such mistakes.

Efficient Management: managing multiple patent applications and keeping up with the due dates is a lot of tasks. Missing on any due date can cost a lot to you as an inventor. You as an inventor might skip a date. On the other hand, patent paralegal service providers readily notify you as soon as a deadline arrives.

Quick Service: the services so provided have a quick turn-around-time. Patent paralegals profess upon handling patent applications. They offer all the essential pre-grant and post-grant services with great efficiency and precision.

Also Read: US Patent Proofreading – with USPTO Best Practices

What do we bring?

We, at Patent Paralegal Force, provide diligent paralegal services. Our team of paralegal professionals uses state-of-the-art tools to provide a bouquet of Patent paralegal service. Our reliable services include patent docketing, proofreading, end-to-end IDS management, document procurement, and application filing and form preparation. We ensure a quick turn-around-time and serving 45 countries around the globe at cost-effective rates. To know more about services, do visit Patent Paralegal Force.

1. **Design Patent Drawing Illustration: Key Tips (and Bonus Information)**

If you are working on a design patent application, then you must understand a design patent drawing illustration. They are a visual representation of a product’s design. There is a lot of information that you need to depict using these illustrations.

These include contours, shape, material texture, properties, proportions, etc. Essentially, you must ensure that absolutely no part of the product’s design should be left to the imagination. So you need to understand what to include in your design patent drawing illustration and how to include it.

This article will explain everything you need to know about a design patent drawing illustration.

Importance of Design Patent Drawing Illustrations

A design patent drawing is the defining component of a design patent application. These illustrations play a far more pivotal role in describing the product as compared to the words of the description. However, it is essential to follow the rules while preparing a design patent drawing illustration.

If you choose not to include a view, you must give proper reasoning for it.

It is also very important to include all the elements of your design.

Once you receive a design patent, you cannot make any changes to the overall design.

There are barely a few lines in a design patent, as the majority of the explanation is done by the illustrations. If you choose to submit your application without enough drawings then your application will most likely be rejected.

Basic views you need to include

There are 6 standard views of any 3D object – front, back, top, bottom, left and right.

You have to include every possible view of the object, even if there is a part of the product that the users will not see. For instance, if you have a wall-mounted product, most consumers won’t see the back of the product. But in your illustrations for the design patent application, you must include a view of the rear. You may not include any plain, unornamented view of the item because it has no contribution to your application.

If your product is flat and thin, then only 2 views – front and rear are enough. But you should state clearly as to why you are including fewer views. Above everything, clear labels and concise drawings will help the examiner understand your drawings better.

Various Perspective views

It is a good idea to render specific views of your invention. These views may illustrate what exactly makes your design unique. You may depict exploded views if the design includes separate parts. You should submit images of each part if your product consists of many intricate parts. Another responsibility is to provide a bracket that connects the exploded part to where it fits in the full design.

These views are additions to the 6 standard views.

Click Here to Download (Free Samples)

Dots, Lines, and Shading

The USPTO has certain guidelines which you need to follow while rendering a design patent drawing illustration. The manner in which you draw dots and lines has a huge impact on your illustration. There are 2 acceptable types of shading.

Stipple Shading: This type of shading includes small dots. It helps in representing contour and shadowing. It can also be used to depict rough textures such as concrete, hard foam, rough fabric, etc.

Here, you can see a good example of stipple shading.

Fig 1. Example of stipple shading

Patent Number: EP1648253B1

Linear Shading: This type of shading includes parallel lines. You may use broken or continuous lines. Their purpose is to depict shiny or transparent surfaces like polished metal, glass, reflective stone, etc.

Surface shading helps the examiner to see whether the design infringes on an existing patent. You may also use break lines to limit the size of the drawing.

The following is an example of an illustration demonstrating good linear shading.

Fig2. Example of linear shading

Patent Number: USD645360S1

Other important information to remember (Bonus information)

You must submit every design patent drawing illustration with your application to USPTO within a specific deadline. This deadline is 12 months within the public introduction. It applies to you if you’ve shown your product’s design to the public in any form. This includes images in a publication.

Related Article: Patent Illustration Importance From Multiple Perspectives

There are some common mistakes which you should avoid:

Not including the correct views: You need to include the 6 standard views of your product. If you exclude any view, you must give a clear reason for it in the description. Additional views such as 3-D, segmented, exploded, or sectional views are helpful but they aren’t a requirement.

Informal drawings: USPTO allows you to submit informal drawings, including photos and rough sketches, but this will only delay your application. An examiner will not look at your application until you send formal patent drawings.

Not including shading. You must include shading in your drawings to clearly establish the important aspects of the drawings. It is also important to only use the two types of shading that USPTO accepts. Without it, the design is just a two-dimensional picture that may not be very clear to your examiner.

Including photos instead of drawings. You might be tempted to include photos of the product as it would give more clarity about the design. But USPTO has strict requirements and only allows photos in certain cases. You must ensure that you know what these special cases are and whether or not it is applicable to your case.

Need help with a design patent drawing illustration ? – Patent Illustration Express

You can see for yourself that a design patent drawing is a very complex task. The margins for error are too fine and the guidelines are too many. If you feel the need to consult a professional, Patent Illustration Express is here to help you. Our team of professionals boasts years of experience and diverse skill-set of software and handmade drawings. We specialize in Utility Patent and Design Patent drawings. Your satisfaction is paramount to us. We offer an incredibly high turnaround time and unlimited iterations, all at an extremely affordable price. So what are you waiting for? Visit us on Patent Illustration Express.

1. **Trademark Filing : A Step by Step Process**

Trademark refers to any word, phrase or symbol that identifies or distinguishes the product from other manufacturers. Thus, Trademark Filing helps the customer to identify the product and its manufacturer. Moreover, the Trademark provides a brand name to a company.

You must provide proper protection to the trademark to avoid any sort of misuse. Thus, it is necessary to register the Trademark in USPTO (United States Patent and Trademark Office).

Benefits of Trademark Filing:

Legal ownership of the mark and public notice about the intellectual rights over the claims related to the mark.

Authority to use the Trademark for the products sold in the respected filed countries.

Right to take legal actions in case of any infringement.

Addition to the USPTO database.

The Process of Trademark Filing:

Trademark Filing seems a complex process. So, we have divided the complete process into four major parts. The four major parts are Planning, Selecting the Mark, Submission of Application and Analysis period to Decision.

1. Planning

The purpose of the trademark is to protect physical goods or products. Hence, only the companies that manufacture goods or products or provide services are qualified for Trademark Filing.

There are chances that the company name itself is enough for to serve the purpose of a Trademark and you actually don’t require Trademark Filing. You should also check the native rules and requirements for the trademark before the process of registration.

You can proceed to the next step, once you are done with the Planning process.

2. Selecting the Mark

Before the application for a trademark, selecting a suitable mark is a very important process. Your mark must relate the product and moto behind the product.

However, the most important part is to check whether the mark is eligible for registration or not.

There are 2 basic eligibility requirements:

Used in commerce:

You cannot use a mark personally. That means you must have business use of the mark. The commerce term signifies the use at Interstate, Intrastate or national level. This means you can use the mark for trading good/products within a state, different states or even different countries.

Distinctive or unique:

The mark must easily identify or distinguish the related products or goods that are manufactured by a particular source and not by any other manufacturer.

Considerable Points for Trademark Selection:

Mark Format:

A word, color, design, sound or shape can form the format of a mark. Also, you can combine different formats to get the required mark. Some of the general types of mark are:

Word marks: In this, you use Latin characters in place of the letters and Roman/Arabic numerals for defining numbers. Sometimes, it also includes general punctuation marks.

Design marks: These are the special wordings/design, or a mixture of both. At the time of submission, it must be in .jpg format and you must scan it at 300-350 dots per inch. Also, you must maintain the size of 250-944 pixels at both length and width.

Color marks: The color marks are difficult to register, as you need to submit the proof of distinctiveness and the logo in the respective color. Also, you should also mention a claim related to the color and maintain the color in the overall mark.

Shape marks: You must show the three-dimensional shape, design or view of the good/product.

Sound marks: You should submit the file in different audio formats, for example, .wav, .mp3 or .mpg. Moreover, you should try to limit the audio files up to 5 MB and Video files up to 30MB but with a detailed description.

Related Articles: How To Trademark A Logo?

Applied Goods and Services:

You must clarify the products, goods or services that are going to use the Trademark.

Mark Availability:

This process involves obtaining the right to use the mark for further steps. This is done to avoid registering marks that are similar to the previously registered marks.

The procedure requires searching the Trademarks registered in the USPTO and 50 different states of the US. However, if you tend to sell the product outside the country, then you need to search the database of the respective countries. You can take the help of USPTO’s TESS (Trademark Electronic Search System) which is free or may check the Trademark Public Search Library of Alexandria.

3. Submission of Application

You must find a filing basis, the moment you are done selecting your mark. There are basically two types of filing basis available:

Use in commerce: This type of filing basis is used when the Trademark is already used or is in current use. However, you must provide proof of using the Trademark.

Intent to use: This filing basis is required when you are not currently using the Trademark but intend to use it in the coming future.

Now it’s the time to prepare the application:

You can find the application forms from the official website of USPTO. It provides you Trademark Electronic Application System (TEAS), which helps to file the application online. You can either use your own internet connection or visit a Patent and Trademark Resource Center (PTRC) nearby.

If you want to file the application offline, you need to pay a processing fee of $375 for each category of goods/services.

At present USPTO have three filing options available according to the fee structure.

TEAS Regular:

You must submit a fee of $325 for each category of goods/products. Also, you must mention the following points in order to issue a filing date.

Applicants name.

Applicants address.

Descriptive representation of the selected mark.

A list containing complete goods/services of the relevant business.

Filing fees for at least a category of goods/services.

TEAS Plus:

In this category apart from the general requirements, there are some very strict requirements. Also, you need to submit a fee of $225 for each class of goods/services.

TEAS Reduced Fee:

The filing fee for this filing basis is $275 for each category of goods/services. It promotes pure electronic processing and communication.

NOTE: The filing of the Trademark does not mean that the registration is sure. Sometimes, the filing doesn’t prove fruitful and in that case, the fee is not refundable.

Also, the applicant must pay $50 per category of goods/services, if he/she is unable to match the filing requirements of TEAS Plus/TEAS RF.

4. Analysis Period to Decision

This is the final step for registration that an application must qualify. You must pay attention to a few important points that it contains:

This step deal with the examination of the application, publishing it in the official Gazette and issuing a registration certificate.

Monitoring is necessary after the submission of the application. Hence, you need to perform a thorough check with the help of

Trademark Status and Document Retrieval (TSDR) system in every 3-4 months.

USPTO will assign you an examination attorney and you must provide the complete cooperation that he demands. Also, he will be responsible for the overall review of your application.

The attorney will contact you if the application requires any rectification. He will first issue an ‘Office action’ and mention the reason to hold the registration process.

USPTO provides a time period of 6 months to respond to an office action. However, they declare that you are not interested in the application anymore if you fail to do so.

It generally takes 12 months to complete the examination and issue the registration. However, it may take more time if there are issues like incomplete documents and opposition from another party.

USPTO will publish your application on the Official Gazette as a sign of approval. Also, they will allow a time period of 30 days for third parties to come up with any sort of opposition.

In case of opposition, the Trademark and Trial and Appeal board will come into action. Otherwise, USPTO will mark your application as registered and you will get a certificate of registration.

Related Articles: Hire A trademark Attorney: What’s the Need?

How The Trademark Filing Company serves you best?

We have been a pioneer in terms of Trademark filing and services since the last decade. Our team of technical experts and professionals provide you the most satisfying results. Moreover, we provide you the after deal services that helps to deal with USPTO formalities. Also, you get the outcomes within the deadline and at a budget-friendly price. We provide you free iterations until you get what you want. To get a hold of more of our services, please click here The Trademark Filing Company.

1. **How Structured Disclosure earns Respect for your Patent?**

Structured disclosure of the patent claims is the weapon to protect your invention into a competitive market by taking advantage of its popularity. The USPTO provides an exclusive right to the patent holder. It allows no one else but the patent holder to make, use, and sell the invention. Otherwise, if someone wants to use the invention, then he must take proper consent from the patent owner.

Contents of an Information Disclosure Statement:

According to 37 CFR 1.97 of USPTO– Draft an Invention Disclosure Statement which is in compliance with § 1.98 in order to get a patent grant or reissuance of a patent. It describes the content of an information disclosure statement.

IDS comprises a list of:

Documents for consideration by the patent office -All Patents, Publications, applications or other information.

A legible copy of:

(i) Each foreign patent;

(ii) Each publication or that portion of the publication, other than U.S. patents and U.S. patent application publications unless required by the Office;

(iii) For each cited pending unpublished U.S. application.

(iv) All other information or that portion that helped in the listing of the invention.

3. (i) A concise explanation of the relevance, as understood by the individual most knowledgeable about the content of the information. The content includes each patent, publication, or other information that is not in the English language. The concise explanation is either separate from the applicant’s specification or incorporated therein.

(ii) A copy of the written English-language of a non-English-language document, or portion thereof which is readily available to any individual.

Disclosure Specification Requirements:

The specification must consist of the three most-essential requirements, namely:

The Written Description Requirement:

It states that the written description must convey the claimed subject in full, clear, concise, adequate, and precise terms. It includes an official date of filing the invention, evidence of inventor’s claim on the subject matter, a complete description of the invention, etc., all that critical information required.

The Enablement Requirement:

Write the specifications in a detailed format that a person with sufficient knowledge in that domain can understand the invention. At the same time, that person can also make use of the invention whenever he wants to. If he/she fails to do so, then the invention is not fit in terms of its disclosure and explanation.

The Best-mode requirement:

Describe the specifications in its best descriptive mode at the time of filing. It ensures that the inventor confronts his/her invention open-heartedly in public, without any hiding-back from the public. Sometimes, intentional concealment of the best mode of explanation and a poor-quality disclosure might lead to rejection of the filed application.

The only comprehensive revelation of the invention in the public domain will allow the United States to protect, shield, and defend the inventor’s invention from any sort of infringement or any other patent right’s assault.

Our Solutions:

At the SmartIDS, we prepare ready-to-file IDS forms. The forms are as per the USPTO prescribed format. We take care of your budget and deliver our services at cost-effective rates. Our team professes at compiling the data with obligation, and ensure prompt and accurate update and maintenance of the same. We provide a 2-tier quality check of IDS drafts. This works as one patent drafter proofreads the application as per the patent office guidelines. After this, another patent drafter reviews the work of the former drafter. This help maintains 100% quality assurance of the drafts prepared by our professional drafters and proofreaders appreciated by our clients. To know more about our services, visit SmartIDS Solution.

1. **Benefits of Trademark Monitoring Service**

Trademark monitoring service is used to keep an eye on the possible infringers of the Trademarks. Also, it helps to avoid any infringement from our side. They notify us of all the possible threats.

However, registration of a Trademark with the USPTO is just the first step to efficiently use and protect the related goods or services. We also need Trademark monitoring services to assure the long lasting protection of the value of the product or service.

Types of Trademark monitoring service:

Trademark monitoring mainly considers two types of criteria to watch for possible threats. They either search for similar marks or identical marks. The two types of Trademark monitoring services are:

Identical trademark monitoring:

This type of monitoring searches for marks that are phonetically or visually identical.

The search targets the marks that are used without any modification and have a major resemblance to the original mark.

Similar trademark monitoring:

It deals with confusingly similar marks. They fetch the marks that have deceiving similarity with the original mark.

They may cover a country, a continent or even the globe. However, Trademark registers decide the domain of monitoring.

Why detect the problem early?

It is always important to respond early in any case of Trademark misuse or trademark infringement. The company can use its IP rights more efficiently if the problem is detected at an early stage. Moreover, the owner has a limited period of time to respond against the infringement activity from the third party.

Benefits of Infringement detection at an early stage are:

In a few situations, it is necessary for a company to file against the infringement within 30 days of the publishing of infringing Trademark. If the company fails to do so, there still are chances to file the application but it becomes more difficult and costly.

An organization gets enough time to collect the evidence of infringement for legal proceedings against the infringing party.

Trademark monitoring service is also helpful to get an idea of what the competitive parties are up to. Also, they notify you of the same.

This may help the organization to know about the arriving technology in the market and they can plan their business strategies accordingly.

Related Articles: How to Perform a TESS Trademark Search.

Management of monitoring results:

Organizations with wide monitoring databases receive a huge amount of data and it is very difficult to surf through it. Moreover, there are possibilities that the organization can misplace the required results among the pile of data.

However, a set criterion for the Trademark monitoring service can ease the work. As it helps to receive only selected reports of interest.

Why Take Our Services?

It is necessary to keep an eye on your belongings to keep them safe. The Trademark Watch Company helps to watch over your Trademark for any potential misuse. Our team consists of expert professionals that perform a manual search on a global database. You just have to provide the domain of search. We believe in working within the time limits and providing complete customer satisfaction. To get a hold of more of our services, visit The Trademark Watch Company.

1. **Patent Translation and Filing Cost: How To Manage?**

Both patent translation and patent filing are the two major processes required in attaining a patent for an invention. However, both of the processes are complicated, time-consuming and expensive. According to a survey, translation covers 50% of the national stage entry cost, that’s why efficient-cost cutting strategies make a huge difference in the bottom line of a patenting company. This saving can be further used in expanding budget and patent protection in many other countries.

Related Article: Patent Translation Techniques

 Ways to Manage Patent Translation and Filing Cost

Patent Translation and Filing Cost: Ways To Manage

The primary goal is to get strongest patent portfolio falling in a variety of jurisdictions where lots of business opportunities can be availed. Mentioned below are some of the major ways which can be used for managing patent translation and filing cost:

Related Article: Patent Filing Cost

Way

Description

Consider English Only

English is one of the languages used worldwide for communication. So, patent filing and applying in the English language will be huge cost-cutting because there will be no need of translation to any other language. This clearly means your invention will be protected in the country where English is accepted and will not be protected where English is not accepted.

Define Regional Blocs

Focusing on regional blocs is also one of the effective ways to cut translation cost. In this one translation will give cover to multiple countries.

For instance, if you want to consider the Arabic language as your translation language then, you are allowed to file the same patent application in different parts of the Gulf States such as Jordan, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia, Qatar, Egypt, Kuwait, and UAE. Likewise, Latin America, Mexico can be covered if you will use Latin American Spanish as translation language.

Convert into Similar Languages

If you want to increase your patent validity in different countries then an application can be also filed in same languages. It will be less expensive as the modification in an existing translation cost is less in comparison to ordering a new one.

Repeat Text Analysis

In case if you are using boilerplate language in your application and also translating multiple patents into the same language then, don’t forget to explore repetitive text discounts.

For instance, if your current application which is to be filed in Russia is identical to a previously filed application then, ensure that the person handling the translation refers to the previous translation and do repetitive text analysis. The cost difference will be significant.

Do Market Survey Total filing cost can be reduced to a large extent without any change in filing strategy and requesting an estimation of an already filed patent from various translation vendors. With comparison on your actual invoices with the estimates, the saving potential will be direct.

Contact Translation Experts An experienced patent translator is worth for reducing patent translation and filing cost. Help with specialized expertise will be really beneficial. For instance, if your invention deals with mechanics, you will not seek assistance from a computer science engineer. Due to a unique description of patent applications, they are considered to be the most complicated translation documents.

Conclusion

No compromise should be done with the quality while strategizing patent translation cost. Also, before filing you must ensure that your translated application has been reviewed carefully by a patent attorney.

To ensure that the translator includes in-country patent attorney review as part of the proofreading process. It is not necessary that a good translator will possess the required technical and legal knowledge.

As attaining a patent for an invention is an expensive process, you must put efforts to monitor the cost of patent translation and filing without any compromise on quality.

Related Article: PCT application: Everything you need to know.

We, at Patent Translation Express, have experienced professionals who strive to translate your patent into 40 different languages as per your choice. Moreover, they have optimum skill-set that helps in various domain translation such as chemistry, life-sciences, hi-tech & mechanical engineering and many more. To know more about us, check our Patent Translation Service page.

1. **What are the Different Patent Watch Techniques?**

When it comes to monitoring your patent, there are several Patent Watch Techniques. If there is an infringement on your patent, you’d want to get a notification so that you can take the relevant actions. Patent infringements are not necessarily bound to patent applications. They can be of varying levels, from overlapping claims in a patent application to commercial use of a similar product. You need to stop infringement at an early stage to avoid more complex issues at later stages. You can also regulate your resources more prudently if you’re aware of the latest market occurrences. Therefore, it’s critical to understand the different Patent Watch Techniques at your disposal so that you can utilize them accordingly.

Related Article: Significance of Patent Watching.

All Types of Patent Watch Techniques

The patent watch is not bound to monitoring just one area like patents or patent applications with potential for infringement. You need to keep an eye on the technology in the market, your competitor, etc. Let’s take a look at every technique.

Related Article: Patent Watch Types: 6 Quintessential

1. Technology Watch

Here, the primary focus remains on the latest occurrences in the relevant domain of your patent. You will be made aware of the state-of-the-art technology that exists in your domain in any form. This can range from patent applications, publications in research journals, conferences to research blogs, commercial products, etc. If you find something that overlaps your invention, then you can take the appropriate action.

2. Competitor Watch

In this, there is a microscopic focus on the activities of a competitor in any part of the globe. You will be made aware of their patent application filings, grants, rejections, expirations and any other activities pertaining to technology. You should be wary of your competitors because they might steal your invention, minimally modify it and start using it.

Related Article: Patent Filing Process in 3 easy steps

3. Infringement Watch

This watch service primarily monitors new Evidence of Use (EoU) in the form of products, processes or services that seem to infringe your unexpired patent’s claim(s). This is the most direct watch in terms of any product/service actually infringing your patent and not potentially infringing it.

4. Design Watch

In terms of specific Patent Watch Techniques, this term is quite self-explanatory. The sole purpose of the design watch is to monitor infringements on your product’s design. Entities may knowingly or unknowingly copy your design or come up with something extremely similar. Either way, it classifies as an infringement and you should keep an eye on it as well.

5. Patent Legal Status Watch

Here, the current status of prosecution and post-grant events for patent applications and patents are the main focus. The events may include Request for Continued Examination (RCE), a Post-Grant Review (PGR), or maintenance status of your application. Basically, this serves as a notification for any office action that needs a response of the appropriate kind. You can also use this to monitor the status of a competitor’s patent application. You can get updates on their application status as per your convenience.

Need a Patent Watch Service? – The Patent Watch Company

You can clearly understand how important it is to watch your patent. Infringements can occur at any time and anywhere. The enforcement of your IP rights is your responsibility, so you must keep a vigilant eye on the market and your competitors. If you need the assistance of a professional, consider The Patent Watch Company. We cover numerous technology areas and have years of experience under our belt in the monitoring domain. Our monitoring focuses on patent/non-patent literature (by patent/patent publication numbers) as well as general marketing activities like product launches, investments, etc. We also assure timely delivery and value for money in our services.

1. **Patent Search Types: ‘The Major Eight’**

The world is transforming itself from a product-based economy to a knowledge-based economy where knowledge will be a pivotal element in driving the economy of a specific country to its maximum potential. The advent of Intellectual Property regimen and globalization has also contributed a lot in transforming society into a knowledge society where companies and enterprises can protect their intellectual properties aggressively. However, with the increased pace of innovation and increased awareness of its protection, a very big pool of knowledge it comes to defending and protecting your intellectual properties patent searching is something that appears as one of the most effective tools. So, let’s learn about what is a Patent Search, how it affects your business, and what the major patent search types.

Do you know that Patent Search matters for your business? Read to know: Patent Search Affects Your Business: Learn How?

Patent Search

A very broad description might be that a patent search is a process by which prior inventions or ideas are examined, with the goal being to find information that bears a close similarity to a given patent or proposed invention. For companies and enterprises dealing with intellectual properties, the patent search should be the first step in the patent application process. A professional patent search determines whether the time and expense of moving forward with a patent application is a worthwhile endeavor.

Patent Search Types The Major Eight

Patent Search Types

Depending on the goal and motive of the search it can broadly be divided into the following categories:

1# Novelty/Patentability Search: For an invention to be granted a patent, it must be new (novel), useful, and non-obvious. A Patentability Search sometimes called a Patent Novelty Search or simply a Novelty Search is a search of the prior art (the body of pre-existing knowledge) conducted on behalf of a potential patent applicant. A novelty search or Patentability Search is commissioned to ascertain whether a potential invention is a novel, or not, by determining whether anyone else publicly disclosed the identical inventive concept prior to its critical date. The step could be considered as one of the first steps in the patent application process which determines the fate of an idea or invention.

Related Article: Patentability Search Basics: Things You Should Know

2# Invalidity/Validity/Opposition Search: A Patent Validity Search or Patent Invalidity Search is a type of patent search that is undertaken by law-firms and inventors either to validate the enforceability of a patent’s claims or to invalidate one or more claims of a patent, respectively. These two searches are identical except for the desired outcome (valid or invalid patent claims) of the search. Alternative terminology for these searches includes Validity Patent Search or Invalidity Patent Search.

3# Freedom to Operate Search: “Freedom to operate”, abbreviated “FTO”, is usually a kind of patent search undertaken by patent search companies or law firms to determine whether a particular action, such as testing or commercializing a product, can be done without infringing valid intellectual property rights of others.

Related Article: Freedom to Operate Search by The Patent Search Firm

4# Patent Landscape or State of the Art Search: It is an overview of patenting activity in a particular field of technology. The search gives the searcher a comprehensive and broad idea about the latest patents and inventions available at that particular domain.

5# Chemical Structure Search: Chemical structure search is another important search that is used widely in various aspects of searching patents to discover exact or similar chemical entities for your chemical compound using various authority databases and portals. Patent Search Types

Related Article: Chemical Structure Patent Search Databases

6# Bio-Sequence Search: A popular kind of patent search which is used to identify & dig out every possible relevant prior reference for DNA, RNA, and Peptide sequences of chemical and biological entities.

7# Non-Patent Literature Search: For any type of prior art search, whether it be an FTO search for a particular technology or a patentability search for an invention, databases that contain non-patent or scientific literature are important. This is because a vast amount of technology development is published in scientific journals and in many art areas, there is a substantial amount of publication that predates patent literature. PubMed, Is knowledge, & Comparison, are some of the resources that are used by searchers to do a non-patent scientific literature search. Patent Search Types

8# Markush structure analysis: Chemical structures which are used to indicate a group of related chemical compounds, are called Markush Structure. Markush structure analysis is one of the most resource consuming activities of chemical patent examinations.

1. **Patent Proofreading Advantages: All You Need to Know**

In the patent prosecution process, you can’t overstate the patent proofreading advantages. There is always going to be a chance that after completing your patent draft, you’ll find areas of improvement. We’re all humans, after all, anybody can make errors, and we can definitely improve them. These improvements, however, will only be possible if you proofread your patent application. Patent Proofreading is the process that identifies the errors in a patent application. It is a crucial step in controlling the quality of patents and ensuring enforceability. These errors may exist in the form of tiny technical faults to gaping holes in the claims section. Either way, you must fix all of them.

This article will help you understand the patent proofreading advantages.

Patent Proofreading Advantages – How can they help you?

You can understand that patent proofreading is crucial. But how exactly will it be of use to you? The following points are the most important and you must keep them in mind during and after drafting your application.

Describing the Functionality – An Enabling Invention

There is a good chance that your application might describe the invention really well. But it might not provide the functionality clearly. You should ensure that you have an enabling invention. But what exactly does it mean? Basically, a person from the same field as that of the invention should be able to make/perform the invention without any undue effort. Lack of clarity in this domain might lead to rejection of the patent application. Hence, you must proofread your description to ensure this is not the case.

This is one of the biggest patent proofreading advantages as it can save your application from rejection. You must look at the General Information Concerning Patents.

Also read: Tips & Tricks for High-Quality Patent Draft

Technical Soundness

You should be certain that your draft is adhering to all the technicalities. There are many guidelines that you must comply with. These can range from rules for rendering patent illustrations to the acceptable writing style for the entire application. Sometimes, you might miss out on something and that can cause problems at the time of the examination. Therefore, proofreading your document will ensure that everything is in fact in place. Check out The Essentials of Proofreading too.

Also read: How to create a quality Patent Illustration?

Claim Structure

Your patent application’s heartbeat is the claims section. The claims are the deciding factor in terms of the scope of the protection your patent will provide. Proofreading the claims will ensure that you clearly distinguish between disclosure and claims so that your novelty is intact. You must proofread the claims to ensure that they are comprehensive in their coverage and also check for ambiguous references. Ultimately, a solid and definitive claim structure will boost your chances of getting a patent.

See the following example for the claims section of a pencil.

Attribute Description

Preamble & Transitional Phrase A writing instrument for making a mark on a writing surface, the writing instrument comprising:

Element A An elongate protective sheath with a central cavity extending along a length of the elongate protective sheath

Element B A solid material disposed within the central cavity so that a person can grip the protective sheath and guide a tip to the solid material extending out of a first distal end of the elongate protective sheath to make the mark on the writing surface; and

Element C An eraser disposed adjacent to a second distal portion of the elongate protective sheath opposite the first distal end

Amongst all the patent proofreading advantages, this has to go down as the biggest.

Choice of Words and Grammar

You might believe that this is probably insignificant. But let us tell you, this can prove to be the deciding factor when it comes to patent infringement cases. Read the following case of Gillette Co. VS Energizer Holdings Inc., 2004:

Gillette had a patent for Mach 3 razor, which has 3 blades. Energizer Holdings came up with a similar product, the Schick Quattro razor with 4 blades. Gillette felt that this is a case of patent infringement and took the case to court. Their patent specification’s language became their own enemy, as they didn’t clearly cover the use of multiple blades. The language of the specification was such that would provide coverage for 3 blade razors only. However, the Quattro razor had 4 blades, which isn’t 3, and on this ground, Gillette lost the case.

The Schick Quattro and the Mach 3

Fig. The Schick Quattro and the Mach 3

This is a game between structuring the claims and using the right words.

Need Patent Proofreading Services? – The Patent Proofreading Company

You can see the patent proofreading advantages. It becomes highly critical at this point because it can potentially save your patent from exposure. You may be unsure of proofreading your own documents because you might or might not find the errors. So, if you’re to hire a professional, you can contact The Patent Proofreading Company. We provide the industry’s most comprehensive proofreading service with the help of our technical expert team. The team reviews inconsistencies to determine whether the patent application or existing patent is correct. Our reliable and cost-effective proofreading service ensures that your application is free of any errors.

1. **Patent Drawing: Key points to remember**

A vital part of your patent application is patent drawing. They are illustrations which depict your invention, its intricate parts and the processes involved. Whether your invention is a new product or a process, a patent drawing boosts your chances of getting a patent. However, it is absolutely critical to know the do’s and don’ts of a patent drawing while preparing one. It should help your case, and not hinder it while elucidating your invention.

This article explains the essential points you should know about patent drawing, from their purpose to when to file them.

Also, read: Things To Do Before Patenting Something

Patent Drawing: Key tips

Why are they required?

You need to include at least one patent drawing to elucidate your invention better, according to the US Patent Law. Unless your patent is about a chemical compound or process, a drawing is probably essential. Your application might face rejection if it’s too generic. The reason is that this makes it easier to find an overlapping prior art for it. Your explanation of your invention needs to be elaborate and distinct. Hence, including a patent drawing is always advisable.

What should be included?

Your drawings need to include detailed flow charts and diagrams. These help the reader understand the intricate parts and/or steps involved in the correct order. If your invention is a physical object, you should cover all the angles; top, bottom, and all the sides. Another point to remember is that all views should be drawn in portrait, facing in the same direction.

The USPTO states that you should submit patent illustrations. on white matte paper that is flexible and strong. It should have the following specifications:

Should be single sided

Dimensions should be 21cm x 29.7cm or 21.6cm x 27.9 cm

Margins should be as follows:

2.5 cm on the top

1.0 cm on the bottom

2.5 cm on the left side

1.5 cm on the right side

Also, read: Patent Drafting: A Primary Guide for Beginners

How to make the drawings?

Generally, there are 3 broad ways to obtain your patent drawing:

Do it Yourself Sketches

This is a cost-effective option which you can utilize if your illustration skills are competent and the invention is easy to represent. However, it is advisable that you consult an expert to ensure that your drawings meet the USPTO requirements.

Computer Aided Drawings

You may use the assistance of CAD software to render professional grade patent illustrations. Such software has a wide variety of features which make it easier to render detailed drawings and make changes to them.

Patent Illustrators

If either of the above-mentioned options seems too daunting for you, then you should consider taking professional help. Patent illustrators have a good understanding of the USPTO requirements for the drawings. They know various illustration methods and can help you decide the best way to depict your invention to the best advantage.

Also, read:

When to file your patent drawings?

Your drawings are often the best tool at your disposal to ensure that your invention is easy to understand. You can send the drawings after filing the non-provisional application, but this is never advisable. You should submit the illustrations with the initial filing to ensure they’re a part of the application from the beginning. Sometimes, your competitors may claim they didn’t understand the full extent of your patent. Furthermore, they may inadvertently file an application for something similar. Including detailed illustrations in your original application, makes it harder for other inventors to infringe your patent.

Need an illustrator? Contact The Patent Drawings Company

As we mentioned earlier, sometimes, making your drawings can be an extremely difficult task. There are a lot of guidelines that you need to adhere to. If you need a patent illustrator, TPDC is at your service. We have the expertise and widest range of software/technologies to cater to any and every output format that exists. Our motto is 100% satisfaction of our customers. We offer timely solutions and are willing to make any number of iterations to meet your specific requirements. Our affordable prices ensure that we don’t bore a hole in your pocket. For more information, visit our service page.

1. **All You Need to Know About Common Law Trademark**

You must’ve come across the term “Common Law Trademark” while considering getting protection for your product or service via trademarks. It might be tricky to decide your financial limit while determining the boundaries of protection for your brand. If you’re not a big entity or franchise, then you might feel that you don’t need extensive protection. This is where a Common Law Trademark comes into play.

This article sheds light on everything you need to know about a Common Law Trademark.

Definition

A common law trademark (or “unregistered trademark”) is a type of protection against infringement for intellectual property. The word “unregistered” implies that the property is in commercial use before its federal registration. The U.S. common law trademark initiates with the very first commercial use of the mark within a geographic area. You need to use the symbol “TM” in the superscript along with the word/phrase/logo you seek protection for.

Advantages of Common Law Trademark

Secure your rights: You can deploy this type of protection to stop the competition in your area from using identical or similar marks. If any local competitor uses your mark despite this, then you can file an infringement suit against them. You’ll have to make your case and convince the court that the mark was your creation. If successful, the other business will also have to stop using your mark.

Exclusivity: You will be the only entity in the area to use the trademark. This will ensure that the target market doesn’t confuse your brand with any other. Customers won’t accidentally visit a competitor’s store believing it’s linked to yours.

Check out the trademark fundamentals if you are a start-up.

 Common Law Trademark Protection

Creation: As we spoke earlier, you can use a common law trademark by using the symbol ™. Place it next to the target material in superscript to inform your competitors of its trademark status. There is no need for a federal registration process for it. This symbol will discourage your competitors from copying your mark.

Enforcement responsibility: You are responsible for enforcing your common law trademark rights. If you don’t, you could lose your right to protection. For example, another competitor may file an application to register a trademark that infringes the one you are using. Failure to oppose this application within five years will lead to revocation of your common law trademark.

Enforcement Procedure: If another business starts using your mark, you need to send a cease-and-desist letter to that entity. If this doesn’t work, consult a trademark lawyer about filing an infringement lawsuit. Common law trademarks are a part of every state’s code and are enforceable by its courts. You will have to make your case for reserving exclusive use of the mark. The procedure is the same as that of a registered trademark:

Produce your history of using the mark

Provide reasonable evidence that consumers associate the mark with your business.

To know more about your trademark rights, visit the USPTO website.

 Common Law Trademark Limitations

You can only exercise your Common law trademark rights within the boundaries of a geographic area. This area limits to where the mark is in use and any areas where it could reasonably expand. Consider the following example:

You open a restaurant with the name “Alfredo’s Pizza” in New York and use a common law trademark. Your rights for this name are only valid in New York.

Now let’s consider another entity that is unaware of your restaurant. They open a restaurant with the name “Pizza by Alfredo” in Texas. They are free to trade under the name as long as they are doing business in Texas and their neighbor states. The common law trademark would only prevent them from opening a new branch close to the one in New York.

Comparison between a Common Law Trademark & Federal Trademark (Bonus Information)

Factor Common Law Trademark Federal Trademark

Registration No requirement of registration Requirement of registration

Location Protection within a local area Protection across the United States

Listing Not a part of any USPTO database Exists on the USPTO database

Symbol TM ®

Legal Action File a lawsuit in a federal court to apply trademark rights File a lawsuit in a federal court to apply trademark rights

Ease of securing trademark elsewhere Very difficult to secure the same trademark in another location if another entity uses a similar mark Easier to get a foreign trademark

Registering a federal trademark has a lot of benefits. However, it does not give holders priority over common law trademark holders. There exists a very famous case to justify this. The national fast-food chain Burger King cannot open a Burger King outlet within 20 miles of Mattoon, Illinois. This is because a small burger restaurant called Burger King already has a common law trademark there.

Why Choose? – The Trademark Search Company

Your brand name is an incredibly huge part of your business. People associate your brand’s reputation and success with its name. You would not want anyone to steal that and conveniently do business. To ensure that this doesn’t happen, it is highly advisable to hire a professional to search and monitor your trademark. The Trademark Search Company offers the widest and the most flexible search coverage. To ensure this, we carry out all our searches manually, and not via computers. We also want to ensure that our prices are affordable without compromise on quality. Your satisfaction is our guarantee.

1. **Patent Search vs Freedom to Operate FTO Search**

While dealing with intellectual property rights, a confusing aspect is the Patent Search vs Freedom to Operate FTO Search. People often use them interchangeably which isn’t true. Therefore, you must understand the difference between the two in terms of time and money.

You perform a Patent search to analyze whether an invention follows the basic guidelines to obtain a patent, such as novelty, etc. Whereas, Freedom to operate search focuses on analyzing whether there is a risk of inviting a patent infringement lawsuit.

This article aims to clearly elucidate the differences between Patent Search vs Freedom to Operate FTO Search.

Patent Search vs Freedom to Operate FTO Search – Definition

Patent Search

Also known as ‘novelty search’, it’s an exhaustive search for all forms of prior art to check the patentability of an invention. There are 3 basic requirements that an invention must meet in order to be patentable. These requirements are a novelty, non-obviousness, and commercial applicability. After checking these requirements, you can decide whether or not to move forward with the patent prosecution process. In terms of costs, it’s around $500 to $3,000 which may vary depending upon your budget and your analysis requirements.

The goal of a patent search is not to assure that there is no relevant prior art. But, it’s rather to examine whether proceeding with the patent prosecution makes sense on the basis of the search results.

To know more about Patent Search Techniques follow the link. You can also take a look at our sample Patent Search.

Freedom to Operate Search

It means the freedom to operate or work on a particular product, without affecting, disturbing, or infringing the intellectual rights of others. The idea behind conducting an FTO search is to get an idea about the existing patents having claims similar to yours. It examines the language of the claims of the third-party and in-force patents, as a means of evaluating the risk of possible infringement. This helps you in identifying potential patent barriers and allows you to plan your actions accordingly.

This completely revolves around the patent claims. Basically, its main purpose is to analyze how to avoid patent infringement. The search checks if your product/service infringes any element of each independent claim of the patents which fall under the search. This generally requires more time and cost (approx. $10,000) to analyze. Since it’s a loop-based approach it costs a lot more than the patent search.

Want to have a look at our FTO Sample Search Report? You can get it here for free.

Patent Search vs Freedom to Operate FTO Search: An Example

First, let’s understand the example of a Patent Search.

Imagine that you want to file a patent for an invention. It is for a new type of car with a unique engine and emission system. Therefore, your application must follow the patentability criterion such as novelty, non-obviousness, industrial application, etc. Now, you will carry out a patent search to see if there is any prior art for it. Any extremely similar engine designs or emission systems that already exist in any form will classify as prior art. If such products already exist, then you can analyze and decide if you can make any relevant changes to it.

Now, we will see an example of an FTO Search.

Imagine that you have the same invention of the car as the previous example. However, you don’t necessarily want a patent for it. You just want to manufacture and use the model commercially. So, you will conduct an FTO Search to check for possible infringements on existing patents. This will be done by analyzing their claims section and determining if your product overlaps with theirs. Based on the results, you decide whether or not you should go for it.

CONCLUSION

Now, we can come to a conclusion in the debate of Patent Search vs Freedom to Operate FTO Search. The most important aspect is to extract the right search and opinion that suits the objectives of the search. If it is all about patenting or licensing a novel idea, then the patent search can serve the matter. Whereas, if it is more likely about getting into the market with competitors, then an FTO search is useful. Also, read about Information Concerning Patents.

Need a Professional Searcher? – The Patent Search Firm

It is of utmost importance to know which kind of service would serve you the best. You can carry out a patent search yourself but it is always advisable to take professional help. The same goes for FTO search because that requires a more intensive search and analysis. If you need a professional, consider The Patent Search Firm. We are a team of professionals who boast 8+ years of experience in serving the IP industry in more than 30+ Technological Domains. Our coverage includes 100+ countries in 16+ languages. We have and are delivering comprehensive patent and FTO searches at the most competitive price.

1. **Why Online Patent Paralegal Services are Important?**

Online Patent Paralegal Services are important for any company to analyze and draft the legal documents and ensure proper coordination. Basically, these services are important to keep watch on the IP activity of their competitor. Paralegal service includes preparation of documentation and ensures one of getting patent docketing. Online Patent Paralegal Services also help one in patent proofreading and PTA calculations. It is essential to monitor the patent application and keep all the updates about the field of invention. The monitoring that the paralegal services provide helps to search for any invalid patents in a particular domain. This ensures their rights to use the technology without any legal risk.

Online Patent Paralegal Services : Key points to remember

Patent paralegal service is important to effectively manage one’s intellectual property matters. It helps to protect one’s IP rights by drafting and filing the patent application. It ensures efficiently maintaining file histories, monitoring the dockets and managing global file requests. These services also help in sending reminders of the upcoming due dates and handle PTA correspondence. Some of the services that the patent paralegal service provides are:

IDS Preparation Service:

IDS stand for Information Disclosure Statement. It is one of the most important services in the online patent paralegal services. A patent applicant has to disclose to the USPTO all known prior art and other things which relate to the invention.

To satisfy this duty, one submits the entire prior art information to the USPTO in the form of IDS. IDS ensure significant cost benefits to the applicant by filing less number of IDS prior to the notice of allowance. IDS ensure covering all the references in it.

ADS Preparation Service:

An Application Data Sheet (ADS) is a sheet that provides the information about the inventor, correspondence and benefit claim. It is always beneficial to submit ADS with the application rather than after filing the application. One prepares ADS with all the details making it in a ready state to submit it to the USPTO.

Patent Docketing:

Patent Docketing is a method where one manages a large number of patent applications efficiently. Docketing is very important as it can be rather difficult to keep track of all the patent applications. Each patent application can take several years to complete the patent process. So, as more and more patents enter into the docketing system, the more it is better to manage one. The online patent paralegal services remotely access the client’s docketing system and upload the IP documents.

Office Action Response Template (OART):

Office actions are formal documents that one prepares and communicates from the patent examiner at the USPTO. These are common in patent prosecution and examiner generally issues them before a patent grant. This type of action will include the requirements that one needs to cover for patent grant. Finally, after the applicant satisfies all the requirements, the examiner grants the patent.

Patent Proofreading Service:

Patent proofreading service identifies the error either before the issuing of a patent or after that. The process of proofreading takes into account the clerical errors, grammatical errors, error in claim dependencies etc. A lot of these errors especially the ones which are critical can ruin the enforceability of the patent. To avoid these mistakes, paralegal services play an essential role. It will thoroughly review the patent application and format the document as per the USPTO standards. The paralegal service will ensure the accuracy of details and consistency.

Also Read: US Patent Proofreading – with USPTO Best Practices

PTA Calculation:

PTA stands for Patent Term Adjustment. The USPTO carries out the PTA process in which it awards the day for day credits to the normal patent term. Any delay by USPTO that occurs during the prosecution of the application is offset by the delay which the applicant makes. The default term of a typical patent is twenty years starting from the earliest priority date of the patent application. But, due to the delay in the patent prosecution process, PTA has to increase the life of certain patents. The paralegal services help in maximizing PTA to increase the life of certain patents. They help in adding days, weeks and even months in patent term. These services help in reviewing all the events in prosecution to determine the correct PTA.

Also Read: Patent Watch: Why Do I Need It?

Looking for Online Patent Paralegal Services – Patent Paralegal Force

Online patent paralegal services play an important role in the patent process handling end to end documentation for the USPTO office. Patent Paralegal Force (PPF) provides you with the best possible patent paralegal services. With experienced paralegal support, the clients can concentrate on more critical IP matters. PPF consists of highly experienced professionals having the state of the art tool to support you throughout the entire prosecution process. We follow flexibility to accommodate the best of our client’s needs through our automation and manual techniques. Our team provides paralegal services such as docketing for multiple countries, proofreading, end-to-end IDS management, document procurement, etc. We also perform data verification while patent application filing. For more information, Visit Patent Paralegal Force.

1. **Why Should You Hire Good Patent Illustrators?**

Patent Illustrations are a graphical representation of an inventive concept in the patent application. Patent Illustrators help patent seekers to create an effective and stunning drawing for their invention. Illustrations begin with the disclosure of the design of the invention and the configuration of the product. They show a precise shading of the invention which shows the shape and design of the patent clearly. But these days there are only a few patent illustrators who are providing high standard illustration services to the clients. With the passage of time and advancement of technology, patent illustration process has to undergo certain changes. Thus, it becomes important for one to adapt to the change accordingly. So, there are some important qualities that one should seek while hiring a patent illustrator.

Related Article: Qualities of Patent Illustrators

Essentials of Patent Illustrators

Patent illustrations have always been an essential component of patents. Not only it gives a clear picture of one’s invention but also minimizes the examiner’s time to grant the patent. However, with the advancement of time creating patent drawings of the invention has become more complex. So, it becomes extremely important to hire a good patent illustrator. Some of the reasons to hire good patent illustrators are:

Technicalities in the illustration:

The technological advancement is changing every sphere of our life and the same goes with the patent illustrations as well. However, for an accurate patent illustration, illustrators use this software in conjunction with their expertise. It helps them describe invention precisely in an effective manner.

Timely delivery of the illustration:

The illustrators are mostly able to meet deadlines without compromising on the quality of the work. A proficient illustrator knows how to proofread and check his work for any errors within the time limit. Furthermore, he ensures that the illustrations capture the invention precisely to the point.

Confidentiality of the invention:

Until the publication of the patent application, it is safe to keep the idea of the invention as a secret. Ensuring the confidentiality of the idea is essential while disclosing it to some third party. So, the illustrator should ensure right at the beginning that the client’s confidentiality will remain intact. Keeping an invention secret is a sign of a good illustrator as ensuring confidentiality is of utmost importance.

Patent regulatory norms:

This is one of the most important steps while hiring a professional illustrator. The required format for patent illustrations differs from country to country. An expert illustrator is one who understands the nuances of patent drawings and has a good hold of all the regulatory norms. In short, the illustrator should be well aware of the patent office requirements. He should also be aware of the various jurisdiction and common examiner rejections. A good and experienced illustrator put all his knowledge in the drawings to make it an excellent patent drawing.

Method of implementation:

The experienced illustrator knows various methods to implement the patent drawings to make them look conventional on the patent application. He knows the required number of drawings and is able to illustrate the same including the complicated views to claim a design. The patent illustrations can also be made either manually or by computer-aided designing methods. Depending on the requirement of the client, a good illustrator knows which method to choose.

Related Article: Hiring Good Patent Illustrators Vs. Do it yourself (DIY) with Patent Drawing Software: which will be a smarter choice?

Looking for Patent Illustration? – Professional Patent Illustrators

If you want to get world-class patent illustrations, Professional Patent Illustrators (PPI) would ease your task in doing so. We are a team of professionals who are expert in providing you with world-class patent illustrations. Over the years, by offering quick and accurate services to several corporations, we have established our name for the clients. No matter how complex is the patent drawing you are looking for, our experts are well equipped in handling those. PPI also uses the latest software along with the manual expertise for the illustration with 100% compliance to patent office rules. For more information, visit Professional Patent Illustrators.

1. **How to Draft an Accurate Patent Claim?**

Inventors get patent grant only when the complete invention or part of it meets all the patentability criteria. Patent claims put forth what we intend to get a patent grant for. Therefore, a patent claim is of foremost importance in a patent draft. It serves the purpose of defining the scope or limits of legal protection. The Patent Office examiner gives first and foremost importance to Claims at the time of examining the Patent Application. Therefore, it is very much prudent for you as an inventor to draft the claims perfectly.

Patent Claim Drafting: Key Steps

Draft the Patent Claim first: at the time of patent drafting, it is advisable that you draft the claims before preparing the specifications. This will give you and your patent agent a clear view of what terms need a thorough description.

After writing the claims, put forth and discuss it with your agent/ attorney.

Note: A patent attorney or agent is an expert in matters of patent draft preparation. Hence, it is advisable to seek their help at the time of patent draft construction.

Revise the claims after preparing the specifications. This is to ensure that your claims are in conjunction with the invention description.

How To Draft an Accurate Patent Claim

Also Read:US Patent Proofreading – with USPTO Best Practices

Tips to portray Patent Claim(s) in a Patent Draft:

Patent claims clearly define the invention for what we seeking patent protection. The drafting of the patent claim(s) decides whether your invention is novel or if it is infringing upon someone else’s invention.

Take care of patent claim design: it talks about how we should represent our claims in the draft. That is, how much and what you are covering under your patent scope.

Be mindful of drafting claims of varying scope at the time of patent drafting. Also, include both independent and dependent claims in mixed fashion. There is no hard and fast rule that a dependent claim will follow an independent claim.

Include patent claims of both broad and narrow scope. This works at your advantage, as claims with broad scope catch a wider group of infringers. On the other hand, claims with narrow scope make your invention more definite and precise.

Write your claims in a very clear and concise form.

Choice of words: choose your words very precisely while drafting the claims. Also, draft it in terms of the technical features of your invention. At the same time, make sure that the statement of your claims explains your invention and its variants appropriately.

Use technical words while writing the Patent claims and explain to them while writing the invention description. Make it a point to write the claims in positive terms. Say, for instance, write “a hollow cylinder” instead of “a cylinder that is not solid”.

Talk about variations of your invention: There are many potential competitors trying to infringe your claim. Therefore, incorporate all the possible variations of your invention in the claims and description in order to protect the patent right. Try to cover the competing products as much as you can and make sure your patent claims overcome the prior art.

What do we bring to you?

Perfect Patent Claim Construction takes your invention to different horizons.

We, at Patent Drafting Catalyst, know that writing a patent application is not just about jotting down the claims and invention description. Our efficient team of patent drafters makes sure that your application passes every toll gate of prosecution. We strictly follow the USPTO guidelines while preparing drafts for our clients. Our services are available online and that too at budget-friendly rates. To know more about our services, do visit our service page.

1. **Most Important Points About Patent Docketing Systems**

Maintaining all the documents is a complex task when filing a patent application, which is why patent docketing systems exist. Filing an application with the USPTO isn’t a straightforward task, especially because of the number of documents to look after. Inventors often hire a law firm to assist them with the patent prosecution, but the law firm has multiple clients. They need to keep track of each and every application, its documents, and its deadlines. Hence, patent docketing systems become an integral part of any firm because they simplify the task of managing various patent applications.

This article explains all the key points about patent docketing systems.

Patent Docketing Systems: Definition and Importance

Definition

These are systems for managing the patent application process. It involves keeping track of a vast variety of information such as forms, client’s name, contact information, invention, etc. But this is not all of it, and we will explain the entire docketing system in detail down below.

Importance

We have seen what a patent docketing system is. Now, let’s see what exactly makes it absolutely important. It’s very crucial for patent law firms because:

A patent application comprises of several documents such as forms, drawings, etc which need intensive care while managing the applications.

Every law firm has multiple clients, and each client will have their own patent application(s). Without a proper system, keeping track of all the patent applications becomes incredibly complex.

A strong docketing system ensures streamlining of the entire system so that management of the applications becomes smooth.

Therefore, to ensure smooth management of this data, using patent docketing systems is a wise decision. Also, check out Patent Docketing Needs in the IP Lifecycle.

Patent Docketing Systems: Guidelines to Follow

You understand the importance of patent docketing systems. Let’s see the guidelines that you need to keep in mind while maintaining such a system.

Creation and maintenance of a separate portfolio for every application is crucial.

The data entries should be very specific and precise. This information should include:

Client’s name

Client’s contact information

Invention

Type of industry it serves

Digital copies of the application, forms, drawings, etc.

Status of application

Deadlines and due dates

Ensuring all the legal fees and their payment status for different applications has proper records in the system.

The system should provide standardization to maintain a consistent workflow and allow updating each and every patent application when applicable.

The flexibility of the docketing system itself is very crucial. Patent law firms should look for a docketing system that allows free text. The purpose is to allow entry of notes into each portfolio explaining where the application is still in the process.

Among patent docketing systems, here is a good example:

Anaqua- A Patent Docketing Software

Anaqua: A Patent Docketing Software

Also, read Top 5 Patent Docketing Solutions.

Protection of Intellectual Property

Inventors get patents for inventions to protect their intellectual property. We all know that the patent prosecution process itself is a very expensive affair. Hence, it’s important to manage portfolios and patent applications with the least possible expenses. This includes all patents’ commercial value. You should drop patents that have no commercial value, which saves on expenses. Dropping such applications also helps with managing the system more efficiently.

Also read: Why online patent paralegal services are important?

Need Patent Docketing Services? – Perfect Patent Docketing

Patents are elaborate documents and thus, we need to ensure that each of the adjoining documents is in place. All the deadlines for various steps are very important, and any mistakes can prove to be costly. Handling this information along with the entire procedure itself is a difficult process, and hiring a professional patent docketing service is wise.

Perfect Patent Docketing ensures a 4-eye quality check of each document. We ensure data security and offer premium docketing quality through our robust IT infrastructure. Our promise is a lightning fast TAT, keeping specific demands of the customer in mind. We offer docketing services at affordable prices with the best quality of outputs as well.

1. **A Beginners Guide for Provisional Patent Filing**

A Provisional Patent Filing is used to protect the idea of the inventor for one year. It usually refers to the filing of a provisional application to get the legal rights of the invention. The provisional filing establishes an early filing date. Although, it does not convert into an issued patent unless one files a non-provisional application. There is a time period of 12 months given to the applicant to convert the provisional filing into a complete one. It is the cheapest and fastest way of getting protection for your invention.

Provisional Patent Filing: Key Points

Basics of provisional patent filing:

A Provisional patent filing is an intricate document that needs to be clear and simple to understand. It allows the formal filing of the invention without any claims. Some of the key points regarding it are:

Provisional patent filing is a preliminary application before usual patent filing.

It is simpler and more concise than a complete patent filing as it explains the invention in a broad manner but not completely.

The provisional filing frequently takes fewer pages to describe the product’s design. Basically, it is a short term means of protecting the invention.

 Filing provisional patent helps in saving a filing date for a complete application. Although it is not mandatory, it is highly recommended as it has a lot of benefits for the inventor.

 Benefits of provisional patent filing:

There are few benefits of filing the provisional patent. The key benefit is the ability to test the invention without the risk of theft. There are some more benefits to it. They are as follows:

Firstly, the applicant gets an extension period of one year. This helps the applicant to lock in the potential patent rights of the invention. The applicant gets the time to complete the invention while the legal rights get protected.

 Another benefit is that the applicant avoids the cost incurred in filing the non-provisional application during one year period.

 Once the process of a provisional patent is complete, the inventor uses it for obtaining funds as the credibility of the invention increases.

 As there is no publication of the provisional filing, the priority date is also reserved by maintaining the secrecy.

Requirements for filing provisional patent:

There is a requirement of several documents for filing a provisional patent. Firstly, the documents must include a written description of the invention. The description must adequately describe the full scope of the subject matter. Secondly, the inclusion of any necessary drawings must be present, if required. The filing application also includes a prescribed fee while filing the application.

Content while filing provisional patent:

 Content is one of the most important things while filing a provisional patent. It contains the description and other specifications of the invention. Some of the essential things to mention while filing a provisional patent are:

Title of the invention:

Firstly, the inventor needs to mention the title of the invention. The title should fairly capture features of the invention. It should be short and to the point.

Description of the invention:

After the title, it all comes down to the description of the invention. The description includes the field and background of the invention. The inclusion of the technical field to which the invention belongs plays an important part in the content of a provisional filing.

Objects and Statement of the invention:

 It also includes the object of the invention. The point of having this section is in showing the necessity of the invention. The statement of the invention should also be included. Claims may not be a part of provisional specifications.

Related Article: Why You Should Not Avoid Patent Proofreading While Filing Patent Applications?

Difference between Provisional and Complete filing:

The filing of a provisional application is the start of getting a grant of patent in India. The complete application follows the provisional one after 12 months. However, there are certain differences between a provisional filing and a complete filing. They are as follows:

S.No Provisional Patent Filing Complete Patent Filing

1. The filing is possible even when the idea is not completely mature. There remains no scope of further development when filing the application.

2. The involvement of claims or abstracts may not be present. It includes all the parts of the patent application.

3. It has no existence if a complete application is not filed. It can exist independently.

4. It is inexpensive as it does not include all the parts of the patent application. It is expensive as it includes all the parts of the application.

Why Choose Us? – The Patent Filing Company

The Patent Filing Company (TPFC) is an exclusive group of the world’s leading technologies with a deep understanding of global patent laws. Our team consists of professional experts who will help you in the provisional patent filing. TPFC covers 300+ experts and serves over 45 countries. Our professionals utilize their expertise to advise our clients to help them get world-class advice and IP Protection. TPFC not only ensures that you get the strongest and broadest services but makes sure that you get the optimum cost. Our team will assist you in filing the provisional patent application. For more information, visit The Patent Filing Company.

1. **Importance of Patent Invalidity Search**

There are instances where a third party might challenge your patent after its issuance or vice versa. Either way, you have to perform a patent invalidity search (or patent validity search). It is the first step either party takes when they are in the middle of or are planning to file a patent infringement lawsuit. This is done to support your argument, whether it is to invalidate a patent or to reinforce it. Both types of searches are very similar, except their end results are completely opposite.

This article aims to explain the exact meanings of a patent invalidity and validity search, what are their purposes, and what is required to conduct them.

Also, check out the latest IPR issues in India before filing your patent application.

Meaning of Patent Invalidity Search

In some instances, an examiner might miss out on some prior art. Invalidity (or validity) search is a comprehensive prior art search which you carry out after the grant of a patent. This can prove to be paramount in a patent infringement suit.

Purpose

Invalidity search: You perform a patent invalidity search to uncover any prior art that can invalidate the claims of a patent. This is done when you are:

Planning to legitimately stop a competitor’s product.

A defendant in a patent infringement lawsuit.

Validity search: You conduct a validity search to ensure that no prior art exists for a patent so that the claims of the patent are strengthened. Here are the reasons to do it:

Before you enforce your patent and determine invalidity risks.

When you need to defend your patent against invalidation.

Also, know more about post-grant opposition in India to effectively carry out your validity search.

Requirements for Patent Invalidity Search

Now that we know the importance of a patent invalidity search, let’s see what we need to carry it out. You primarily require 3 things:

The patent number and the specific claims which you seek to invalidate.

Any prior art that you are aware of, but has not been listed in the patent.

The date of the prior art to ensure that it came into the public domain before the priority date of the patent.

You should conduct a Public Search for Granted Patents to gather necessary information en route the invalidation process.

Why choose our services? – Your Patent Team

While administering a patent invalidity search, you need to cover the entire scope. Some prior art may exist in the form of a non-patented matter, or in another language. If you are looking for professional assistance to carry out an exhaustive search, consider Your Patent Team.

YPT is a team of 225+ technology/industry experts who speak the inventor’s language and have a deep understanding of Indian & Global Patent Laws. We provide you with a wide patent and non-patent literature coverage (scientific literature, journals, conference papers, etc.). We have multi-lingual capabilities of 16+ languages, covering 100+ countries. Our aim is to provide strong “killer art” search results to invalidate a patent by litigation.

1. **Online Trademark Filing: Know How to Do it?**

Be it Offline or Online Trademark filing, it helps you obtain a unique identity in the form of Trademark, to distinguish your product from others. A Trademark can be any word, phrase, logo, sound, etc. However, you must register it first in order to seek the advantages. It is easier to file for a Trademark registration even online, thanks to the advancing technologies.

Online Trademark filing process:

You must follow some certain steps if you want to file for a Trademark online. Also, there exist some formalities regarding your identity proofs and other documents. The steps and formalities are mentioned below:

Trademark Search:

A Trademark search is the first step for Online Trademark Filing. During the Trademark search, your search for the pre-existing registrations on the same mark. Thus, you can register your mark only if it is unique. Also, you can make the necessary changes in your mark if a similar mark already exists.

You require a global database for a Trademark Search. The database consists of all the pre-existing, abandoned or pending Trademarks/applications. Also, it helps to find potential threats/benefits for your mark. For example TESS (Trademark Electronic Search System).

You can either perform a search on your own or take the help of a professional. Although, it is better to seek help from the professionals as they provide more accurate results that cover all the fields. Moreover, the professionals draw relevant results more quickly as compared to the self-search.

Related Articles: Hire A Trademark Attorney: What’s The Need?

Category Selection:

You must select the right category of registration for your Trademark. This is so because; the registered trademark provides you the right to sell your product within a certain sector of the economy. There are presently 45 classes/categories in the Trademark Registry.

A few classes/categories are mentioned below:

Chemicals

Paints and Coatings

Cleaning and Bleaching Products, Cosmetics

Fuels and Industrial Oils

Pharmaceutical and Dietetic Products

Thus, you must select the appropriate category for every mark.

Application:

We move ahead to the application process, once we ensure that our mark is unique and falls under the correct category. This includes preparing an official letter which requires your signature and acceptance norms. Also, only after receiving the letter, your documents are prepared and the registration process starts.

Documents required for Online trademark Filing:

There are certain documents that you must provide for the registration process. These are just some of your personal details and features of your mark.

Name of the Applicant

Type of Business

Objective of Business

Brand/phrase/slogan

Address of registration

Identity/Business Proofs;

The owner of the mark or the person authorized for the mark needs to submit their identity proof. It may be Voter ID, VISA, Passport, PAN card, etc. Business proof determines the area of use for the Trademark.

Using Logo/Tagline:

You do not require a logo if a Trademark comprises of only words. However, if you tend to use a logo, you must submit it in Black and White format. There should be an exact number of words in the logo as mentioned in the application/letter.

Form 48:

With Form 48, you provide authority to an attorney to legally file for a Trademark application. Also, you must submit the Trademark user affidavit in case you make a claim for a previous trademark in the application.

Some Important points about Online Trademark Filing:

There is a lot of advancement in technology these days. You can apply for registration online without appearing in the registration office. Also, you can hire a certified attorney online.

The Vienna Codification process:

Vienna codification is the most important step of the Trademark Filing process. Also, it provides an international classification to you after you fill the application form. Your pending application is termed as “Sent for Vienna codification” at this stage.

Trademark Examination:

Once the application comes under “Sent for Vienna codification”, it will now undergo examination via the officials. They might accept or reject the application on the basis of requirements and set criteria.

Hearing at Trademark Registrar/Officer:

An applicant can go for a hearing after the application gets rejected. If He\She is not convinced properly then He\She can contact the Intellectual Property Appellate Board.

Why trust The Trademark Filing Company?

We at the Trademark Filing Company are equipped with a team of experts in the field. Also, we deal with your every query regarding Trademark registration. You get a handy and supportive online procedure throughout the Registration Process. Our team members use manual searches on a global database for accurate results. we provide a regular update for every processing step. Moreover, you are presented with better advice that can prove helpful in long terms. Budget-Friendly fees and total customer satisfaction is what we serve. To know more about our services, please visit The Trademark Filing Company.

1. **Design Patent Illustration: A Primary Guide**

Design Patent Illustration is a drawing that depicts the complete design of the invention. Furthermore, by complete design we mean, all the contours, shape, texture, size and proportion of the object. It strictly includes all the features visible during the use of the product/object.

Here comes a piece of advice- do not confuse design patent illustration with utility patent drawings. As a utility patent illustration/drawing gives a complete visual of the invention for which you are seeking patent protection. On the other hand, a design patent illustration specifically provides those ornamentations for which you are claiming patent protection. A design illustration is an important element of design patent application.

Finally, let’s move onto the important specifications of design patent illustration as per the guidelines of the USPTO.

Design Patent Illustration: Important Specifications

Although a design illustration is a complete replica of the original ornamentation on the article. But, there are a certain set of rules for construction of those designs for submitting them to the USPTO. Also, here is a crux of the detailed USPTO guide on design patent application–

Multiple Views:

Show as many views of the object’s design as possible. In short, provide images of top, front, bottom, back, left and right views. A number of views also depends upon the dimensions and type of object. Say, for example, if an object is thin and flat like a photo frame, then you require submitting only the front and the rear views. But, if there is peculiar ornamentation on the edges of the photo frame then submit the complete view along with the edges.

Consider adding sectional and exploded views of the designs to bring the peculiar features in light. Always link the exploded view to the full design.

Figure 1- Front view

(Patent No. US3541976A)

Figure 2- Back view

(Patent No. US3541976A)

Figure 3- Right side view

(Patent No. US3541976A)

Figure 4- Left side view

(Patent No. US3541976A)

Figure 5- Top view

(Patent No. US3541976A)

Figure 6- Bottom view

(Patent No. USD689355S1)

Ink Type and Photographs:

The USPTO accepts black ink and Indian ink for design drawings or black-and-white images in lieu of the drawings. At the same time, try not to include environmental structures and focus on the design itself.

Therefore, do not submit photographs along with drawings as there is a high probability of inconsistency between both.

Figure 7- Black and white drawings

(Patent No. US3541976A)

Colour Drawings and Photographs:

Although generally not accepted, but color drawings can become a part of the patent applications if provided with reasons claiming their necessity. The color is essentially not a part of the claimed design. Moreover, PCT applications do not entertain color photographs or drawings.

Click Here to Download (Free Samples)

Surface Shading:

Enhance the surface characteristics of the illustration. It also helps in differentiating between open and opaque/solid areas of design. Also, perform black shading only when you represent the color black as well as color contrast.

Figure 8- Linear surface shading

(Patent No. US3242664A)

Figure 9- Stippled surface shading

(Patent No. USD486264S1)

Broken Lines:

Is not a part of the claimed design but represent the background or environment structures. Additionally, if the claimed design is just the surface ornamentation on an article then represent the article with broken lines. This criterion is variable i.e. broken lines work for U.S. patent applications but not in some foreign countries, e.g. China.

Figure 10- Broken lines showing unclaimed part of the invention.

(Patent No. USD689355S1)

Important Elements of Design Patent Application

Just like utility patent application for design patents, one needs to bring certain documents required by the patent office (here, USPTO). Furthermore, these elements are of critical importance and are exclusive to design patent applications.

These include:

Preamble: it consists of the name of the applicant, title of the design, a brief description of the intended use and nature of the article on which the design is present. The title of the design is specific and descriptive in nature. Moreover, it identifies the article by a generic name commonly used by people.

Cross-reference: in this section, you tag or refer to any prior related application. In short, this helps in setting a priority date for the current application.

Statement regarding federally sponsored research or development: some inventors take government support to come up with an invention. In this case, the government too has certain rights over the invention known as Government License Rights.

Description of the figure(s) of the drawing: it gives a brief on what the different views of the design are like. Also, any other description about the design in the specifications is not necessary, as a drawing in itself is self-explanatory.

A Single Claim: a design patent application comprises only one claim and defines the design to which it pertains.

Drawings or Photographs: as explained previously drawings or photographs provide visual of the design to the examiner and public.

Executed Oath or Declaration: oath and declaration of the applicant must comply with the rules put forth in 37 CFR §1.63.

What do we offer at The Patent Illustration Express?

A team of professional illustrators creating design and utility patent illustrations in compliance with the rules of the patent office is at your service. We ensure quick deliveries and free iterations (whenever needed). Our draftsmen with years of experience keep their knowledge and skillset updated with the new technology. And therefore, we meet the complexities of the patent drawings and deliver the best of the results. If you are looking for patent illustration service, do visit Patent Illustration Express.

1. **How Important is Computer-Assisted Translation?**

Computer-assisted translation or machine-assisted/aided translation refers to a software-based automatic translation utility which helps the translators in their translation work. This basically functions by translating text and storing it along with the source text into a database. This helps in further patent translation work by using that database for any queries in the future. This enables enhancement in the speed, consistency, and quality of the translation work. Computer-assisted translation even makes the translators work easy.

CAT has conveniently overtaken the manual data translation into an automatic machine translation process. This has made the process of translation much more interactive between the translator and the computer. There are other advancements in the tools like analysis of the word counts, units, text content, etc.

Features

Computer-assisted translation has made the translation work of text documents more reliable and fast with its database system. It uses the following features which primarily rely on its ever-expanding database:

1. Segmentation

It divides the contents of the document into a number of segments, which provides help in further translation work. These segments pop up when the translator works on similar sort of sentences and they should match up with the existing translations. This simplifies the process for the user. Instead of typing and performing the translation of a similar text once again, he/she can use the pre-existing data from the database. This saves time, energy, and efforts of the translator and even helps in maintaining consistency within the whole document.

Related article: Introduction to Freedom to Operate Search

2. Correspondence

It saves the translations with its respective sources to perform future translations in a more precise and accurate manner. You refer to both the source and its translation as a translation unit. It helps in maintaining a good quality within the translations. It provides a utility to search for any particular segment and then revise it if there is any doubt for translation.

3. Memorization

Its main and base functionality is its database, where the system saves, searches and retrieves the translations retrieved for future translations. This memory is commonly known as ‘translation memory’, without which the whole process of automatic translation becomes insignificant.

4. Automation

An automatic find-and-retrieve feature is a powerful tool. This makes it possible to find or search for a specific segment of data, and then retrieve its translation automatically. The translator can himself/herself decide if the segment in the suggestions is worth consideration for the use or not.

5. Add-ons

It also provides some additional features such as tools for index/concordance, import/export, text search, statistics, text formatting, and alignment. It even includes an automatic watch list to monitor the quality and Internet tools for information access through the Internet.

If Translation memory interests you, then you will get to know all the details of it here.

Importance

Using a tool like Computer-assisted translation clearly holds a lot of importance. It will provide the following benefits:

1. Systematic translation

Computer-assisted translation divides the data into smaller sections or segments and stores them into the memory with its source. This makes it convenient to use it in future translations with better accuracy. This makes it easy to work on projects that involve a large amount of translation and requires precise terminologies. It becomes easy to handle the translation of large-sized projects, in a shorter period of time.

2. Consistency and authenticity

Since all the translations can be directly incorporated from the suggestions of the previous translations in the entire project, consistency in terminology and style of writing can be easily achieved. Once you achieve the consistency by following the correct laws of translation, you can also maintain the authenticity within the data.

3. Less error-prone

The translation of similar segments happens in the same manner with the same terminology across the whole document. Hence, the chances of the occurrence of human errors decrease. Hence, the translator can directly use the part in suggestions everywhere. This avoids the chances of missing a segment or performing the wrong translation.

4. Time & energy-efficient approach

The existing database is constantly developing and updating according to its user. Utilization of this database saves the translator’s time and effort. The translator can easily focus on what is new for him, instead of translating everything he already knows. This makes both the translation work and the translator more efficient, by maintaining consistency and by enhancing the translation skills, respectively.

Related Article: Why To Proofread A Patent?

5. Assistance

Computer-assisted translation even provides the facility revision of translation from time to time. That is why it has become an essential and efficient tool for both the translation service buyers and the translators.

6. Base trainer

CAT can also be used to train other machine translation engines for creating translation memory.

7. Futuristic approach

CAT has been promoting a paper-less approach by suggesting and helping patent translators for a large number of translations.

8. Backup support

CAT even provides backup support for the existing files, so that the translator can never miss even a single translation work. In a case where a mistake is made, then the user can easily retrieve the file.

Related Article: What is the role of an Intellectual Property Paralegal?

Conclusion

A manual patent translation is always a better decision. Find out why.

Need a Professional Translator? – Patent Translations Express

It is absolutely necessary for you to have clear translations when working with patents. Be it translating existing patents or other relevant documents or translating your application. It is pivotal to translate every word without the loss of meaning at any point. Hence, hiring a professional is advisable.

We at the Patent Translations Express, have an exclusive network of native patent translators who are subject matter experts (SME’s) apart from having native language expertise. To know us better please and get an idea about the price quote please check out our Patent Translation Services.

1. **Benefits of Patent Drafting Service**

When you’re planning to file a patent application, it’s always wise to hire a patent drafting service. Your application is the tool with which you explain the invention to the USPTO. In your application, you mention the description and the claims, which are the basis for securing a patent grant. The draft is, needless to say, the most crucial part of the whole patent prosecution process. This draft, after the successful grant of the patent, serves as the specification part of the document. You have to draft an impressive application, hitting all the necessary checkboxes from the USPTO.

In this article, we’ll outline the importance of a patent drafting service in the patent prosecution process.

Why Should You Take Patent Drafting Service?

Our goal here is to explain the common flaws and mistakes that people do while working on a patent draft. These are important things which an inventor may not pay attention to, and later pay the price by not getting a grant.

1. Too much focus on the How; Not enough on the What

You have to explain how the invention functions since that’s how you will prove that it is in fact useful. But a common mistake is putting the majority of the effort in this only. You must ensure that you are clearly explaining what exactly the invention is and not just what it does. Your application may raise concerns you talk too much about the functionality and not enough about what the invention is. The concerns are questions about the invention itself and this also leads to a disclosure that is not terribly descriptive. You can check out the Patent Drafting Procedure here.

A good patent drafting service will ensure that this doesn’t happen and the right balance is struck.

2. Not enough Details

The general trend is that an inventor ends up describing too less about the invention. You must ensure that no matter how simple the invention is your description should be in great detail. If your description is too simple or straightforward, the invention might come off as obvious and that’s a nightmare. Check out the Importance of Narrow and Broad Claim Scope.

Another important reason to write elaborate description is ensuring the novelty of your invention. You must properly describe the differentiating factors of your design, the different materials it needs, and its efficiency.

Some inventors don’t describe too much with a fear of not revealing their trade secrets or process. But, this is a necessary risk in exchange for exclusivity. Patenting is not the time to hold back on information. The idea of the description is that a professional from the relevant field can recreate the invention after reading it. Read more about the requirements of the process here.

Also Read: Multiple Dependent Claims: When do we need them?

the patent proofreading company

3. Too much Detail

There also exists a rare case where you might describe so much that it comes off as unnecessary. You should start simple, and progressively provide specifics and not just jump into the thick of things. You must also ensure that the examiner shouldn’t feel that description consists of irrelevant or unnecessary information. For example, imagine that your invention requires a cloth as a part. You might use cotton but is cotton the only suitable cloth? You must be specific, yet comprehensive while relaying the information.

This is where a parent drafting service can help, by ensuring that the language and information are optimum.

4. Miswording

You need to be very vigilant while choosing your words in the claims and description. Any misfits can lead your patent to exposure. For example, Chef America, Inc. got a patent on a process to make a dough product, verbatim. The wordings say “to be heated to about 400° F to 850° F.” Sometime later, a competitor, Lamb-Weston came up with a similar product. Chef America felt that this is a case of infringement. However, their choice of words made them lose the battle because Lam-Weston’s patent claim says the dough needs heating up to 850° F. The court was in favor of Lamb-Weston whose patent specifies the dough is to be baked “at” 400° F.

You can avoid this if you hire a good patent drafting service. You’ll need to work in tandem with them, and the end result is going to be a great draft.

Also Read: Why you need the Proofreading of Patent Claims? to understand why claim proofreading is inevitable!

Need a Patent Drafting Service? – Patent Drafting Catalyst

You are aware of the importance of producing a good patent draft. Hence, you should take the necessary steps to ensure that your draft is as clear and concise as possible. If you’re looking to take the aid of a patent drafting service, consider Patent Drafting Catalyst. Our team boasts 10+ years of experience in supporting patent prosecution with 200+ full-time patent engineers in 30+ technology areas. Our experience includes working with multiple patent attorneys/counsels from multiple countries for patent drafting.

We are always up-to-date about the latest laws and acceptable practices. Our patent engineers understand the importance of comprehensive patent claims in terms of patent commercialization and infringement litigation. We ensure that we draft excellent quality patent applications with the best results. There will also be no surprise billing so that you only the fee that you fix with us and we ensure that our prices are economical.

1. **Design Patents 101 – Introduction**

Design patents as the name suggests are legal protection of the ornamental design, characteristics, and configuration of a utility article. In other words, it is known as an industrial design right. It does not include a listing of any structure or any textual description of the design. Instead, it simply protects the design of the product.

Salient features of design patents

There are some of the requirements for the intellectual property must possess to qualify for a design patent. The major ones are-

It does not focus on the structural or utilitarian features of the product.

It gives a visual description of the product.

Design patent doesn’t protect invisible ornamental features.

Design patents issued for utility-based items protect only the visible ornamental features of that product.

Design patents are subject to examination under the USPTO, which includes prior-art search.

It is valid for a period of 14 years if filed before May 13, 2015, and for 15 years if filed on or after May 13, 2015.

Factors to consider before filing the Design Patent Application:

There are some requirements for design in an IP to qualify for a patent grant. Here are some points that are a must while filing a design patent:

Clear subject: it is relevant to quote aesthetic skill and artistic conception.

Possess innovation: a completely innovative and novel design only gets the award of patent grant.

Follow standards: it must satisfy ornamental standards.

Possess un-obviousness: it is un-obvious and doesn’t come up as prior art.

Double-patenting: you can obtain a design as well as a utility patent for the same invention at the same time by filing a divisional application.

Copyright: it is possible to take copyright for the same product if it qualifies as a work of art.

Trademark: if the design is an embodiment of an article, one can get a trademark for it.

Appropriate Patent Search: a thorough patent search before application filing avoids future infringements and application rejection.

Core Elements of Design Patent Application

The core elements of design patent applications are:

Preamble, applicant first name, design title, description of nature, and its usage where the design is present.

Cross-reference of related applications

Statement regarding federally sponsored research or development.

Figure description.

Strictly a single claim.

Drawings and photographs

Oath and declaration.

In addition, pay a filing fee, search fee, and examination fee. Small business entities and independent inventors get the advantage of fee concession (fee reduced to half).

You might also want to know more about industrial designs. If so, you will get all the information on what are industrial designs and how to protect them here.

Importance of design patents:

Protection of designs is important because it protects the inventor’s right or claim for the invented design. Also, it restricts other individuals, companies, or businesses to take advantage of the product by copying and/or modifying the design. By securing the inventor’s right, the market regulates the continuous flow of inventions, by giving the inventors, their safety right against infringement.

Design is an important part of a brand that represents employee skills and offers a stand in the market. High-end fashion designers could lose millions of dollars in revenue without design protection because anyone else can create the same aesthetic.

Want to have a look at our design patent search samples. You can avail them free from here!

To conclude, design patents protect intellectual property by protecting the appearance of the invented product. Since design patent costs significantly less amount as compared to the utility patents, some patent attorneys recommend filing design patents while filing a utility patent.

What do we bring to your service?

We, at the patent search firm, with 8+ years in business bring the best research services at your end for getting and maintaining the patent right for your intellectual property. Our experts’ help you out with quick prior art search services for your design patents. We provide both pre-grant and post-grant search services to protect your invention from infringement. Also, we expand our horizon of patent searches by looking into the scientific literature, journal articles, conference papers, and TKDL library. Experts at TPSF know no language boundaries and provide our services in 16+ languages covering 100+ countries. To know more about our services, do visit The Patent Search Firm.

1. **Thomas Edison Illustration: Exemplary Cases of Patent Drawings**

We know that Thomas Edison has been pivotal in changing the course of history and technology through his inventions. But another key thing to note in each patent he has is the Thomas Edison Illustration. He had1093 patents to his name in the USA and 512 worldwide. Each patent, when you look at them, shows how visionary he was. The illustrations themselves were unique and futuristic for his time. Times change, and we have more rules and guidelines to follow but nonetheless, we should take inspiration from his work. Let’s look at some of his best inventions, and more particularly, each Thomas Edison Illustration.

Also, Read: Most unusual Illustrations

Thomas Edison Illustration: Top 5 inventions and their illustrations

Though it’s tough to choose 5 out of 1000, we are providing you with the most revolutionary inventions by Edison. Also, with each invention, we are sharing its revolutionary Thomas Edison Illustration. Let’s have a look at each one.

1. A Practical Light Bulb

Thomas Edison Illustration Light Bulb

Patent Number: US214636A﻿

It’s the obvious choice to start things off with. Edison is most famously known for lighting up the world with the light bulb. Though, he didn’t invent the very first light bulb. There were designs in existence, none of which were practical though. His innovation made it possible to have a light bulb at home without consuming too much electricity. The Thomas Edison illustration is the first practical design of a bulb and we can see that it’s precise and sharp.

2. Telegraph Apparatus

Thomas Edison Illustration Telegraph Apparatus

Patent Number: US91527A

It is quite rightly said that necessity is the mother of all inventions. Edison in his youth had to work as a telegraph operator for the bureau news wire of the Associated Press. Edison was partly deaf and had the desire to make the telegraph easier for him to use. Hence, he came up with an improvement in the Telegraph. This made it possible to send messages back and forth between trains in motion, or between a railway station and a moving train.

3. Phonograph

Thomas Edison Illustration Phonograph

Patent Number: US227679A

The phonograph was an incredible invention indeed. This technology made modern music business possible. Thomas Edison gave the world the first device to both record sound and play it back. This was a little different in comparison to his usual works on telegraphs and telephones. When we look at the illustration, we can see how intricate the design was. We should thank Edison for having the music we listen to on our devices every day.

4. Kinetographic Camera

Thomas Edison Illustration Kinetographic Camera

Patent Number: US589168A

Edison’s interest in motion pictures began before 1888. He had the desire to create a camera for motion pictures. He finally got a patent for his invention in 1897, which was a “the kinetographic camera”. The word takes inspiration from greek words “kineto” which means movement, and “scopos” which means to watch. Here we can see from the Thomas Edison Illustration that the device is quite convolute and has a lot of parts. This invention was the first step towards us being able to make videos.

5. Electric Automobile

Thomas Edison Illustration Electric Automobile

Patent Number: US750102A

You’ve all heard that Elon Musk and his company, “Tesla”, are the first to come up with commercially-viable electric vehicles. However, he was not the first ever to create an electric automobile. Surprisingly, Edison had the vision for this way back in 1904 and tried working to commercialize it for 12 years. He built an electric car in 1912 which came with tone 30-volt electric motor and two 15-volt batteries. One of its biggest problems was its price. It cost twice as much as the cars of his competitors. It also had too heavy batteries. Hence, it never got to see the light of day. However, Edison did have the first-ever patent for an electric automobile under his belt.

Need a Professional for you Illustrations? – Professional Patent Illustrators

We just saw some inventions from Thomas Edison. Each Thomas Edison illustration is precise and effective. To make such quality illustrations for your inventions, consider hiring a professional like Professional Patent Illustrators. We boast 10+ years of experience in delivering top quality patent illustrations. We specialize in Utility patents and design patents, with thorough knowledge of the latest guidelines and norms. Our turnaround time is incredibly fast and we guarantee any number of iterations until we satisfy your needs. To make an inquiry, contact us on Professional Patent Illustrators.

1. **Patent Prosecution Paralegal: Job Responsibilities & Importance**

Given the complexity of the patent prosecution process, hiring a patent prosecution paralegal is prudent. It’s important to first understand the role of a paralegal and then get into specifics of a patent prosecution paralegal. The amount of legal work for a lawyer during the entire process is immense. This includes communication with the client, the USPTO, document preparation, docketing, etc. You would obviously want to ensure that the entire process is seamless and flawless right down to the last thread. So, hiring a paralegal is an absolute necessity. Let’s understand why.

Also Read: Patent Monitoring: A Primary Guide

Patent Paralegal: Job Responsibilities

A paralegal is a person who takes care of substantive legal work while working for a lawyer. The work revolves around recognition, evaluation, and communication of relevant facts and legal concepts. A lawyer can do this work alone but there is a large magnitude of work that needs attention in short spans of time. Hence, hiring a paralegal takes a lot of weight off the shoulders of a lawyer. Check out the Benefits of a Patent Paralegal Service.

A patent paralegal’s legal work naturally revolves around matters of IP and more specifically, patents. Patent law requires a technical understanding of scientific principles and phenomena. Hence a patent paralegal needs to have extra knowledge of science like engineering, life sciences, chemistry, etc. This makes the job of a patent paralegal harder than other paralegals. Read more about the duties a patent paralegal needs to perform to understand their responsibilities better.

Also Read: Things to Do Before Patenting Something

The Role and Importance of a Patent Prosecution Paralegal

A patent prosecution paralegal is a person with a specialization in the patent prosecution process. They need to be proficient in certain domains. They are:

Patent application drafting and filing

Keeping track of deadlines

Handling docketing systems for multiple cases

Corresponding with clients

Performing administrative tasks

The patent prosecution paralegal has to understand the invention very clearly. This is key because they need to be able to assist in the drafting of the patent application. Hence, their correspondences with the client are very delicate and important.

They must also keep track of the deadlines so that everything is done in a timely manner and no undue situations arise. This is easier when they maintain a good docketing system. This will also help them to handle multiple cases together.

Also Read: How to draft an Accurate Patent Claim

Need a Paralegal? – Patent Paralegal Force

You can see the importance a patent prosecution paralegal has in the entire patent process. The process is tedious, time-consuming, and it is definitely not a one-person job. Hence, hiring a patent paralegal is a wise option. At Patent Paralegal Force, we offer cost-effective professional legal assistance and paralegal services to patent and IP attorneys worldwide. Our team has professionals who boast years of experience who use state-of-the-art tools to support you through the patent process.We follow flexibility to accommodate the best of our client’s needs, through our automation and manual techniques. Visit our Patent Paralegal Services to avail us.

1. **Information Disclosure Form: Top 11 Critical Aspects**

It is the duty of an applicant to disclose all the relevant details regarding the invention to the USPTO. Through an information disclosure form (IDF) an applicant submits used all the relevant invention details as a duty of disclosure.

This duty is of the inventors and on all other concerned persons involved in the preparation and prosecution of the application. The form generally includes details of the concepts behind the invention, all active members, prior arts, problems for rectification, drawings, and visual aids, references, etc. Information submitted in IDS includes other issued patents, published patent applications, scientific journal articles, and other relevant published material.

 Information Disclosure Form: Critical Elements

Take care while filling the information disclosure form since it apparently allocates the views of the inventor for his/her invention. At the same time, it gives a complete description of how your invention stands apart from the prior art. The major areas of concern are:

Invention Title: The title must match and indicate the functionality of the invention to a very specific and precise level. Also, with a title length of not more than 15 words.

Invention Area: depict the subject matter or the area of technology clearly in the title and the invention description area. Even the benefits must also clearly point out the application areas or the industrial applicability of the invention.

Prior art and rectified problem: Prior art and problems for rectification must clearly indicate the present status of the technology. This is with respect to the pending patent applications and the current developments. If your invention is in furtherance with any existing product, then give a distinguishing description of the invention from the closest prior art.

Invention Objective: objectives fulfill the requirements and importance of the invention. They fulfill the necessity of the invention when compared to the prior art. Whereas, the necessity portrays its importance when compared with the prior art. The objectives clearly depict that invention as a necessary step to improve the prior art.

Summary: Including summary and the mode of performing the invention, is a good practice. This part clearly reveals the main aspects of the invention. The summary provides the crux of the invention in a very concise format at a glance.

Detailed description: it includes all concerning factors, such as the nature of modifications, invention particulars, drawings examples and references in a detailed format.

Relevant drawings: drawings give a visual experience of your invention. Therefore, always attach all the drawings related to your invention. You can also pin the complex or important drawings or sketches on separate sheets for clarity.

Keywords: a set of keywords helps the attorney to understand the technical terms involved and makes the invention more lucid. This even helps in finding the exact arrangement of the patent elements.

Claims: Claims outline the scope of the invention, which in turns becomes the factor to decide the rights provided to an inventor, after the grant of the patent.

References: mention all the links related to the literature and patent search which are of similar nature as the invention.

Disclosure information: Sometimes, the disclosure information is also required which must depict the names and dates of the first disclosure of the invention. Inclusion of mode of disclosure (publication, presentation, or oral) makes the invention more transparent in front of the examiner. This enhances the chances of getting a patent.

Benefits of Information Disclosure

Giving a transparent disclosure of your invention majorly works in your favor as an inventor or applicant. Given below is how a well-described information disclosure form gets your patent application pass through all the toll-gates of prosecution.

Once you prepare the information disclosure, it becomes easier to draft the patent application. This happens simply because the form clearly states out every technical as well as logical detail about the invention. This, in turn, makes it much easier for the patent attorney to draft it.

Now, the patent attorney can frame wide-ranging claims without studying every minute details of the invention on his/her own, instead of the inventor is the subject expert helps out for this. This, in turn, creates a good relationship and cooperation between the inventor and the patent attorney.

A good relationship is a clear sign of a good workflow that makes the prosecution process more trustworthy and easier. Providing this sort of key support to the patent counsel will take the inventor one step more towards getting the patent for the invention.

After learning the importance of information disclosure, here you can find when and how you can file an Information Disclosure Statement.

Our Approach

We at the Smart IDS Solution, prepare ready-to-file Information disclosure forms in USPTO prescribed format. Our team comply the data with the obligation, maintain and update it by timely and accurately reporting prior art references. We ensure 100% quality assurance with our IDS creation and are remarkably appreciated by our corporate clients from more than 45 countries. We do not charge any licensing fees, monthly fees, and storage fees. To know more about our services, please visit SmartIDS Solution.

1. **Utility Patent Illustration: Major Tips**

A utility patent illustration is one of the most important aspects of a utility patent application. Even long pages of description of the invention may not be enough to elucidate your invention completely. You can use a utility patent illustration as a torch to illuminate and illustrate your invention properly. It is a great way to eliminate any doubts about your invention and it improves the scope of your protection. So it is absolutely necessary to put the hammer on the nail correctly while rendering these illustrations. For that, you must ensure that you follow all the latest guidelines and practices by USPTO.

What’s the Need of a Utility Patent Illustration?

Not only is an illustration a great option for you to use, but also it is a requirement by the USPTO. The applicant for a patent has to furnish a drawing of the invention whenever a drawing would help to understand the invention. Hence, you must include at least one illustration when drafting your patent application.

There are 2 basic tips that you must keep in mind while creating your illustrations.

Point of Novelty: You must be aware that your invention needs to be novel in order to receive a patent. There can be instances where your invention might overlap with an existing one. This is where drawings can play a game-changing role. You can use your drawing to make it stand out from any prior art. So you must make full use of an illustration.

Telling a Story: The illustrations should act as a visual story. You may use sequential drawings to explain a process or the making of a product. Either way, the drawing should make it absolutely clear about how your invention looks and functions. If you can successfully tell the story of your invention visually, then your chances of getting a patent will increase a long way.

Let’s see how to make the best utility patent illustration.

Utility Patent Illustration: Guidelines to Follow

There are some vital instructions from The Manual of Patent Examining Procedures that you need to follow:

Every illustration must be black and white in color and no other color.

You may use colors only when a part of the invention absolutely requires you to use different colors while explaining. You must also file a separate petition with the USPTO to avail permission for the same.

Use India ink for all illustrations.

Create all your illustrations on white A4 matte paper that is flexible and strong. Dimensions are as follows: 21cm x 29.7cm or 21.6cm x 27.9 cm.

Margins should be as follows:

2.5 cm on the top

1.5 cm on the right side

2.5 cm on the left side

1.0 cm on the bottom

Each illustration must include the invention name, name of the inventor, and application number.

Ensure that upon rescaling the drawing, it will not be crowded when reproduced at 2/3 size. Don’t write indications of scale-like “1/2” because that will lose its meaning upon rescaling.

The manual encourages you to use shading. However, avoid solid black shading except on bar graphs or to represent color.

You can also include charts and diagrams in your illustrations.

You may use symbols and legends if necessary to describe the invention.

Use lead lines to redirect the reader from the drawing to the associated symbol in the description.

Superimposition of drawings should not happen.

You don’t need an illustration if your patent is about a chemical compound or process.

The USPTO allows you to use photos, but only in exceptional cases. Photographs can prove to be useful in providing intricate details of the invention which might be difficult to draw. Hence, they must be in high definition to depict everything clearly. They must follow the same rules in terms of the type, size, and margins of the drawing.

The views

If your invention is a physical object, you should draw all the views; top, bottom, and all the sides. Wherever applicable, you should include the following views of your invention:

Six views (front, back, right, left, top, and bottom) for 3D objects and two views (front and back) for 2D objects.

Three-dimensional perspective views

Exploded views to represent how each part works during the operation of the invention

Sectional views to depict the functionality

You can leave out the surfaces which are without ornamentations. As the guidelines stipulate, you should make the most use of shading. It is another essential component of a utility patent illustration. It depicts depth, contour, and texture. You should use dots, lines, and distinctive patterns for this. Check out our sample utility patent illustration to see the quality of our work.

Need a professional illustrator? – Patent Illustration Express

You may feel that the margins for error are too fine and the guidelines are too many. Consequently, rendering your own illustrations may seem like a daunting task. If you feel the need to consult a professional, Patent Illustration Express is here to help you. Our team of professionals boasts years of experience and diverse skill-set of software and handmade drawings. Utility patent illustrations are our specialty. Your satisfaction is paramount to us. We offer an incredibly high turnaround time and unlimited iterations, all at an extremely affordable price.

1. **Patent Filing: Know How to Proceed**

Patent filing is a process of submitting a written application to the patent office to request a patent grant for the respective invention. It is necessary to maintain the guidelines and rules during the filing process. Also, a Patent grant is wholly based on the Patent filing.

You must specify the features of the invention, submit legal forms and follow the instructions of the Patent office to increase the chances of Patent grant.

Moreover, you must submit the application to the Patent office only if you have a patentable idea/invention. There exist different types of patent filing. It is very important to determine the relevant type for your Patent.

General Patent types:

Utility Patents

Utility patent preserves the working and use of a particular product or invention. It includes process, machine, products, or matter composition.

Moreover, they are meant for the invention having a useful purpose, for example, a new engine for cars.

A Utility Patent lasts for 20 years from the date of filing, if you file it after 8 June 1995.

Design Patents

The design patent deals with the visual shape or design upgrade to the article of manufacture. It describes a new ornamental feature of the item and protects the way how an invention looks.

The design patents get a time period of 15 years from the date of issue if you file it after 13 May 2015.

Example, You can attain a utility patent for a new function of the watch and you can also attain a design patent for it if you made any new ornamental changes.

Plant Patents

You may obtain a Plant Patent if you discover or reproduce (through cross-pollination) a new variety of the plant. The plant must not be present in any uncultivated state.

A Plant patent also have a lifespan of 20 years from the filing date, if filed after 8 June 1995.

You must decide the type of Patent application if you are done with the type of Patent.

Also Read: IDS Patent: Definition, Obligation and Requirements in Patent Applications﻿

Types of Patent applications:

There are generally two types of patent applications.

Provisional Patent application Filing:

In 1995 it became necessary to differentiate between provisional patent application and non-provisional patent application after USPTO authorized provisional application filing.

A provisional patent application is different from the non-provisional application. This is so because you do not fill all the formalities with it.

Moreover, it just states the motto of your patent application and helps to obtain a patent pending stage for your invention.

After this, you must file a non-provisional patent application within 12 months.

2. Non-Provisional Patent application Filing:

A non-provisional patent application is the complete detailing of your invention through illustrations and written claims. Also, you must write a description of the invention in such a way that any third person with ordinary skills is able to recreate the invention.

However, rafting this specification and claims makes the non-provisional patent application somewhat difficult. Complex patent applications require professional drafters to illustrate the details and create drawings to present the invention in a better way.

3. International Patent Filing:

PCT (Patent Cooperation Treaty) is an international agreement with many countries. According to PCT, the inventor must file a single international patent application to assure protection for the invention among the countries that had already signed the agreement.

The WIPO (World Intellectual Property Organization) contains a list of every member of the PCT agreement.

However, an applicant must follow the guidelines provided by the patent office of the respective country, if he/she wants to file a patent in a particular country.

Related Article: How To Write a Patent: The Most Important Tips, Tricks and Hacks

How The Patent Filing Company Serves You?

The Patent Filing Company is equipped with a team of experts in various fields of Patent filing. We believe in complete customer satisfaction while considering a pocket-friendly price. You are provided beneficial guidance in any stage of your patent. Also, you can keep an eye on the status of your patent application on a regular basis. Moreover, we provide you a quick turnaround time with after deal services. You can place your order online and for more service-related inquiry, you can visit The Patent Filing Company.

1. **Patent Translation Risks: What & How to Avoid?**

The literal meaning of the word Patent translation means to translate anything related to a Patent into another desired/relevant language. However, on legal aspects, Patent Translation works to translate a patent written in the current language into another. This proves to be a daunting task as the meaning of the contents should not change. Therefore, it associates many patent translation risks with it.

While patent filing, patent translation converts the whole textual form from one language to another. This requires to be in accordance with the current linguistic requirements. Documentation is in the form of patent claims, drawings, description, or legal files.

Translation services majorly include translations for filing, litigation (accurate translations to undertake legal action with confidence), and for technical insights.

Most Common Patent Translation Risks

A perfect translation keeps the anticipated meaning of translated words constant. While translating maintaining documents authenticity and bringing the same influence through some other language is not an easy task.

Let’s understand the most-common risks involved in translation, in the following section:

Misinterpretation of patent’s meaning and scope: this is the first of several patent translation risks. This happens when a translator needs to tackle the risk of language difference while translating legal documents. Some languages have jargons (special technical words that explain the term precisely) that enhance our understanding of its severity. But, there may also be cases when you don’t find those jargons in the translating language. This may seem a minor issue on the outer aspect, but the difference in wording can change the meaning completely. This, in turn, leads to a wrong interpretation of the complete sense of the patent application.

Multiple meanings identification: a consequence of using the wrong word is to interpret more than one meaning from the same sentence. This creates ambiguity since it can cause confusion for the readers about the significant meaning of the text. Moreover, doubts lead to wrong interpretation and misunderstanding about the patent’s purpose.

Incorrectness in patent’s applicability: in legal matters, every translated sentence must bear the same significance as the original sentence. Translation mistakes can change the literal meaning of the invention (basically, the claims), making it invalid or meaningless. Languages are so diverse that it is very difficult to translate everything word-to-word. This, in turn, leads to a wrong interpretation of the invention.

Related Article: What is the Importance of Patent Proofreading?

Maximize the probability of infringement: wrong use of words may also create new black-holes attracting infringement. This proves to be one of the major patent translation risks as the infringing claims leads to straightaway abandonment of the patent application.

 Measures to prevent Patent Translation Risks

Patent translation risk poses major drawbacks for a patent application. One needs to be very careful while translating the detailed patent document to another language. So, let’s now understand the ways to maintain the authenticity of your translated document to win the patent grant, despite facing risks.

Hire professionals: for the correct translation of a patent document, a patent translator must understand both the languages completely. He must also know the technique to use the correct word at the correct place to bring the correct interpretation of the invention. Not only this, he must write the sentences after analyzing its meaning from the perspective of a normal person having the domain-specific knowledge, the inventor’s ideology, and the patent examiner for his/her expectations from the application.

It’s better to look for a good and renowned translation agency that holds specialization in patent translation. Also, there is also a provision of assigning more than one person in the translation work. Through this, the second can check/ re-check for the correctness of the first translator’s work. There are firms that provide a number of quality assurance processes, from no-review to spot-checking, to three-person verification.

Related Article: Why should you hire a good patent illustrator?

Think before you invest: Applicants/inventors sometimes try to save their pocket by investing at business-promising firms that offer great discounts. But this becomes one of the major patent translation risks as they don’t provide the reliable and quality-assured translation. One must care to avoid as many mistakes as possible so that saving money would not become a nightmare.

Certified Translator: Certification becomes important when the inventor needs to submit the translation to a court or government agency. There are different cases when where the law doesn’t require the certification. Even in such cases, it’s a good practice to ask for certification of translation. This will ensure that the translation is precise, correct, unambiguous, and reliable. A certification is a statement of the translator’s good faith belief that the translation is true to the original. The USPTO and other patent offices prefer reports from certified translators. The work of a certified translator helps avoid patent translation risks as they are well knowledgeable professionals.

The aid of professional proofreader: making the translated application does not mark the completion of the translation story. Proofreading when done by another professional translator will ensure the integrity of the translated document.

Read before you sign: The applicant/inventor must make sure the quality and reliability of the patent application. Therefore, before signing the applicability of his/her translated patent application the translator must thoroughly go through the translated script. You can also take help from another experienced patent translator if you are not familiar with the translated language.

 What do we bring?

Patent translation is always a challenge because everything depends upon the translator’s proficiency and style of presentation of the translation. Only a professional can avoid patent translation risks and mistakes and will prepare a reliable draft. The level of formality may vary but the meaning remains consistent.

We at the Patent Translations Express, offer high-quality patent translations for IP law firms in many countries across the globe. Also, our PCT Nationalization and Multi-Country Filing services are well-renowned. Our patent translators hold Masters and PhDs, in disciplines of Science and Technology, with a deep understanding of patent literature. Our expertise in country-specific regulations and a pool of highly qualified patent translators sets us apart from other translation companies. Do give a visit to our service page to know more.

1. **What is Comprehensive Trademark Search?**

If you’re filing a trademark, then it is highly advisable to conduct a comprehensive trademark search with the USPTO. You might come up with a unique word/phrase for the product or service that needs a trademark. However, you need to be certain that your word/phrase doesn’t overlap with a pre-existing trademark. Hence, it is vital for you to carry out a comprehensive trademark search before filing one of your own.

This article covers all the important points you need to remember about a comprehensive trademark search. That’s not all! We’ll also show you how to conduct a trademark search on the USPTO website (with examples!).

Basics of Conducting a Comprehensive Trademark Search

Before we dive into the actual search process, let’s first understand the basics. You must keep these points in mind while carrying out a trademark search.

1. Elucidate the product or service that you want the mark for

This step is simple enough, yet very important. You must ensure that you are clearly describing everything about the good or service to eliminate any confusion.

2. Identification of specific terms for your product or service

You must identify particular terms that you can associate with your item. To ensure which terms are usable, check out the listing of Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual. You need to locate terms that describe your item. For example, “football boots” is the acceptable term for boots specific for the sport, football.

Step 1: Type out your specific terms in the search bar

Fig1(a). Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual Search page

Fig1(a). Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual Search page

Step 2: Check results

Fig1(b). Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual Search page

Fig1(b). Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual Search page

3. Determine the International class

The online manual will also list the appropriate International Class for your item. Providing the class for your item is not a necessity for your trademark application. However, knowing your international class can aid in focusing your search. Click here to know more about International classes.

4. Identify related goods or services, and their classes

You must also identify and scan the terms for the goods and/or services that relate to your product in terms of usage, advertisement or sales. For example, football boot’s usage and sale happen with footballs and kits in the Acceptable Identification of Goods & Services Manual. You must also scan the goods or services that relate to your product in the International Classification of Goods and Services. The purpose is to determine their class as well.

Fig2. Search for relatable goods or services and their classes

Fig2. Search for relatable goods or services and their classes

5. Develop a basic search strategy

Try and think of other alternatives for your trademark if your first preference is unavailable. Play around with the keyword while coming up with an alternative if your mark includes a phrase. Also, use truncation devices (\*) or wildcards (?) to look for marks with word stems similar to yours. Comprehensive Trademark Search

6. Widen your search strategy horizon

You should also search for alternative spellings, homonyms, synonyms to your trademark. Also, search for words that have similar sounds or appearances or even phonetic equivalents. You can also narrow your strategy later. This can be done by limiting your search results with the goods/services you found in Step 2 or the International Class you found in Step 3.

7. Conduct the actual search

 Now comes the real part, the comprehensive trademark search on TESS-the USPTO’s web-based Trademark Electronic Search System. You can do this yourself if you have internet access. You can also go to your local Patent and Trademark Resource Center. Follow the screenshots for a more clear idea.

Step 1: Move the cursor on “Trademarks” on the USPTO Website homepage. Select “Searching Trademarks” from the dropdown menu.

Fig3(a). How to carry out Trademark Search on the USPTO Website

Fig3(a). How to carry out Trademark Search on the USPTO Website

Step 2: From the new page, select “Trademark Electronic Search System (or TESS)” Comprehensive Trademark Search

Fig 3(b). How to carry out Trademark Search on the USPTO Website

Fig 3(b). How to carry out Trademark Search on the USPTO Website

Tips for Using the TESS (Bonus Information + Example)

Now you know the basic methodology to conduct a comprehensive trademark search. But how can you optimize it on TESS? Let’s find out. Comprehensive Trademark Search

While performing trademark searches, keep the likelihood of confusion in mind. For trademark infringement, the courts abide by a standard, which is the likelihood of confusion. Your mark shouldn’t be very similar to another trademark so that it doesn’t confuse the consumers about the origin of the item. If it happens then one can consider it to be a form of trademark Therefore, you shouldn’t only look for trademarks that are identical to your mark. You also need to look for trademarks that are similar to yours.

Use the Word and/or Design Mark Search (Free Form) option to gain maximum flexibility on TESS.

Fig 4. Selection of search option on TESS

On the free form search page of TESS, apply the yes option in the plurals box so that you can look for plural forms of your chosen mark.

Fig 5. Selection of “plurals” option before searching

Fig 5. Selection of “plurals” option before searching

You should consider using quotation marks to enclose any phrases in your search query. If you don’t use quotation marks, the system will interpret your query as (first term) OR (second term). Because of this, any trademark that contains either the first term or the second term will appear in the results. If you get too many search results for a certain query, you should use quotation marks to enclose the entire term. This will help you narrow down the number of results you get. Comprehensive Trademark Search

Fig 6. Using Quotation marks while searching

Fig 6. Using Quotation marks while searching

You should verify domain names for web-based businesses. You can check domain name registrars through sources such as org. This organization oversees web domain registrations.

Need a professional Searcher? – The Trademark Search Company

You invest a lot in building your brand. Apart from the money, the hours of efforts in promotions, recognition and making it synonymous to what your business stands for. Before you make this effort, you need to be sure about heading in the right direction. That is conducting a comprehensive trademark search. Despite keeping these points in mind, you may feel that you need professional assistance. The Trademark Search Company offers the widest and the most flexible search coverage. To ensure this, we carry out all our searches manually, and not via computers. We also want to ensure that our prices are affordable without compromise on quality. Your satisfaction is our guarantee. Comprehensive Trademark Search

1. **Patent Registration in India: An all-encompassing guide**

India in the modern day is flourishing with ideas and inventions in a plethora of industries. More and more patents are being filed each day, making Patent Registration in India a very important task. It takes somewhere between 3 to 5 years to complete the patent registration in India. You may not get the grant for the patent if you fail to comply with the necessary processes. Therefore, it is of prime importance that one thoroughly understands all the steps. This includes all the important forms, formalities and deadlines i in the process. This helps to have a plain sailing patent registration.

Also, Read: Patent Fundamentals

Patent Registration in India: A 6 Step Guide

1. Patentability/novelty search

Before filing a patent application with the Indian Patent Office, a thorough patentability search should be done. The results of this search determine the chances of getting a patent based on the discovery of prior art. This should be done for both patent and non-patent references. You can conduct a patentability search on the IP India website.

A patentability search is highly advisable but it is not a mandatory step.

2. Drafting Patent Application

Once you get the results of the search, the next step is to draft the patent application (using form 1).

You must ensure that a patent specification accompanies your patent application (using form 2). Depending on the state of the invention, one can file a provisional or complete patent application. If the invention is still in development, then you should consider filing a provisional application. This blocks a priority date for the applicant. It also gives them a time of 12 months to see the invention to completion and file the complete application.

While filing the patent application, you must attach a patent draft to it. It is the patent’s representation in front of the patent office, so it is very important. The decision of granting the patent relies on this draft.

3. Patent Filing in India

Patent registration in India requires a list of forms. You can find them below along with their purpose:

Patent grant application form – Form 1

Specification form (complete/provisional) – Form 2

Statement and undertaking form (Necessary if a corresponding patent application is filed in another country) – Form 3

Inventorship declaration form (To be filed only along with the complete application) – Form 5

Request for Examination – Form 18

Patent agent authorization form (Necessary only if the applicant is using a patent agent) Form 26

Form for start-ups or small entity (Necessary only if the applicant is claiming start-up or small entity status) – Form 28

4. Publication of Patent Application

The Indian Patent Office publishes every patent application one files with them in the official patent journal. This does not require any separate requests. Generally, the patent office publishes the application 18 months from the date of filing. However, if an applicant wants an early publication, then they can get it done within a month (using Form 9).

The patent office does not publish an application if:

The invention falls in a category of publication which could be against the interest of the nation.

The complete application is not filed within 12 months of the date of filing of the provisional application.

The applicant requests a withdrawal (3 months prior to the publication).

5. Examination of Patent Application

This is perhaps the hardest part of the patent registration process in India. The IPO scrutinizes every patent application before granting the patent. An applicant must request for an examination after their publication (using Form 18). The application is queued for the examination once the IPO receives the Request for Examination (RFE). An examiner in the relevant field examines the application to ensure the same is in accordance with the patent act and rules. The examiner also performs a search to understand similar technologies to ascertain if the invention would satisfy the patentability criteria.

On the basis of the review of the application, the examiner will issue the First Examination Report (FER) to the applicant. It states the grounds for objections to the grant of the patent. The applicant must successfully overcome all the objections in order to get a grant for the patent. The total time to respond to the FER is 6 months from the date on which the patent office issues the FER. However, the applicant can file a request for an extension (using Form 4) and get an extension of 3 months.

6. Grant of patent

The patent receives a grant once the applicant overcomes all the objections. The patent is valid for 20 years, and it needs a periodic renewal during those 20 years.

The First Schedule specifies the fees which are payable with respect to the grant of patents and applications.

Patent registration in India: Key Points

A thorough patentability search is very important even though it is not mandatory.

The patent draft is of cardinal importance. The decision of granting the patent relies on this draft.

It is always better to get an early publication to avoid any possible competitions/infringements.

Ensure that your office actions responses are within prescribed deadlines and you follow the necessary protocol.

Why choose our services?

Before you proceed with the patent registration process, you need to decide if you would need the assistance of a patent professional. Consider the steps and deadlines involved. It is highly advisable that you engage a patent professional / firm who has years of experience in the patent field. YPT is a team of 225+ technology/industry experts who speak the inventor’s language and have a deep understanding of Indian & Global Patent Laws.

YPT utilizes its knowledge in patent prosecution and patent enforcement to draft patent applications, ensuring maximum enforceability and cost-saving. We have an in-depth understanding of the working style of all 4 patent offices in India and also have a good network with them to ensure expedited and accurate information.

1. **How to Write a Patent: The Most Important Tips, Tricks, and Hacks**

If you are planning to protect your invention, then you obviously need to know how to write a patent. You simply cannot understate the importance of the different sections, especially the patent claims. They can be tedious to write because of the peculiarity of the guidelines laid down by the USPTO. You may wish to write a patent application on your own. But it is important to understand that it is not easy to write a patent. But don’t worry; we’re here to give you a comprehensive guide to write a patent yourself.

How should you write a patent

Anatomy of a Patent Application

Let’s first understand the basic outline of a patent application. While drafting, the application will primarily include these sections.

Title of the application

Cross-Reference to related applications

Background of the invention

Summary of the invention

Brief Description of the drawing(s)

Elaborate description of the drawings

Claims

Abstract and Drawing(s)

The draft needs to follow this order. However, it’s advisable to start off with drafting the claims section first as it’s the most important part of the patent. It forms the basis for the rest of the application. Writing the claims will also pave the path for your drawings because you’ll be sure to cover the relevant areas. We’ll further see how to write the important sections of the applications.

Also, see Patent Drafting: A guide for beginners.

Take a look at this patent application from Nike, for an illuminating shoe. Notice how it mentions the title, “Method for Illuminating an article”. It is simple and crisp. The entire application is 39 pages long. It contains elaborate drawings and the description goes on for about 11 pages. This is to ensure that the patent has very broad and comprehensive protection.

Patent Application by Nike

Fig. Patent Application by Nike

Write a patent – How to draft the claims?

We’ve already made the importance of the claims section clear. Let’s understand the drafting of the claims section in detail.

Declarations

First, you should work on two declarations, one broad and general, and the other one more specific. The first declaration should describe the broad terms of your invention, without any pointless ideas. The second declaration should describe your invention more specifically, considering all the realistic possibilities. This is important because the claims need to be current and must have an applicable scope, some broad and some specific. After doing this, you have a broad and generic model of your invention and a very specific one. Check out Omnibus Claim: Importance of Narrow and Broad Claim Scope and Antecedent Basis.

Characteristics of the Claims (and hacks)

Let’s dive deeper into the important characteristics of the claims. The crucial points to keep in mind while drafting the claims are:

The claims should be complete.

They should have adequate support in terms of what area they intend to cover.

The claims should be precise.

The claims should be written such that each claim must be its own sentence and it should be clear to the reader. You must ensure that you don’t use lengthy technical language by using words like “strong”, “major part”, “such as”, etc. This can prove to be the differentiating factor in your application. Each claim identifies the innovative features of the invention and the elements that put the claim in context. Make sure to support the claim in the description section by explaining your invention elaborately.

Also Read: Multiple Dependent Claims: Why do we need them?

Claim Structure

The structure of every claim should be as follows:

Introductory phrase – This phrase introduces the invention and often the purpose of the invention.

The body – This is the legal description which entails the exact ideas that you are seeking protection for.

Interlink between the two – This section links the body and introductory phrases. It’s important for how restrictive or permissive a patent is.

In conclusion, the claims section is the heart of your application. Everything else, from drawings to description, should revolve around the claims. The claims define the legal boundaries of your patent so they need the utmost care and attention during drafting.

Also, check out Jepson Claims: Know the Importance.

Continuing the previous patent application example from Nike, we will take a look at their claims:

Claims section of an application by Nike

Fig. Claims section of an application by Nike

This claims section goes on for another 2 pages and lists all possible uses of the invention. This ensures that nobody thinks of infringing because the scope of the claims is incredibly vast.

Also read: US Patent Proofreading – with USPTO Best Practices

Tips and Tricks to Write a Patent

You need to make your application stand out, so you require a few hacks which will help you achieve it. Let’s read about them now:

Description of Embodiments: Inventors often get confused between “different embodiments of the invention” and “different embodiments”. You must understand that your invention has more than just one model. If you don’t describe something, then it isn’t a part of your invention.

 For example, consider that you say that your invention comprises of the components A+B+C+D. If someone else presents an almost identical invention but leaves out certain components, then it wouldn’t be an infringement. That’s because your claim meant that the invention is complete when it has all 4 components A, B, C, and D together. Your description is too narrow. So you must understand the embodiments of your invention and make sure that it is not subject to exposure.

Usage of the invention: You should describe alternate models of your invention. These need not be specific, but you should still describe it. Inventors should consider the different ways in which their invention can be put to use. This is to ensure that your protection is all-encompassing and comprehensive.

Terminology: You must make sure that the terminology you use is the best fit. It shouldn’t be incorrect or ambiguous at any point because that can lead to exposure. It’s best to hire a professional to draft your application. But, if that is too expensive then you should seek advice on the quality of your draft from a professional.

Enablement Requirement and Drawings: When you write a patent application, you must describe all of your inventions that would clarify how to make and use it. You must explain how all the parts of your invention work and interrelate to each other. Further, you must use the drawings wisely. The drawings give a clearer understanding of your descriptions because they provide visuals. An examiner may be able to get an idea about your invention by looking at the descriptions. But when he/she sees the drawings, there will be no doubt left at all.

Need a Professional to Draft your Application? – Patent Drafting Catalyst

We’ve given you the entire procedure to write a patent application by yourself. However, you can see for yourself that the precision and the use of correct language aren’t easy to achieve. Therefore, it is highly advisable to hire a professional. Our team boasts 10+ years of experience in supporting patent prosecution with 200+ full-time patent engineers in 30+ technology areas. Our experience includes working with multiple patent attorneys/counsels from multiple countries for patent drafting.

We are always up-to-date about the latest laws and acceptable practices. Our patent engineers understand the importance of comprehensive patent claims in terms of patent commercialization and infringement litigation. We ensure that we draft excellent quality patent applications with the best results. There will also be no surprise billing so that you only the fee that you fix with us and we ensure that our prices are economical.

1. **Global Trademark Search and its significance**

Global Trademark Search is a process of scanning among the existing International Trademarks or Trademark applications for any potential infringement. Companies that plan to supply their goods/services in foreign countries take the help of these services. The complete process of application and registration for global trademarks is managed by the Madrid Protocol. However, the registration protects the intellectual rights of the owner over a Trademark at the global level.

The WIPO (World Intellectual Property Organization) provides a database for Global trademark search. Also, it allows the customer intending to use the Trademark globally to know about the status of existing Trademarks/Trademark applications.

GlobalTrademarkSearch:Types

There are different types of International Trademark searches according to the selecting criteria. Preliminary type is the easiest type of International trademark search facility. It is a basic web search for identical/similar trademarks.

The main categories involved in the preliminary search are:

Word search

The search points out phonetic similarities among the categories and products.

Logo search

We perform the Logo search on a NICE classification database based on the NICE Agreement.

Device mark search

A Device mark search is run over the database of International Classification of Figurative Elements of Mark.

NOTE– Some other search engines also include serial numbers and company numbers.

Related Articles: How to Perform a TESS Trademark Search?

Global Trademark Search: Features

Searching pre-existing similar/identical Trademarks at global level helps the company to avoid infringing any trademark registered in another country. However, for registering a Trademark at a foreign country, a company needs to register the Trademark in the native country.

Registering a product/service in a foreign country after the search prevents the third parties to use the original Trademark. Also, it helps to maintain the reputation and sales of the company.

However, if you don’t want to register your Trademark in another country, you don’t need to go for a Global Trademark Search.

Common mistakes

There a few usual mistakes that a company does even after performing a trademark search. These mistakes can lead to a loss of value and economy of a country. Some of the common mistakes are as follows:

You cannot file for a Trademark in a foreign country if it is not registered in the Native country. To gain protection in another country it is necessary to register the Trademark at the home country.

Companies are also unaware of some facts regarding Trademark protection.

For example: To get protection on the Trademark in abroad, you must have existing live protection for at least 5 years.

Not planning according to the search and application may lead to a loss of investment and even current business. There are online calculators available to answer queries regarding business.

Not translating the names and logos according to the registered country. They should meet the logical and emotional requirements for the correct translation. However, this is only possible when they consult their international partners.

How does The Trademark Watch Company serve you?

The Trademark Watch Company, with the help of their experienced staff, provides you a package of World-class Global Trademark search Service. Our main focus lies on understanding the requirements and then providing the most satisfactory results. We own a global database as the search engine that shows every possible outcome. You obtain the final results within the deadline and at a budget-friendly price. Do give a Visit to us know more about our Trademark watch services.

1. **Why should you hire a good patent illustrator?**

Patent illustrations are the graphical representations which ease the task of describing the invention in the patent application. Patent illustrator helps the patent applicant to create an effective and stunning drawing for their invention. A first-time inventor always asks if he really needs a patent illustrator for his patent application. It is because he may not be familiar with the patent drawings standards of the USPTO. If one does not follow patent drawing rules properly, it might lead to rejection of his application at the prosecution stage. Good drawings make better patent and to draft a better patent one needs to hire a good illustrator.

Also, read: Things To Do Before Patenting Something

Qualities of good patent illustrator:

As we know, not all inventors are good illustrators. That is why most inventors hire illustrators who have got vast years of experience in patent drawings. A good patent illustrator must have a great sense of imagination so that he can properly visualize the product to be drawn. Hence, some of the qualities of an exceptional illustrator are:

Method of implementation:

A good illustrator knows various methods to implement the patent drawings in order to explain the invention easily. He knows when to use computer-aided design and when to draw the invention manually. Moreover, he must have all the latest software to make sure he is well aware of all the tools in the software.

Confidentiality and security of the invention:

One should never overlook the value of security. Ensuring the confidentiality of the idea is essential while disclosing it to some third party. A good illustrator always maintains the secrecy of the invention while making illustrations. Keeping the confidentiality of the invention intact is a sign of a good patent illustrator.

Patent regulatory norms:

This is one of the most important steps while hiring a professional illustrator. An expert illustrator is one who understands the nuances of patent drawings and has a good hold of patent regulatory norms. The illustrator must ensure that the illustrations are as per the USPTO standards thereby minimizing the errors. Therefore, he should also be aware of the common rejections that the applicants face while submitting the application.

Timely Delivery by the Patent Illustrator:

Making the illustration look accurate and descriptive in a short span of time is an art. A patent illustrator should be able to meet the time deadlines of the clients without compromising on the quality of work. Therefore, this ensures client satisfaction and increases the market value of the illustrator which is a good sign.

Technical Understanding of Patent Illustrator:

A properly written specification of the invention is very important to avoid unnecessary troubles at the examination stage. Hence, it is important for a professional illustrator to understand the principles of the invention and portray it in a descriptive manner. A good illustrator makes it easy for the examiner to understand the technicality of the invention by a simple and precise illustration.

Also, read: Patent Prosecution Paralegal: Job Responsibilities & Importance

Other characteristics of a quality patent illustrator:

An experienced patent illustrator knows how many numbers of drawings a patent application requires.

A quality illustrator makes sure to cover all the aspects of the invention in a broad way through illustration. He also keeps in mind to display all the different ways in which his client’s invention can be of use in the future.

A skilled illustrator always has the ability to analyze even minute details of the invention. This helps to minimize the number of errors in the illustration.

He is able to provide the embodiments and technicalities of the invention along with the holistic view of the invention.

Also, read: When & How to File IDS?

Looking for Patent Illustration? – The Patent Drawings Company

Patent illustration is one of the essential parts of any patent application. If you want a descriptive view of the invention in your patent application, The Patent Drawings Company (TPDC) is the best possible solution. Our team boasts of experienced professionals offering quick services at low cost. TPDC offers accurate drawings of the invention no matter how complex the patent drawings you are looking for. We have established our name for the clients by providing our clients with the most flexible output formats. Our turnaround time is incredibly fast and we guarantee 100% satisfaction to our clients. To avail our services, Visit The Patent Drawings Company.

1. **What is The Role of an Intellectual Property Paralegal?**

Intellectual Property Paralegal works for law firms, organizations, and government agencies. They prepare trademark/patent/copyright applications; assist in litigation and conduct research related to intellectual property. They possess all the necessary knowledge related to science, technology, and mechanics which proves beneficial for patent application process and litigation.

Application in Trademark/Service mark:

You must file a Trademark/Service mark application with the USPTO (the United States Patent and Trademark Office) if you want to claim your rights on the mark or prevent third parties from misusing it.

Here, Intellectual Property paralegal may file online trademark applications for the clients. They may also assist the identification and description of the goods/services offered by the client. Moreover, they may help the client in selecting proper trademark filing basis, monitoring trademark applications and filing receptive forms.

Also Read: Patent Watch: Why Do I Need It?

Tips and Tricks for High Quality Patent Draft

Application in Patent

USPTO provides an IP right to the owner of the invention in the form of Patent. It prevents third parties from remaking, using or selling the invention. Intellectual Property paralegal may compose patent applications for the clients. They may also file reconsideration replies/requests if USPTO asks for other information or rejects an application.

Moreover, they may perform patent searches to avoid infringement from the client to an already existing patent.

Application in copyright

The author/creator of a literature/artwork may want to register the copyright of the workpiece, for creating a public record and maintaining unshared legal rights. Also, it may help to generate monetary benefits.

Here, Paralegals in IP law offices help by working on copyright applications, tracking their status and maintaining the record of copyright transfer. They also deal with the document termination on the call of the client.

 IP Litigation

In a case of infringement, the USPTO office allows the original owner to take legal actions against the infringing party. Also, it helps the owner to take revenue from the third party for the damage caused due to the infringement.

Here, Intellectual Property paralegal supports attorneys at the time of IP litigation by preparing pleadings, doing research to find proper case law, getting exhibits ready and coordinating with experts and witnesses. Sometimes IP paralegals also assist at trials, watch the jury and make notes on testimony.

Intellectual property research

An IP paralegal searches the USPTO database before finalizing a patent/trademark application. This is done to ensure that we do not conduct any sort of violation to the claims of an already existing mark or invention.

Moreover, they perform litigation research to find statutory that may support the client or oppose third party’s position.

Also Read: Patent Search Affects Your Business: Learn How?

IP paralegal: Other responsibilities:

Intellectual Property Paralegal is also responsible for maintaining the patent/trademark of the Client. They not only update the attorney calendars but also review and draft licensing agreements.

Also Read: Significance of Patent Proofreading

Why only the Patent Paralegal Force?

Our expert group of techno-legal professionals at Patent paralegal force works on a customer-centric base. We ask our clients for maximum requirements to work on at a negligible cost. Currently, we own clients from 45+ countries. Also, we have our presence in 90+ jurisdictions all over the world. Our clients include top firms, growing organizations and some of the fortune 500 companies. Moreover, our experts work on latest tools/software and provide services in multiple languages. To get a hold of more of our services, do look Patent Paralegal Force.

1. **Why should you hire a Patent Docketing Specialist ?**

A Patent docketing specialist acts as a helping hand for the lawyers in the Patent Docketing process. Lawyers who have a specialization in the patent law need some trained assistants. These assistants are Patent docketing specialist.

Patent docketing is a way to track and manage patent application. Also, there is a big amount of paperwork to do during the process. Moreover, patent docketing is either a method or a system for keeping an eye on all important dates, deadlines, timelines, drawings, and forms.

Some patent firms use customized software for maintaining these documents and other use docketing specialists, who perform the work manually.

Qualities of Patent Docketing Specialist:

A Patent Docketing specialist must contain certain qualities that allow him\her to perform productive working. A few responsibilities and key skills required are:

Good administrative working:

It is one of the most important aspects. A Patent Docketing Specialist must have the ability to read the work precisely and provide all the details. Also, he must work according to the fixed schedules. It is necessary to have a good command on common administrative tasks to maintain the patent-related tasks daily. Moreover, you must work comfortably on computers/software and accordingly manage the calendar.

Also read: 5 Major Benefits of Patent Paralegal Service

Organized Skills:

The docketing system totally works on organization. You may face a number of applications and dockets at a time, but it is necessary that the patent docketing specialist must remain organized. It is applied on both physical documentation and management of time frames of each patent that falls under your responsibility.

Patent-related Training:

It seems anyone who has an administrative framework is suitable for this job. However, it is more preferable to bring some patent training to working. You must have a proper idea of working on patents and their documentation. Moreover, you also require a college degree.

Capable of Performing Repetitive steps:

It is obvious that as a docketing expert you must follow similar steps for each patent that is handed to you. However, if you want to have a new experience every time then this is not your dream job. Patents include repetitive processes and you must perform similar steps again and again. It requires concentration and patience.

 Looking for Patent Docketing Specialist?

Our patent docketing experts at the Perfect Patent Docketing provide you a full term dynamic support. You can submit your documents online and expect the results before the target dates. Also, we provide you a budget-friendly experience with 100% satisfaction. Our highly skilled professionals not only finish the work with precision but also provide you helpful advice to make the work much better. Moreover, you can stay connected with work status every time. To look inside more of our services, do visit Perfect Patent Docketing.

1. Patent Monitoring: A Primary Guide

Patent monitoring is about tracking the upcoming inventions in your field, predicting future trends and specific IP rights of interest. With patent monitoring, one can keep them updated on the new technology in the market. Also, they can find potential licensing opportunities for their inventions.

The USPTO updates its bibliographic data weekly. The bibliographic text consists of all the non-provisional utility and plants patent applications. The data is present from March 15, 2001, till the present.

Related Article: Patent Search Types: ‘The Major Eight’

Significance of Patent Monitoring

Patent monitoring as the term reflects, it is about being vigilant of the status of your invention to ensure its enforceability. Also, it is about keeping yourself updated of the latest inventions seeking a patent grant. The major reasons include:

Prosecution Monitoring: you can determine the legal status of your patent applications. In essence, you can get updates on the level of prosecution you patent application lies.

Infringement and License Monitoring: by keeping an eye on new inventions you can protect your invention from patent infringement. By keeping a strict tab on new inventions to determine if they are not made on the same lines as your invention.

 Services for Patent Monitoring

The USPTO offers a Patent Watch service known as Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR). It offers its service in both the public and private domain. Private PAIR reflects the status of your patent application in a very confidential and secure manner. On the other hand, Public PAIR performs a search for issued patents and published patent applications of various people in different domains. While performing patent prosecution status of your application, you can also monitor the latest patent applications.

Related Article: Importance of Patent Proofreading Services

Note: Public PAIR allows people to access information regarding issued patents and published application only.

The PALM (Patent Application Locating and Monitoring) System is the automated data management system used by the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) for the retrieval and/or online updating of the computer record of each patent application. The PALM System also maintains examiner time, activity, and docket records, and technical support staff backlog records.

 Patent Monitoring: Application location in PAIR

The USPTO offers a patent monitoring service known as Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) as discussed above. The Public PAIR service allows you to find patent applications of other inventors in the area of technology of your interest. Follow the steps to locate a patent application in Public PAIR.

Visit the Public Patent Information Retrieval Portal at the USPTO website. You will find a page as given below asking to decipher the recaptcha image.

Figure 1- recaptcha for security check

Figure 1- recaptcha for security check

2. The second page comes up with various options like Application number, Control Number, Patent Number, PCTNumber and so on as given in the image. You need to select one option and hit on the search button.

Figure 2- options for finding the patent application

Figure 2- options for finding the patent application

 3. As you will move further you will get on a page providing the application data with all sorts of related information. Additionally, there are 6 more tabs for retrieving related data to the application and one tab for selecting a new case.

Figure 3- information related to a patent application

Figure 3- information related to a patent application

The tabs are:

Select New Case: to move to a different issued patent or patent application.

Application data: gives the bibliographic information of the application.

Transaction history: showing all the transactions that took place in the process of prosecution.

Image file wrapper: extracts PDF copies of documents.

Continuity data: a patent application which is in continuation with a prior application and claims a priority date for it.

Foreign policy: applicant claims a priority right wherein he/she gets the benefit of filing a subsequent application for the same invention. It is a time-limited right and belongs to the inventor or his successor in the title of the invention.

Published documents: it provides the publication number, date with PDF of full text and image of the invention related documents. It comprises an abstract, inventor’s description, related US patent documents, claims and description.

Contact information and address of Patent Agent/ Attorney

Assignments: It is an agreement wherein the inventor gives his rights to an assignee and gives him/her the right of enforceability of patents.

Display References: it comprises the list of references cited by the examiner.

Our approach:

Carrying out patent monitoring through PAIR is quite a tedious task. It requires detailed and vigilant inspection of competitor’s applications. Let experts perform this meticulous task for you. Our exclusive team perform 100+ monitoring task every week and always keep you ahead of your competitors. We retrieve data from areas and perform patent watch using state-of-the-art tools. Our approach is to cover all the patent and non-patent literature in every possible domain of technology and generate monitoring reports.

We are out delivering patent watch and monitoring services in 100+countries for more than 10 years at cost-effective rates. To know more about our services, please visit The Patent Watch Company.

1. Patent Proofreading Service: An Overview

Patent Proofreading means analyzing and reading the content of the patent application after drafting the application. Patent proofreading service plays an important role in making the patent application error free. The chance of having errors in the patent that USPTO issues is usually significant. So, it is important to find out the errors left during the creation of the application and then possibly correcting it. Patent proofreading service also helps in removing any possible harm that could generate infringement risk.

Patent Proofreading Service: Essential factors:

It is very important for one to reduce the technical risk that associates with the functionality of a product. Patent proofreading service not only focuses on checking for the errors but also reviews the application from every possible angle. Some of the important factors to take these services are:

Claims:

Claims define the boundaries of the scope of the protection that the government provides to the inventor. Proofreading helps in analyzing the claims on the basis of the meaning they convey and data ambiguity. It also ensures the proper use of words in the claim and whether something is missing from the claim or not. Claims also define the documents getting legal protection and the ones that are left to research upon. So, it becomes essential for one to proofread claims accurately.

you can also learn How to Draft Patent Claims?

Invention Statement:

It is one of the most important factors where proofreading is a must. The invention statement should be written in a proper, precise and descriptive manner. One has to make sure that the invention statement is crisp and easy to understand. It is important that even a person who does not hold any previous knowledge in context can also analyze it. In proofreading, the proofreader checks and reads all the statements once again. This makes sure that the description is easier to depict for even a wide range of audience.

Terminology:

It is important to be elaborate and at the same time to not get away from the technical aspect of the invention. Proofreading helps in checking proper terminology and technical terms when one compiles the whole description of the document at once. Since one cannot exclude specifications from the application, it is essential to write them diligently. Choices of words play an essential role while getting a patent. So, proofreading the terminology ensures you of covering all the aspects and possibilities of the invention in a very broad manner.

Also read: Why Online Patent Paralegal Services are Important?

Grammar:

Using grammar in a number of ways can make a huge difference in sentence formation. The use of grammar laws must be in such a way that the sentence depicts precise and unambiguous meaning. Patent proofreading service helps in reviewing grammatical errors and removing them to make sentences accurate with a specific meaning. It makes sentences more clear and convenient for the audience to understand.

Drawings:

Technical drawing is the core element while filing the patent application. Drawings are important as it is a shortcut to learn about the specifications of the invention. Sometimes, patent illustration become too complex while making which increases its chance of rejection. Proofreading helps in reviewing the specifications and technical details of the drawing. It also ensures the clarity of drawings and the use of good quality ink on which one makes the drawing.

References:

If you want to improvise any product then it is essential to give reference to that product to the examiner. It is important to cross verify the references and check for the already defined patent content at the end of drafting. Proofreading service helps in identifying the missing references and the references that are of no use in the application.

Also read: Patent Paralegal: Duties to Perform

Standards:

Proofreading is important to check whether the application follows patent standards according to the territorial area or not. It also helps in checking all the standards according to legal laws. One must ensure that the use of language grammar and certain qualities of the page is in accordance with the standards. Proofreading also checks standards which relate to the page margin and writing that one follows constantly across the whole application.

Also read: How Patent Docketing Works?

 Looking for Patent Proofreading Service – The Patent Proofreading Company

Patent proofreading service is a very important process while getting a patent grant. It reduces the number of errors in the patent application which in turn helps you to secure patent quickly. If you are looking for a world-class patent proofreading service, you should definitely go with The Patent Proofreading Company (TPPC). TPPC provides you with the proofreading services of high quality in minimal time. Our professional proofreaders identify errors and omissions before they become an issue. We constantly follow our multi-step quality check and quality assurance process. Our deep industry experience provides the most cost-effective patent proofreading solutions with a comprehensive report. We ensure 100% data security and confidentiality while maintaining high-quality standards throughout the process. For more information, Visit The Patent Proofreading Company.

1. **Tips & Tricks for High-Quality Patent Draft**

A patent draft is at the very core of getting a patent grant. It is about taking the very first step of your journey towards a patent grant. It comprises the specifications and the claims of the invention in detail. Furthermore, prepare a patent draft as per the format of the jurisdiction in which you want to get the patent grant. For instance, for getting a grant in the U.S., prepare the draft as per the USPTO guidelines. The composition of the Patent draft as per the USPTO must include claims, abstract, specifications, drawings, and an oath/declaration. A provisional application (incomplete application) draft is devoid of claims.

Also read: Patent Proofreading Benefits: The Best Five

12 Major Contents of a Perfect Patent Draft must include:

The contents of a patent draft are more or less the same, but the format differs from one jurisdiction to another. Also, preparing a patent draft at first place is all about writing a crisp and clear content in a legally accepted format. Parts of Patent Draft for a Non-Provisional Application (complete application) as per USPTO include:

Invention Title (10-15 words): A title should reflect the objective of the invention. Hence, keep the title precise as it provides a subtle idea about the invention.

Cross-reference patent applications list: a cross-reference works as a reference link for the current patent application. For instance, a provisional application works as a cross-reference for a non-provisional one. It is the parent application from which we get the benefit of claiming a priority date.

Statement regarding federally sponsored research or development (if any): some inventors take government support to come up with an invention. In this case, the government too has certain rights under the invention. Moreover, the Government License Rights statement follows immediately as the second paragraph.

Reference to a Sequence Listing (if any): when we file a biological patent application in reference to a previously filed application which contains sequence listings on its date of filing. Those sequence listings form part of the application as originally filed.

Invention Background: it talks about the related inventions or the prior art of the claimed invention. Break the background in two parts – the field of the invention and the background of the prior art. Section 37 CFR 1.77(b) (7) suggests that a patent application should include a background of the invention.

Invention Summary: summary represents the crux of the invention. A properly written summary depicts the exact nature, operation, and purpose of the invention. This, in turn, works as a reference for future prior-art searches. Be mindful of keeping the summary before the description of the claimed invention.

Drawings Views and Description (if any): this includes a brief overview of the drawings. Justify them in separate single sentences for each figure within 1-3 lines. Consider covering all the views i.e. top view, side, horizontal and the cross-sectional view. Be mindful of following USPTO drawing rules while drafting the same.

Invention Description: describe each and every aspect of the invention in detail. Moreover, write the description in such a way that a person skilled in the art can make use of the invention.

Patent Claims: Patent claims clearly define the invention for what we seeking patent protection. The drafting of the patent claim(s) decides whether your invention is novel or if it is infringing upon someone else’s invention. You can also add omnibus and Jepson claims as per your requirements.

Disclosure Abstract: it is a concise statement regarding the technical disclosure discussing the newness or novelty of the claimed invention. You can follow 37 C.F.R. 1.77(b) which states that every patent application must include an abstract of disclosure.

Sequence Listing: mention a list of amino acids/nucleotide sequences if you are seeking patent grant for a biological invention. Filing a sequence listing via EFS-Web in PDF format is not recommended. A sequence listing in PDF format is equivalent to a paper copy required by 37 CFR 1.821(c). This would require filing both a separate CRF and a statement that the written copy and the CRF are identical as required by 37 CFR 1.821(f).

An oath or declaration: any person who files a patent application under USPTO has to take oath or declaration. This is in accordance with sections 37 CFR 1.66 and 37 CFR 1.68 respectively. A statement under oath or declaration asks that the declarant should give his/her authority for preparing the patent application. Here, the declarant is essentially the original inventor or the joint inventor of the claimed invention. For detailed knowledge, you may refer to MPEP 602.01(a) USPTO.

Also read: Patent Proofreading Benefits: The Best Five

Tricks of delivering a Precise Patent Draft/ How to deliver a Precise Patent Draft:

Developing a patent draft is the very first milestone for getting a patent grant. The idea is to provide an elaborative idea of your invention that too in an easy language. Therefore, one can’t go wrong in any part of preparing a patent draft.

Knowing the importance of a patent draft, let’s learn the tricks that help prepare a patent draft that fetches a patent grant for your invention.

Detailed yet Specific Draft: write information in detail and at the same time keep it to the point or specific. Save yourself from beating around the bush while delivering a draft. Portray the background, technical details, and drawings in such a way that it doesn’t raise ambiguity at the time of prosecution.

Clarity of Claims: claim(s) is the building foundation of a patent draft. The award of the patent grant is largely dependent on the claim(s) since it describes the scope and novelty of the invention. Be mindful of always drafting the claims first. This helps refine the idea of the invention in the minds of both the inventor and the agent. While doing so, always remember to file claims with broader scope first. Gradually move towards writing claims that are specific and are dependent on the independent claims.

The Narration of Specifications: portray the specifications in such a way that a person with some basic of the knowledge in the domain can understand it easily. While writing the specifications, never deviate from the main objective of the invention.

Always Follow the Guidelines: of the respective patent offices of your jurisdiction from the very first stage of patent drafting. Always maintain an order as per the patent office guidelines. According to the USPTO, the sequence is- invention title, background information, invention summary, explanation, description, claims, abstract and a sequence list.

Never Hesitate to Ask for Help: patent agents and experts are there to help out. They hold technical and legal expertise and prowess in different domains. They are well-versed with the guidelines of patent offices of different jurisdictions. With the best of their expertise, one gets a patent draft that sails through the storm of prosecution.

Why trust our services?

Our team, at Patent Drafting Catalyst, of 100+ expert patent drafters ensures that your patent draft passes through every toll gate of prosecution. The quality of a good patent draft outshines when it stands tall against the technological advancements and infringers. Moreover, we make sure that our clients do not spend a fortune getting a patent grant. We serve our clients in many countries providing our services at budget-friendly rates. We cover the domain of patent services which includes patent drafting, filing, patent drawings, paralegal services and many more.

1. **Back Translation and Reconciliation- What, How and Why**

The primary motto of back translation and reconciliation is to check the correctness of an article. Here, we will discuss in detail what they are and how they affect an article. Also, we will find out why are they necessary. Moreover, these services provide you additional quality and surety of accuracy for most sensitive translations. They become more important if you deal with valuable content and want to translate it in multiple languages while conveying the actual message.

What is Back Translation?

It is the translation of a target document to its original or source language. This will help you determine the quality and accuracy of the translated text with respect to the original text. Thus, it helps to establish the same meaning between the original and translated text.

How to do a quality Back Translation?

Let us take an example (Refer, Figure 1.). So, you have a set of documents to translate from French to Swedish. A Skilled translator has completed this translation. Now another translator will translate the translated version (Swedish) to the original French version. There is one important point to note. The translator must remain unaware of the original French document while executing the translation (Swedish to French). Only then you will be able to establish the fidelity of the translated document.

Figure 1. Example

Figure 1. Example

Do not hope that you will get an exact word to word translation of the original document. What we need to keep here is the coherent meaning of the original document. You can detect confusions, ambiguity if any, in the translation itself.

The final document is compared to the original document after translation to omit any inconsistencies and translation errors. However, it is not necessary that the final document must be 100% similar to the original one.

The main motto behind the translation is to form a document that is as close as possible to the original one. Also, it serves as a proofreading tool that helps to pick out the following errors:

Inaccurate Terminology

Grammatical discrepancies

Cultural Opacity

In the case of a medical document, Back Translation is an invaluable tool to spot any improper use of terminology that may cause serious problems. Similarly, a small grammatical error or cultural ambiguity may affect customer understanding and lead to the failure of communication with people.

To prepare a Reconciliation Report, you must trace and highlight the differences after comparing the two translations. However, you must consult an original translator and a project manager to ensure the optimization of the final translation report before sending it to the client.

Why is Back Translation important?

They are extremely important when you are working on sensitive content. It can also be a content that has risky information. The translated document must have a similar meaning as that of the original one. This is because in many cases the translator misunderstands or misinterprets the meaning. Also, the translator can miss or overlook a complexity. As a result, the final translation might contain some meaning different from that of the original text. Keeping all these issues in mind back translation is necessary to keep the concept accurate. Hence, the translation must be culturally suitable for the target audience.

What is Translation Reconciliation?

What is the meaning of reconciliation? It means bringing back friendly relations. It also means to make someone or something compatible with others. So what is translation reconciliation? It is the minor changes or amendments on the translated document to make it conceptually similar to the original document.

How to do reconciliation?

A subject matter expert team will conduct the job. They will find out the equivalence of meaning between the translated and the back-translated original document. At this point in time, changes are already made to the translated document.

What are the results of back translation and reconciliation?

Both the above-discussed processes yield assured quality results. It should be true for documents carrying a significant message. The meaning delivered in a language should be similar to the original document. There can be instances where a translator misinterprets or overlooks a particular term. Therefore, even a minor mistake may totally change the meaning of a document.

The Patent Translation Express Assistance

Our dedicated and skilled team at the Patent Translations Express work diligently to give you the best results. We own a team of native experts of the languages and provide you the most accurate translations. You just need to provide the input data in the form of txt, pdf, jpg, gif or any other format. We will update you with received confirmation and you can check the work progress any time. Moreover, we provide you the translated document within 1-4 working days and you can download the result online. To get to know more about our services, do visit Patent Translation Express.

1. **How to create a quality patent illustration?**

Patent Illustration is a set of representation showing the details and specifications of the invention in the form of patent drawings. They are the visual form of patent description which provides a way to understand the invention details. One needs to make sure that the patent illustrations are in compliance with the USPTO rules. The patent illustration must include embodiments, stages, and flowchart for good visual representation. Simple, clear and precise images also help judges to interpret the description quickly in case of patent infringement. Quality patent illustration explains the invention more easily than the reams of description. Accurate and clear drawings strengthen the patent application which helps the overloaded patent examiner understand the invention quickly. Moreover, quality drawings that make the patent understandable reduce the chance of patent infringement in the future. This is because it acts as an educator between the patent applicant and the examiner.

Tips and Tricks to Create Quality Patent Illustration:

One should not underestimate the inclusion of the quality patent illustration in their patent application. The quality illustration can also work to the advantage of the patent holder for settling damages in his application. This is because one can settle the infringement case within one year by showing the invention details in the illustrations. Some of the ways to create quality illustrations are:

1. Multiple Illustrations:

To properly accomplish the goal of having the best disclosure possible, one should not think in terms of single illustration in the patent. The patent application should have at least several sheets of drawings with each sheet having multiple views of the invention. The benefit of multiple illustrations is that it completely covers all the permutation of the invention.

Related article: Patent Illustration Importance From Multiple Perspectives

2. USPTO Guidelines:

Enforcing USPTO’s comprehensive rules regarding patent illustration will remove many errors before applying. The USPTO instructs the users to use a certain form of papers and ink in the patent application. It also specifies the margins of specific lengths in the sheet of illustration. There are certain guidelines that you need to follow:

One should use black ink on white paper.

The USPTO only allows color when necessary in the illustration. One needs to submit a separate petition to the USPTO for the use of color in the illustration.

The paper must be white, flexible and strong. The USPTO allows only one-sided writing on the paper.

The paper size must be either 21 cm by 29.7 cm or 21.6 cm by 27.9 cm.

A top margin of 2.5 cm, left a margin of 2.5 cm and the right side margin of 1.5 cm is mandatory. The bottom side margin must be of 1.0 cm.

The illustration should be drawn on a non-crowded scale at 2/3 size. Indications like full scale or “1/2 scale” are not acceptable.

Numbers are preferable to letters as reference characters in a drawing. If one follows these rules properly it becomes easy for the applicant to pass his patent application.

Related article: Why you should not avoid accurate patent illustrations?

Click Here to Download (Free Samples)

3. Parts of Patent illustration:

There are certain parts that you can insert in your patent illustration. These parts of the illustration increase the quality of the overall patent application. They are as follows:

Black and White drawings:

This is the traditional way of making patent drawings with pen and ruler. It requires knowledge of basic drawing techniques. Here, the perspective is necessary to show all the features of the invention.

Colored drawings:

For this part, you need to demonstrate the importance of colored drawing in your application. You need to submit a request to the USPTO to allow for using it.

Photographs:

Photographs show the invention more clearly. The acceptance of a photograph only takes place when it helps to show the invention in a more descriptive manner. It is rare to use black and white photos.

CAD Software:

It is computer software which is great for the production of modern computer drawings and it is easy to use. In short, it creates sharp 3D drawings that help to describe and break down the physical characteristics of the invention

4. Clear and accurate illustrations:

It is important for one to include clear and accurate illustrations in a patent application. Simply, a clear and precise image gives you priority in cases of IP litigation. In chances of negotiation and settlement, a well-defined patent application always favors you for the best talk. Even any third party will think twice while copying an idea from an unambiguous and well-defined patent application.

5.Computer vs. hand-drawn figures:

It is not the quality of the equipment but the skill of the draftsperson that is important. One of the most cost-effective processes is to make drawings from CAD files. Furthermore, creating drawings in CAD has its own advantages as archiving electronic data helps to simplify the subsequent amendments of drawings. On the other hand, manual illustrations are also of equal importance as the illustrations made by the software. One can easily see all the shapes, sizes and angles on one sheet with a clear vision in manual illustrations. Also, it is easier to bring the creative style and expression and a degree of depth to the illustration.

6. Detailed Illustration:

Detailed illustrations are indeed worth a minimum of one thousand words if not more. If you accidentally leave something out of the written disclosure, the illustration you submit may save you in the long run. This is provided if the drawing entails more details and you want to convey even the slightest of information about your invention. The detailed illustration can also cover different angles of the invention for using it in the future for a different purpose.

7. Good Illustrator:

Generating good drawings require technical skill and creativity. For this purpose, hiring a good illustrator becomes an essential step. A draftsperson’s experience, the body of work, professional references and use of technology are good indicators of his competence and skills. Also, a good draftsperson who boasts experience under the supervision of senior professionals will provide you with a broad skill set. He knows when to use black and white drawings and when to use colored ones. A good draftsperson has the ability to create quality illustrations by using his expertise in patent illustrations.

Looking for quality Patent Illustration? – Patent Illustration Express

Patent Illustrations play a vital role in a patent application for displaying of the invention. If you are looking for any assistance regarding patent illustrations, Patent Illustration Express (PIE) will guide you with the illustration process. PIE is a team of professional patent illustrators, who boast years of experience in creating illustrations. We provide our clients with super-fast delivery of the illustration services. Our team creates illustrations that have 100% compliance with the USPTO regulations. PIE provides flexible output formats for our clients with a full satisfaction guarantee. Also, we make sure to cover a descriptive invention of our clients through illustrations. For more information, Visit Patent Illustration Express.

1. **What is the Article 19 Amendment under PCT? (And Bonus Information)**

If you’re filing an international patent application, then there is a chance that you have come across the Article 19 Amendment. But what exactly does it entail? There are situations where you might want to make changes to your claims after receiving your International Search Report (ISR). The way of going about it is in Article 19 Amendment. However, you must be clear about the boundaries and the timeline within which you can make changes.

This article sheds light on what exactly does the Article 19 Amendment stipulate, how and when you can invoke it.

Article 19 Amendment: The Conditions

Upon receiving your ISR, the PCT entitles you to one opportunity to amend the claims of your international application. You can do this by filing amendments with the International Bureau. You must do this within 2 months from the date of receiving the ISR. You may also file a brief statement explaining the amendments and their impact on the description and the drawings.

Remember that you can make changes to the claims only and NOT the description or the drawings. Also, keep in mind that the changes must not go beyond the disclosure in the application. Basically, it means that you cannot to add any new matter to your application.

You can make changes beyond the disclosure if the national law of one of the contract states allows it. However, these changes will only be valid in those states which allow you to make amendments beyond disclosure.

You don’t have to pay any extra fees while filing under this Article.

When should you opt for the Article 19 Amendment?

Consider a situation where the ISR or the WOSA refers to any prior art that overlaps with your invention. You might not have a strong argument against it and it might hamper your chances of getting a patent. To ensure that this doesn’t impede your patent application, invoke the Article 19 Amendment.

As we have just told you, with this amendment, you can make changes to your claims. This will allow you to be in a stronger position to get the grant of your patent in such situations.

Article 34 – Bonus Information

If making changes to the claims is not enough, then you have the boon of article 34. This allows you to make amendments in the description, drawings, and the claims. You can move information from one part of the specification to another part of the specification. This basically means that you can use the description as claims or you may redefine the text in the specification.

For filing an amendment under Article 34, you need to file a PCT Chapter II Demand. You have a time limit for filing this demand. You must file within

3 months from the issuance of ISR or

22 months from the priority date, whichever is later.

You must pay an extra fee for this. With this, you get an opportunity to partake in a formal discussion with the International Examination Authority (IEA). You will get a chance to satisfy the IEA about meeting the criteria of the novelty, utility, and inventive steps. You must notify the national offices about the amendments done under Article 34. This happens upon national phase entry of your application. Remember that under this article, the International Bureau will not republish your application as an “amended application”. However, it will be available on Patentscope after 30 months.

Need assistance with PCT Procedures? – Your Patent Team (YPT)

You know that an international filing faces a lot of stumbling blocks. You have the Article 19 Amendment and Article 34 Amendment to help you overcome such problems. However, you might need help to be absolutely certain about your plan of action while filing a PCT application.

YPT is a team of 225+ technology/industry experts who speak the inventor’s language and have a deep understanding of Indian & Global Patent Laws. We can assist you with the entire PCT procedure, from filing and making amendments to your application, to the national phase.

1. **Trademark Filing Timeline**

When you’re seeking trademark protection, it’s a good measure to clearly know everything about the trademark filing timeline. It generally takes somewhere between 12 to 18 months for registering a trademark with the USPTO. The whole trademark registration process involves different stages of the trademark application process which make up the trademark filing timeline. The timeline depends not only on different stages but also on the filing basis you select in your application. You should be aware of all the deadlines and response times so that the entire procedure goes smoothly.

This article explains the entire trademark filing timeline in great detail.

Trademark Filing Timeline- The Filing Basis

The timeline of your trademark application will differ according to the filing basis, i.e. the article under which you file. Each article has its own set of criterion that needs to be met in order to file under that particular article. We shall explain each one below.

Section 1(a)

This comes into play when you are currently using your trademark in commerce with your goods and/or services. The timeline varies from about 7 months to as long as nearly 2 years. Let’s take a look at each step through this flowchart.

Trademark Filing Flowchart

Application Filing: The very first step is to file your application. Over a period of 3 months, the USPTO reviews it and takes action accordingly.

USPTO Review: The USPTO either approves and publishes your trademark or issues an Office Action within 1 month.

Publication of Trademark: If the USPTO approves your trademark, it will publish it in the Trademark Official Gazette (TMOG).

NOTE: Publication is not registration.

Office Action: If the USPTO has any objections against your application, then it will issue an office action in the form of a letter. You will have a time period of 6 months to respond to it in the form of First Office Action Response. The USPTO reviews it over a period of 1-2 months. If you clear the objections, then the USPTO publishes the application. Otherwise, the USPTO issues a Final Office Action. The time limit to respond to it is the same as the First Office Action.

Trademark Registration: After the USPTO publishes your trademark, it waits for 30 days for anybody to raise objections against it. If the application doesn’t face any opposition, then the USPTO officially registers the trademark after 3 months. It will be valid for 10 years.

Declaration under Section 8: Before the end of the first 6 years of the registration, you must file a declaration under Section 8. This states that your trademark is still in commercial use along with evidence.

Renewal under Section 9: Before the end of the 10 years of your trademark’s validity, you must file for renewal under Section 9. This is done along with another declaration under Section 8, with the same requirements to get the trademark renewal.

Section 1(b)

Applicable when you have a genuine intention to use your trademark in commerce with your goods/services in the near future. The trademark filing timeline remains largely the same as the one in Section 1(a). The difference comes after the USPTO publishes your application in the TMOG. Instead of registering the trademark after 3 months, it issues a Notice of Allowance. The timeline from that point is given below:

Notice of Allowance (NOA): The USPTO issues an NOA within 2 months of publication in the TMOG. This notice is not the registration in itself, but it means that your application didn’t face any opposition. You can get the registration after filing a Statement of Use on time.

Statement of Use (SOU): Once you start using the trademark for your products/services, you must file an SOU with the USPTO. This is to be done within 6 months of issuance of NOA.

Extension Request: There can be a situation where you are still not using the trademark after 6 months of issuance of the NOA. Then, you have to file for an extension request. This way, you can prevent your application from being labeled as “abandoned”. You can file a maximum of 5 extension request for a trademark application and each extension lasts 6 months.

Review of SOU: After you file the SOU, the USPTO reviews it and takes action accordingly. It takes about 1 month to review it. If it approves the SOU then the USPTO registers the trademark, otherwise, it issues an Office Action. The time period for responding to it is the same as any Office Action. The renewal and declaration remain the same as well.

Foreign Applications

You may want to register a trademark in the US on the basis of a foreign application/trademark. You can read up about their trademark filing timeline here and follow the hyperlinks for more information on the same.

Section 44(d): You use this when you own a foreign application. You must file that within six months of your U.S. application for the same trademark and the same goods/services.

Section 44(e): You own a foreign registration of the same trademark for the same goods and/or services from your country of origin.

Section 66(a): Your application basis is filing under the Madrid Protocol. It is a filing treaty that ensures the protection of trademarks in multiple countries.

Need assistance with your Trademark Filing? – The Trademark Filing Company

It is absolutely crucial to secure the necessary protection for your brand by registering a trademark. The trademark filing timeline is full of delicate deadlines and each step requires clear and concise delivery of the requirements. Therefore, if you wish to take professional aid, The Trademark Filing Company can help you. We focus on protecting your business identity from copycats. Our expertise lies in providing gold-standard trademark data and our team boasts years of experience in trademark filing. We are aware of the latest rules and guidelines that exist in the trademark laws. We’ll ensure that your trademark application adheres to them. However, we don’t stop there. You cannot worry about your trademark 24/7, so you can also use our trademark monitoring services.

1. **Patent Filing Cost**

Patent filing cost is the cost which the patent applicant incurs for filing and obtaining the patent. The cost of a patent filing basically depends on the type of patent application while filing the patent. The type of invention and the market opportunities related to the product also decide the patent filing cost. If the invention constitutes more claims and illustration, then the patent filing cost would be higher. The overall cost of obtaining a patent also includes the pay for the patent office and the patent service provider such as The Patent Filing Company.

The factors determining the Patent Filing Cost are:

There is a certain procedure to get a patent grant. While following the procedure, the patent applicant has to incur a certain amount of charge for getting a grant of patent. The steps present in the patent filing cost are as follows:

Patentability Search of the invention:

The first process in the patent grant is getting a patentability search of the invention. It is always preferable to hire a professional searcher as he will find all the information related to the prior art. The cost for patentability search depends on several factors such as:

The amount of written analysis you want to receive.

The complexity of the invention.

The amount of consideration of the prior art discovered.

The type of patent file.

The fees for a patent search for different types of the patent are:

Description Fee Small entity fee Micro entity fee

Utility search fee $660 $330 $165

Design search fee $160 $80 $40

Plant search fee $420 $210 $105

Reissue search fee $660 $330 $165

Although, paying for the best patentability search with a written analysis directs the entirety of the remainder of the patent project.

 1. Patent drafting cost:

Patent drafting is the process of writing description and claims. Although, an inventor can himself write all the specification of his invention, but it is always safe to consider a patent consultant. The cost of filing the patent is quite steep and there is always a chance of a loss while doing it yourself. The cost of patent drafting varies from $200-$500.

2. Patent application filing cost:

The patent filing cost of a patent application depends on whether the application is provisional or a non-provisional one. A provisional application needs to disclose the invention completely as a non-provisional one, there are a reduction informalities. This reduces the overall cost of filing the provisional application. Although a provisional patent application is not a true patent, it protects your invention for 12 months.

The application filing fees for different patents are:

Description Fee Small entity fee Micro entity fee

Utility application fee $300 $150 $75

Design application fee $200 $100 $50

Plant application fee $200 $100 $50

Reissue application fee $300 $150 $75

Provisional application fee $280 $140 $70

 In the case of a non-provisional application the cost of filing slightly increase due to the increase of some formalities. A non-provisional application charges an extra $400 along with all the charges in the above table.

3. Examination Cost of the application:

After filing the patent application, it goes for publication which discloses the invention. After publication, the examination of the application takes place. The examination cost depends on the different types of patents. It also depends whether the patent is utility patent, design patent or any other type of patent. The fee also depends on the entity of the patent.

The fees for different types of patents are given below:

Description Fee Small entity fee Micro entity fee

Utility examination fee $760 $380 $190

Design examination fee $600 $300 $150

Plant examination fee $620 $310 $155

Reissue examination fee $2200 $1100 $550

4. Patent post allowance cost:

Patent post allowance fee is also a part of this process. The patent applicant gets a notice of allowance after the patent examiner decides to grant patent. The notice of allowance shows that the application is complete and meets all the requirements.

The fee for the patent post allowance is :

Description Fee Small entity fee Micro entity fee

Utility issue fee $1000 $500 $250

Design issue fee $700 $350 $175

Plant issue fee $800 $400 $200

Reissue issue fee $1000 $500 $250

5. Renewal of patent cost:

Renewal of the patent is an essential process, if you want to protect your invention from coming into the public domain. One has to renew his patent within a certain time period to protect it. Renewal of patent also includes some pat of the patent filing cost.

The fee for renewal of the patent is:

Description Fee Small entity fee Micro entity fee

Renewal fee due at 3.5 years $1600 $800 $400

Renewal fee due at 7.5 years $3600 $1800 $900

Renewal fee due at 11.5 years $7400 $3700 $1850

Looking to file Patent? – The Patent Filing Company

If you want to file a patent, The Patent Filing Company (TPFC) is the best option for the same. TPFC helps their clients file the patents with maximum efficiency and minimum time and patent filing cost. TPFC covers 300+ techno legal experts who come from different backgrounds to cover different types of inventions. Our professionals utilize their expertise to advise our clients to help them get world-class advice and IP Protection. TPFC not only ensures that you get the strongest and broadest services but makes sure that you get the optimum cost. Our team will assist you in filing a patent application. For more information, visit The Patent Filing Company.

1. **Design Patent Illustrator: A Smart Consideration for Your Patent**

A design patent illustrator is a professional producing detailed design patent drawing as per the patent office guidelines. Occasionally, creating a professional patent illustration proves a cumbersome task. And why not, there are so many guidelines put forth by the patent office (here USPTO) to meet. Be it in the selection of the color of ink to the dimensions and views of diagrams. Consequently, you need to take every minute detail into consideration to come up with a professional design illustration.

Thus, in such a scenario it is always preferable to seek the help of design patent illustrators. A professional design patent illustrator is the Picasso of this art. They bring the best and correct design illustrations for your intellectual property. Certainly, let’s look at the benefits of hiring them.

Related Article: Design Patents 101 – Introduction

Professional Design Patent Illustrator – Service Benefits

There are obvious advantages of hiring a patent illustrator for remarkably unique professional design patent illustrations. Here is why you should go for a professional design patent illustrator for producing incredible patent illustrations:

Imaginative Minds: these professionals have an inherent inclination toward art. They have an imaginative mind and come up with creations that are unique and appealing. So, if you are not that imaginative sort of a person, do consider hiring a design patent illustrator.

Up with Latest Guidelines: you as an inventor can read the guidelines and can come up with a design illustration. But, a design patent illustrator knows exactly what and what NOT to include in an illustration.

Fast turn-around-time: indeed yes! Professional design illustrators are well-versed with their work and come up with the best of the results in a lesser amount of time.

Technical Accuracy: computer-aided technical drawings with up-to-date software aid in delivering a complex of complex illustrations with much ease and accuracy. Thus, design patent illustrators are expert at handlings this software.

An eye for Detail: the ornamental details of a design illustration are what help in fetching patent. A design patent illustrator sees the bigger picture but along with that works on the minute details with great precision.

Service Feasibility: the services of design patent illustrators are viable. You can easily reach out to them through call or through the internet. Also, the services available are quick and are at domestic rates.

Related Article: Why Should You Hire Good Patent Illustrators?

Patent Illustrators and their area of Expertise:

Patent Illustrators broadly work on Utility patent illustrations and Design patent Illustrations. The major difference between the both is that Utility patent gets protection for the function of the invention. On the other hand, a design patent protects the new and non-obvious ornamental design of an article.

Utility Patent Illustrators: They aid by providing a vision to the public as well as to the examiner at the time of publication and prosecution respectively. They work as a support for a faster prosecution and a steadier patent grant.

Design Patent Illustrators: As a design, the patent gets protection for its unique ornamental design. Therefore, a design patent illustrator produces replicas of the original design in the form of illustrations.

Both of the Patent Illustrators have an imaginative skill set and an eye for precision. Moreover, a professional patent illustrator these days work on state-of-the-art tools and remain updated with the guidelines of patent offices.

What do we bring?

Producing a detailed patent illustration is a matter of concern and requires great precision. Your search for a professional patent illustrator ends here. Let the best among the rest to come to your service. In other words, we, at Professional Patent Illustrators, are a team of patent illustrators with specialization in utility and design patent illustrations. We take pride in producing detail-oriented illustrations with precision using state-of-the-art tools. In short, customer satisfaction is of the highest priority with a quick turn-around-time.

1. **Trademark Registration in India: An 8 Step Guide**

When it comes to protecting your brand name, the idea of trademark registration comes to mind. Be it for starting a business or for an existing business, you must ensure that the brand identity is safe. A trademark does the job of securing that identity. This ensures that you can freely do business under the umbrella of your brand.

But the process of trademark registration can be slightly daunting. There are resources in the form of time and money that you need to consider. You need to be clear about the guidelines, the deadlines, the forms, fees, etc.

Let’s understand everything there is to know about trademark registration.

What is a Trademark?

A trademark is a distinguishing visual symbol in the form of a logo or text (words, phrase, or sentence). It should be something that resonates with your business/product. The purpose is to distinguish your brand such that the target audience can easily recognize your business through the trademark.

If you have a federal trademark for your business, then nobody can use that mark or even a mark resembling yours. The idea is to ensure that no other business misleads your target audience.

For example, Amul is one of the biggest brand names in India. It markets its products under this name and no other business can use the name for their product/services.

Fig: Amul’s logo is a registered trademark

Another example is that of Coca-Cola, the world-famous beverage brand. It has a distinctive mark, with a rich, illustrious history. When it comes to a cold beverage, coca-cola is generally what comes to people’s minds.

Fig: The Coca-Cola Trademarked Logo

Colgate is yet another brand that has a nationwide presence. When it comes to oral healthcare, Colgate is often the go-to product. You can see the ® symbol on the logo, letting the world know that it is a registered trademark.

Fig. The Colgate logo

The bottom line is that these companies have become the face of their product’s field. That’s where their trademark has come in handy for marketing purposes. Essentially, a trademark acts as the face of your brand.

Trademark Registration Process

Let’s talk about the actual process now. It involves a series of steps that one needs to follow to ensure a smooth sailing trademark registration.

1. Pick your Class

First, you need to pick a Class under which your company belongs to. A class lists together a similar range of products to ensure more clarity about products/services.

The Indian Trademark law enlists 45 classes of goods and services. For example, if your company is into clothing, footwear or headgear, then you need to pick Class 25.

2. Create a Unique mark

This part requires you to be creative and novel. This is the most delicate part of the trademark registration process. You need to think of a unique symbol that makes your product/service stand out in the crowd. Your brand will be dependent on this mark because your audience is going to recognize you through this mark.

You can either come up with an abstract word or use an existing word. It doesn’t need to be a word that directly relates to the field of the product. Consider the example of Amul. The Indian titan in the dairy industry is a household name in our daily lives. The word “Amul” itself doesn’t mean anything in relation to dairy. But, the brand’s popularity and usage have successfully planted an image of dairy products when you see the word.

That is exactly why you must pick something unique. Hopefully, it can prove to make your business the symbol of a particular product/service in the public eye.

3.Conduct a Trademark Search

After creating a unique mark, the next step in trademark registration is to conduct a trademark search. The purpose is to determine if your mark is, in fact, unique and it is not infringing on an existing trademark. This step is vital because it can decide whether or not you should file a trademark or not.

Since there is always the possibility that your mark might already be in use, you should create 2-3 backups. This will help you to still register a trademark in case you have issues with your first choice of the mark.

4.Draft the Application

Now is the time of drafting your trademark application. If creating the mark is the most creative part of the trademark registration, this is the most technical one. This involves using different forms which are available on the IP India website. It also enlists the fees for each type of form.

The primary requirement is form TM-A. Fill out the form very carefully and spend time in deliberating what you should write. Also, attach the necessary supporting information. You must also attach a sheet of the description of the goods and services you wish to trademark. This description should not exceed 500 words.

Last but certainly not least you must attach a 9x5cm image of the trademark for your application. Along with it, you must submit 5 duplicate images as well. Make sure to proofread your application before moving on to the next step.

5.Filing the Application

Now that your draft is ready, you can file it with the Trademark Registry Office. You have an option to file it online or offline. Though, the offline option is more expensive. Check out the First Schedule Fees.

There are 5 Trademark Registry offices that accept trademark applications. These are Delhi, Mumbai, Kolkata, Chennai, and Ahmedabad. Otherwise, you can file your application online. The office receives E-filings immediately but manual filings take 15-20 days.

You can use different payment methods for the payment of the fees. For manual filing, you can use cash, money order, or bank draft. For E-filing, you can do an electronic funds transfer (EFT).

6.Overcome Objections during the Examination

After filing the application, you must wait. An examiner needs to assess your application to see if you should get the trademark. He/she might raise certain objections that you need to overcome. The objections may include technical errors in the form. Other deeper issues can impede your trademark registration.

You need to justify how your mark is unique and distinct while overcoming the objections. The method of communication is in writing. The judgment depends on the trademark officer. He/she can either reject your appeal to the objections or pass them and move your application to the next step.

7. Publication of Trademark and Opposition

Once you overcome the examination, the Trademark Registry office publishes your trademark. This is done in the weekly Trademark Journal under its respective class. The purpose is to allow any entity to the review and challenge the trademark if they wish to.

If someone opposes your trademark, then you will get a legal notice with the reasons for the third party’s opposition. You must file a counter-statement within the next 2 months. Failure to do so will lead the Trademark office to reject your application.

The legal procedure for this can be time-consuming and may even take years. But, it depends on the merits of the case.

8. Proof of Your Registration

The Trademark Registry office issues a trademark registration certificate upon successful registration of the trademark. Once you get this, you can use the trademark symbol ® next to your logo.

The trademark is valid for 10 years from the date of the application. You can renew it after paying a renewal fee.

Your trademark will only be applicable in India. In order to secure protection across countries then you should consider other options such as the Madrid Protocol.

Need a Professional’s help? – Your Trademark Team

You can go through the trademark registration on your own or you can hire legal services, which is advisable. That is because you lack the experience to carry out certain steps such as the search or drafting the application. A legal service will cost you money. But, in the long run, if it means protecting your brand identity, then the investment is worth the money.

If you need help, Your Trademark Team is at your service. We’re a team of trademark agents/attorneys who boast 10+ years of experience in the field. We will ensure to help you out along every step of the way in trademark-related services. Your satisfaction is our guarantee.

1. **IDS Patent: Definition, Obligation, and Requirements in Patent Applications**

When you think of “prior art”, IDS patent surely comes to mind. The USPTO labels it as an indispensable part of your patent application. Not having IDS in your application could cause problems of varying degrees. But what is IDS? Why do you need it in a patent? We are here to explain everything there is to know about IDS patent. This will help you to draft your patent application accordingly.

Definition of IDS Patent Application

IDS stands for Information Disclosure Statement. A patent applicant needs to disclose every information that can be prior art to the USPTO in the IDS. Any information that classifies as material to patentability needs to be a part of the IDS. But the disclosure limits to only the information that he/she is aware of. The IDS plays a key role in the patent application.

Obligation to submit IDS

It is the patent applicant’s obligation to submit the IDS patent. The duty to disclose information material to patentability falls on the patent applicant and the inventor. This is because the inventors are more aware of a particular field of technology than a patent examiner. Hence, they should disclose each piece of information that they are aware of. However, does that mean that you need to find every prior art while filing an IDS? The answer related to a patent search.

Patent Search

You conduct a patent search to see if any relevant prior art for your invention exists. However, it is not a mandatory step for the USPTO. So, if you don’t conduct a patent search then you will not be aware of every prior art. That means you will have lesser information to disclose.

But this is a very risky gamble because if the patent examiner finds a prior art then your application can face rejection. Not only will you discover new prior art, but also you will have to find a way to distinguish your application from it. This can be very risky and it is advisable to conduct a patent search.

The bottom line is you need to disclose all the information that you are aware of only in the IDS patent. You don’t need to do extra research to discover prior art that you are not aware of.

You must understand that failing to file an IDS will never benefit you. The USPTO may believe your intent is to deceive the office. You will have to defend yourself against charges of intent to mislead.

Requirements in the IDS

Finally, let’s clearly elucidate on the information that needs to be a part of the IDS. We know that all material to patentability needs to be in the IDS. Primarily, there are 4 such types of information which classify as prior art:

Pre-existing patents

Patent applications that are in the process

Research publications in conferences, journals or blogs

Commercial products

When should you file an IDS?

Ideally, you should file an IDS along with your patent application immediately. However, the USPTO gives you other chances to file it at other stages of the patent prosecution process as well.

You can file it at 3 stages in particular, under 37 C.F.R Section:

1.97(b): It allows you to file it within 3 months of the US filing date or before receiving the First Office Action.

1.97(c): You can file the IDS after passing the first stage of filing or before mailing the Final Office Action. It also allows you to file it after mailing the Notice of Allowance.

1.97(d): It allows you to file after passing the second stage of filing or before or with payment of the issue fee.

You can read more about when and how to file IDS here.

Need help in drafting an IDS? – Patent Drafting Catalyst

You can understand that an absolutely critical part of the application is the IDS patent. Drafting it to perfection, knowing what to include, how to include is vital. It is advisable to seek assistance from a professional for this. At Patent Drafting Catalyst, we believe in filing IDS smartly. We will ensure that you file your IDS with the least cost. Our job is to make your prosecution process smooth and simple. We can also assist you in drafting the patent application.

1. **Patent Filing Requirements in USPTO – in a Nutshell**

There are certain patent filing requirements in USPTO that an inventor should meet in order to get a patent grant for their invention. These requirements include various documents like patent application, which again comprises inventors and/or applicant’s information, request form and detailed description. Additionally, you can attach patent drawings, if required.

Also, there are certain milestones to reach before going for the crucial step of patent filing in the USPTO office.

For all this, an inventor can also take the assistance of patent drafting and filing services by agents and attorney. The USPTO itself suggest the inventors to go with the assistance of patent agents/attorneys for patent filing and other proceedings.

Here, we will discuss those patent filing requirements in USPTO so that your patent application goes through a seamless and smooth prosecution.

Patent Filing Requirements in USPTO

Patent Filing Requirements in USPTO – The Major Ones

There are certain basic yet crucial necessities that comprise a patent application. These fundamental requirements are as per the rules of USPTO. Also, these work in favor of the inventor if he/she meets those basic necessities.

Type of IP protection you seek: you may come up with an invention, but before filing, be clear with the type of protection you seek for your invention. This includes patent, trademark, copyright, trade secrets or a combination of these.

Patentable Invention: once you are clear with the type of protection you seek, determine whether your invention is patentable or not. For this, your invention needs to meet the patentability criteria, which includes: Novelty, Non-Disclosure, industrial applicability, patentable subject-matter and non-obvious. For this, a thorough prior-art search solves the purpose.

Kind of patent protection: there are 3 types of patents- Utility, Design, and plant. The type of patent protection you seek depends totally on your invention. So, determine whether it goes with a utility patent, design or plant or a combination of two or all.

Once you are sure about the type of IP and/patent protection you are going to seek.

You can now proceed with the patent filing proceedings. But again, there are multiple patent filing requirements in USPTO that act as a precursor to the patent filing. These factors will make you mentally prepared for all the filing proceedings that take place at the patent office.

These are:

Boundaries of Patent Protection: decide whether you want to file an international or a national application. The procedure for filing both the type of applications is different. One can file a direct application, PCT application or application to Paris convention countries for international applications.

Type of Patent Application: determine the type of patent application you want to file. You can file a provisional (incomplete) before filing a non-provisional (complete) patent application. Both serve their own purpose. File complete application within 12 months of filing a provisional application. Be mindful of submitting the application(s) with all the required parts.

Complete Prosecution Cost: there is a fee for the different hierarchy of proceedings as the patent application moves. A patent application is subject to a basic fee and additional fees. Additional fees include excess claim fees, fee depending upon the number of office actions and so on.

Elements of Patent Application: there are many elements that comprise a patent application. They make up what we call a complete patent application as per the guidelines of USPTO. It should meet the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 111(a).

Hiring a Patent Attorney: consider hiring an attorney while drafting and filing a patent application. This is so because an attorney knows patent office rules, and identifies what to add in a patent application. Be mindful of signing a Non-Disclosure Agreement to safeguard your invention prior to sharing information.

Therefore, before going for self-patent filing learn whether it is a wise decision or not.

Working with Patent Office Examiner

In case if your application is incomplete for some reasons, you will get a notification from the patent office. There is a time period of 3 months for giving a response to an office action. Make sure you or your agent corrects the omission within the specified time. Delay will lead to disposal of your patent application.

Once your patent application meets the USPTO requirements, it proceeds with the prosecution. Here the patent office examiner determines whether the application meets the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 111(a). Here 2 things can happen:

Meets the requirements of USPTO: the application will proceed for patent grant.

Fails to meet the USPTO requirements: you will receive an office action with errors. If you fail to meet those requirements then it will lead to the abandonment of your application.

If they reject your application twice, you may make an appeal to the Patent Trial and Appeal Board (PTAB).

You can view your pending patent application and documents status in Private PAIR.

Note: if you hire a patent attorney, the USPTO will communicate all the proceedings to the agent or attorney only. USPTO doesn’t engage in double correspondence with the patent applicant and also the agent.

Assistance at The Patent Filing Company

TPFC has a team of experienced personnel who will help you meet all the patent filing requirements in USPTO. We cover 300+ experts provide our services in over 45+ countries. Our patent experts and advisors work up to their full potential to provide world-class advice and IP protection. Also, we do ensure you receive quick responses and results with no compromise on its quality. If you want to know more, do give a visit to our service page.

1. **Technical Patent Illustrator – Benefits of Hiring**

A picture is worth a thousand words, this very well goes with patent illustrations. But, the delivery of a detailed illustration/drawing is in the hands of a Technical Patent Illustrator. It is only the details of a drawing that takes your invention forward instantly. Consequently, at the time of prosecution, the examiner might not need to go through the written description thoroughly if you deliver well-detailed drawings.

An amazing inventor might not be a technical patent illustrator. If this is the case with you, do consider hiring a patent illustrator. This works in your favor only as USPTO and another patent office(s) accept drawings that are as per their guidelines.

Need for a Technical Patent Illustrator:

Always bear this in your mind that only a professional patent draft fetches patent grant. Draft everything i.e. claims, specifications, technical drawings with accuracy covering each and every aspect of the invention. While drafting patent illustrations some people wonder whether to go for Do-It-Yourself software drawings or rather precede with patent illustrators.

Benefits that a technical patent illustrator brings to an application are:

While the examiner at the patent office reads through the written description, the patent illustrations speak for the invention. This demands the drafting of patent illustrations meticulously. Therefore, it is always a plus point to go with a well trained professional for the same.

A technical patent illustrator serves the best purpose. They keep themselves updated with all the rules and regulations of all the patent offices and furthermore, have a creative way of doing work.

They are very well aware of what and what NOT to include while preparing patent illustrations.

Qualities of a Technical Patent Illustrator

If you are planning on taking help of a patent illustrator but want to know what characteristics make an ideal patent illustrator. Before going any further go through the qualities of an ideal technical patent illustrator mentioned below:

Patent Illustrations Compatibility:

A technical illustrator furnishes both Design Patent Illustrations and Utility Patent Illustrations. They are also knowledgeable of technicalities of both the types of patent illustrations.

Profound imagination:

a patent illustrator is an imaginative person. In essence, he/she has a mind that creates illustrations as per the instructions that the inventor provides regarding his invention.

Master of state-of-the-art tools:

He/she is an expert of various technical tools of patent illustrations. These include AutoCAD, CorelDRAW, Visio, SolidWorks and many more.

Covers every detail of the invention:

Technical patent illustrators include each and every detail regarding the invention. You can judge the quality of their work by the precision with which they deliver both simple and complex designs.

Meets deadlines with no quality compromise:

A good technical patent illustrator is highly efficient. He/she delivers their work on or before time. At the same time, there is no quality compromise in their work. Meanwhile, you can go through the samples of the technical patent illustrations for your reference.

Well-versed with Patent Office guidelines:

The rules for patent illustrations of patent offices keep changing from one jurisdiction to another. A technical patent illustrator knows the details to draft the illustrations for different countries.

Integrity and confidentiality maintenance:

Along with technical expertise, a patent illustrator should keep the invention’s details and drawings confidential. He/she should not share the information with anyone without the permission of the inventor or applicant, whatsoever.

Technical patent Illustrators at Professional Patent Illustrators:

If you are looking forward to a well-drafted patent illustration, let the experts be at your service. At professional patent illustrators, you will find a team of proficient technical patent illustrators. We bring both utility and design patent illustration services at your end, and also free-of-cost sample illustrations service. Our illustrators take pride in bringing detailed illustrations using tools that are best in the market. And for us, customer satisfaction is of the highest priority.

1. **Trademark Image: Know the Possibility**

Do you have a unique image ready with you which stand-apart from the rest for your business? You want complete ownership over it as a trademark image so that it distinguishes your brand from the rest. But wondering whether it is possible to trademark an image or not? You will get all your questions answered here.

To start with, a trademark, in general, is a sign which protects the goods and services of an enterprise from another. Therefore, logos in the form of images can get trademark protection if they work as an identification mark of that business. Merely copyrighting the image won’t make it work as a brand logo. A copyright protects literary and artistic work. But, on the other hand, a trademark recognizes a brand and protects the goods and services being offered by a company.

Therefore, an image or logo falls under the realm of both copyright and trademark protection. But copyright and a trademark image provide different sorts of protection.

What does a trademark protect?

If we break the word trademark, we get two words ‘Trade’ and ‘Mark’. From here it becomes evident that a trademark is a mark that identifies a trade or a business. It is in the form of a word, a combination of words, numerals, letters, drawings, symbols, 3-D features, sounds, fragrances, color shades, etc.

For example, the “Swoosh” logo of brand “Nike” is a brand image or a trademark image. The owner of the company can sue anyone who tries to utilize or make a resembling image of the same for promoting their business. Similarly the iconic bitten apple logo of the brand “Apple” and the Golden Arches logo of “McDonald’s” and much more work to distinctly identify the brands they are in association.

Therefore, a trademark not only protects the goods and services offered by a company but also builds brand recognizance.

How to register a trademark image?

In order to get trademark protection for your logo one needs to make sure if their symbol or image is totally unique. Also, that image should not share even slightest of resemblance with any of the logos in use. For this, one needs to start with a trademark search.

Trademark Search: the purpose of looking into worldwide databases is to look for existing and filed trademark applications. This ensures if your image or logo is unique enough for trademark protection.

World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO) has launched on May 10, 2014, an exclusive database which has an image-search function. It allows people to upload and search a visually-similar trademark and related information about the brand from millions of images.

The USPTO provides the Trademark Electronic Search System (TESS) for conducting a clearance search. By clearance search we mean, looking for trademarks that are conflicting with image or mark in question.

Apply online: once your image or logo is over the step of clearance search, now you should safely proceed with the application process with the USPTO. If you are a first-timer, do go through the basic information that one needs to learn before filing an initial application form.

Now, wait for the approval as the prosecution proceeds at the patent office.

The validity of a trademark is of 10 years. You can apply for its renewal before 1 year of its expiry date or before 6 months

Note: Consider hiring a private attorney as you proceed with the trademark registration process. A trademark attorney help from the very first stage of trademark search till final stages of getting trademark protection. Also, he/she helps you realize and enforce your trademark rights to the maximum extent.

What do we bring?

Getting a trademark that distinctly identifies your brand is a great deal of importance for us as much as it is for you. Our professionals at the trademark search company provide expert solutions of trademark search and monitoring services. We provide you the right guidance so that you can get a unique trademark image for your brand. Because only the right trademark gives your brand a distinct image and builds a reputation which it deserves. To know more about our services, please visit The Trademark Search Company.

1. **Trademark Filing: A detailed insight**

Trademark is a logo or combination of numbers and characters which helps in distinguishing its products from others in the market. So, we can say that trademark filing can help a business invest in branding and ensure its unique branding in the market. It also helps the trademark owner to protect the trademark and prevent its fraudulent use. If one wants to scale up his business to increase profits, trademark filing plays an essential role in it. Also, a registered trademark is an intangible asset for a business and protects the company’s investments. We will discuss the process of filing a trademark application.

Trademark Filing: Key points to consider

The filing of the trademark attracts a lot of brand recognition. The little effort of yours will preserve the trademark and develop a unique identity of the brand. The several steps that the trademark filing process involves are:

Also see : List of well known Trademarks

Trademark Search:

Trademark search is an important part of the trademark filing process. It is critical to decide the goods and services for which one wants to apply for the trademark. Hence, trademark searching becomes essential as it tells the applicant whether the registration of a particular mark exists or not. If someone is already an owner of a specific trademark, you cannot have a similar one.

Related Articles: Manual of Trademarks Practice & Procedure

Submit the trademark application:

After the trademark search, you need to decide on the trademark and fill the trademark application to proceed further. You need to mention all the trademark information in your trademark application. Also, the filing of the trademark application takes place at the Indian Trademark Office.

Examination of the application:

Once you file the trademark application, the next step is an examination of the application. The trademark application goes to the examiner who examines the discrepancies of the application if any. Also, the examination process takes around 12-18 months from the priority date. The examiner reviews the application to determine the compliance of the application with the official rules.

Office Actions:

The examining attorney decides whether to register the trademark or not. If all the claims are correct, he will accept the trademark application without any due. Contrary to it, if the examiner decides not to register the trademark, he will issue a letter explaining the substantial reason for the refusal of the application. The examiner will claim to correct the deficiencies of the application.

The applicant must respond to the office action within 6 months of the action. The applicant must amend the claims which the examiner wants him to correct.

Publication of the mark:

If the examinee attorney raises no objection, or if the applicant overcomes all the objections, approval of the application takes place. So, after approval, the trademark office publishes the trademark in the “Official Gazette.” “Official Gazette” is a weekly publication of the trademark office. The trademark office sends a notice of the publication to the applicant stating the date of publication. Trademark office gives 30 days of time for the opposition of the trademark to happen if anyone wants to oppose it.

Search for trademarks here

Notice of Allowance:

After the publication of the trademark, the next step is notice of allowance to the applicant. If there is no opposition regarding the trademark application, trademark office issues a notice of allowance to the applicant. Moreover, a notice of allowance means the successful survival of the trademark filing in the opposition period after publication.

Filing the Statement of Use (SOU):

A time period of 6 months is given to the applicant from the date of allowance to file the Statement of Use (SOU). The applicant needs to use the trademark in commerce and file SOU. However, if the applicant fails in doing so, it results in the abundance of the trademark application.

Reviewing the Statement of Use:

A Statement of Use (SOU) must meet minimum filing requirements before an examining attorney fully reviews it. If SOU meets the minimum filing requirements, the attorney determines whether it is acceptable to permit registration or not. If the examinee identifies no refusals or additional requirements, he approves the SOU.

Trademark Registration:

This is the final stage of the trademark filing process. Once you pass all of the above steps, the registration of the trademark happens. The following points are important to remember:

Registration Certificate Issue:

Within approximately 2 months after getting the approval of SOU, the USPTO issues the trademark registration. To keep the registration live, the applicant must file the specific maintenance documents. Hence, failure to make these filings will result in cancellation of the registration.

Monitoring Registration Status:

 Even if your trademark registers, you should monitor the registration on an annual basis. So, it is important to check the status of your registration after making any of the filings to keep the registration alive.

Trademark renewal:

Once the trademark filing process completes, one has to renew it perpetually after every 10 years. Hence, the protection span of your logo or brand increases.

Looking for trademark filing – Your Trademark Team

You invest a lot in building your brand. You not just invest money in creating your logo and trademark, but the hours of effort into promoting your brand. Before you put this effort, you must make sure that it is in the right direction. Your Trademark Team (YTT) is a team of professionals who have years of experience in the trademark filing process. If you want to register your trademark, YTT with its world-class facilities and professional expertise would help you in doing so. We file quick and easy trademark applications for our clients at an optimal cost. Our team also provides timely notifications to our clients at each step. YTT is well aware of every guideline and the latest trademark laws to ensure our client’s trademark safety. We will also report you with the proper updates. To avail our services, Visit Your Trademark Team.

1. **Patent Translations Types: A Complete Guide**

Patent translation is the task of converting patent documentation into another language. Patent translations types are very important in today’s world while filing an official patent in foreign countries. These are most likely to be read by legal professionals and potential patent licensee in a foreign country. One translates only relevant portions of the patent for the purpose of evidence in the court proceedings. You should translate your patent in a way that a person having no prior knowledge of it also understands the invention. Patent translations types make the patent application process more effective and efficient abroad. They allow patent translation to undergo localization to meet the country’s specific patent norms.

Related Article: Patent Proofreading Benefits: The Best Five

Patent Translations types: Essentials

Even though the patent documents are legal documents, we can further categorize them depending upon the nature of the document. The patent translations types are:

Patent translation for prior art documents:

Prior art is evidence that your invention is already known. The fact that someone has previously given the description of the technology similar to yours is evidence of the prior art. So, it becomes important for the patent applicant to establish the novelty of the invention before the examiner.

Translations of such documents fall under this category and are important when you intend to protect a patent. So, one needs a good patent translator who is proficient in the spoken language of the patent filing country. It is important that the content, meaning and the nature of the patent document remain intact while translation.

Patent translation for litigation proceedings:

This is one of the most important factors in patent translations types. It is important for you to have a clear and accurate patent translation to undertake legal action with confidence. In an increasingly international business environment, litigation is becoming far more common. It means that the need for litigation translation is more than ever before. There is a possibility of having a large number of international lawsuits relevant to one’s invention. The litigation translation service might prove helpful in document sifting, where an expert translator sifts the documents on-site. It helps in filtering and prioritizing the criteria you provide. The translation can also quickly summarize key documents. One requires an expert patent translator to fully understand the technicalities of the invention. So, it helps the translator to maintain the accuracy of the invention in another language.

Related Article: Patent Watch Service: Types & Advantages

Patent translation for foreign filings:

It is essential for one to translate the patent application in the national language of the patent filing country. If you want to file a patent in a particular country then patent translation plays an important role. These are among the patent documents that require precision and accuracy. You need to make sure that the patent translation covers all possible claims of your invention in the desired language. Even a minuscule error can make or break the deal. So, it is necessary to consider a professional who has got years of experience in this service.

Need Patent Translation Service? – Patent Translations Express

 For accurate patent translation, it is important for the translator to have expertise on the subject matter. If you are looking to seek assistance in patent translation, Patent Translations Express (PTE) would guide you with the best possible solutions. PTE offers the most economical patent translation services to the clients without compromising on the accuracy of the translation. With the team of professional experts, we have been translating the patent-related documents in various technical domains. Our team of patent translators has a deep understanding of patent literature. At PTE, we optimize the manual translation effort to achieve faster turnarounds for our clients. We cover more than 40+ languages across the world for patent translation.

1. **Trademark Monitoring: Why is it Important for your Brand?**

After successfully registering a trademark with the USPTO, trademark monitoring is the next most important step. Enforcement of your trademark rights is your responsibility, and that is possible when you monitor your trademark closely. In order to stop someone from infringing your trademark, you must be aware of the infringement in the first place. This is why you must have a system in place for trademark monitoring. You would naturally want to ensure that no other brand uses your mark.

This article aims to explain all the key points about trademark monitoring.

Significance of Trademark Monitoring for your Business

Opposing Competing Trademark Registrations:

Imagine a scenario where a competing business files a trademark that is potentially harmful to your brand. As a trademark owner, you may object to any new trademarks that are deleterious for you. The USPTO might approve a mark that you believe is confusingly similar to your own. This can happen despite searching its database of registered and pending marks as part of the registration process. Hence trademark monitoring becomes absolutely crucial to stop any registrations as soon as possible.

Detecting and fixing potential conflicts early:

It is highly advisable to nip the problem in the bud before it becomes too big. The more a potential infringer invests in the trademark, the more likely they are going to fight back. Trademark monitoring aids you to detect cases of infringements or use of your mark without authorization. Successfully protecting your trademark against any infringement has another benefit. It strengthens your trademark in future disputes.

Basically, a good trademark monitoring helps you resolve potential conflicts sooner and without much investment of time or money.

Scope of Trademark Monitoring

Trademark monitoring requires keeping a constant eye on a lot of domains of information. It is of utmost importance that all your bases are covered to ensure maximum protection. The following should be the scope of your watch:

Federal Trademark Applications: You must monitor filings with the USPTO to protect your rights. As we told you, some entities may inadvertently file a trademark application that is very similar to yours. It is your job to enforce your rights and raise the alarm about an infringement.

Common-Law Trademarks: Some brands may not want a federal trademark, and so they won’t register for one either. But they can use a common law trademark, which has no records in the USPTO So you must keep an eye for such trademarks as well.

Search Engine Results. To get the full picture of how trademarks are in use, search for your mark on the Internet. Some businesses may not do any searches and just start using a mark callously. That mark may turn out to be very similar to yours. You can set up Google Alert for your trademark name so you get automatic notifications whenever Google updates its index.

Trademark Squatting: It’s an act of registering other people’s marks as their own by squatters in other countries in order to gain benefits from original marks or real trademark You have to keep an eye on this to prevent it from happening.

Need a vigilant Monitoring Service? – The Trademark Watch Company

You know that a lot of your business rides on the brand name. That brand name needs protection in the form of trademarks. But that protection is not enough, and trademark monitoring is absolutely crucial. It is difficult to manage so many things at once. So it’s advisable to hire a professional to take care of this for you. The Trademark Watch Company offers the widest and the most flexible search coverage. To ensure this, we carry out all our searches manually, and not via computers. We also want to ensure that our prices are affordable without compromise on quality. Your satisfaction is our guarantee.

1. **What is Patent Docketing?**

Patent Docketing includes maintaining a database or portfolio of applications received at the patent office. The USPTO and other patent Offices receive lakhs of patent applications every year, and it keeps on increasing year by year.

[You will get the exact status of patent applications by visiting US Patent Statistics Chart.

Pertaining to this huge data, it is quite evident that these many applications need a proper system for their maintenance. Also, a timely update to patent applicants is essential for informing them about the upcoming due-dates to get a timely patent grant. Patent docketing is a system of maintenance of record of patent applications at patent offices filed by applicants around the world. Moreover, patent docketing is not only about maintaining the documents. It is also about maintaining fee record status and updating clients and attorneys about the due dates and responding to office actions. A patent docket serves the purpose of maintaining patent applications and other documents like forms and drawings. Similarly, client trust accounts maintain the fee records of the applicants.

Patent Docketing Process:

The process of Patent Docketing starts with the arrival of a patent application to the patent office. Firstly, the docketing specialist labels each document with the name files number and then scans and updates the information to the database. By doing this, the attorneys and applicants can get an update on each and every detail related to their patent application at just a click. Furthermore, they create templates and templates to other law firms as well, if required.

Purpose of Digitized Patent Docketing:

In earlier times, people maintained records of patent applications in registers. The entries made in a chronological order marked by a serial number or docket number. Maintaining docket of a patent application on a register or a wall-sized chart is undoubtedly an intimidating task. With this came the need digitizing the docketing system. This made the hectic task of maintaining patent applications much more manageable.

At the same time, a digitized patent docketing system help updates the information in no time. It also updates the applicants about their deadlines for submitting documents.

What is patent Docketing

What is a Docket Number?

Attorney Docket number is a 25 Alphanumeric character which identifies a patent application. You can retrieve a list of patent applications by entering the first 3 characters of the alphanumeric code. The system performs a suffix wild card search when the user enters a partial attorney number. This happens when the user selects the “start with” radio button option.

Note: You can also take help of other numbers like Application number, Control Number, Patent Number to find your patent application. You can follow USPTO Search for Application to learn more about these numbers.

Also Read: Patent Docketing Software: Its Importance and Applications

Why Patent Docketing is a must?

Prevent Malpractice Suits: insurance companies associated with patent law firms demand them to keep up a patent docket. This is so as it will help prevent malpractice suits for when if the law firm misses any filing date. Moreover, some insurance companies prefer to have 2 different docketing systems in order to increase the robustness of the system. In this case, patent docketers maintain the docketing system and cross-check one another.

Meeting Deadlines: patent docketing help meet the deadlines without which the applicant might miss the golden chance of getting a patent grant. This, in turn, leads to the lost trust of clients in their patent attorneys.

Therefore, maintaining a robust docketing system is a must for every patent law firm, in order to maintain a smooth workflow.

What do we bring?

Our experts, at Patent Drafting Catalyst, maintain and track patent portfolios using commercial docketing systems. For us, maintaining our client’s legal and technical associated with their patent application is a task of utmost importance. We process and docket all the emails and send reminders on time, in order to fetch timely patent grants for our client’s invention. Our robust data security and integration with third-party software makes us much trusted among our clients. We are providing with best of our services in 45+ countries, throughout the life-cycle of the patent process at budget-friendly rates. To know more about services, please visit Patent Drafting Catalyst.

1. **Effect of Late IDS Filing – Reduces Patent Term Adjustment**

Delay in the submission of any document at the time of filing affects your patent application in many ways. One such delay is the effect of late IDS filing on patent term adjustment. The USPTO calculates the 20-year term of the patent grant from the date of filing the application. This 20 year time comprise the complete prosecution period. The period of prosecution associates with itself the delays which are at the end of the applicant and/or patent office. This called for patent term adjustment post-grant of the patent.

According to 35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(2)(C) “The Patent term adjustment will reduce by a period equal to the time during which the applicant failed to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude prosecution of the application.”

Taking on this, the effect of late IDS filing reduces the patent term adjustment.

Ideal IDS Filing Time

In the patent lifecycle, there are ideal timings for each and every step to take place. Similarly, there is the right time for filing an Information Disclosure Statement for smooth prosecution and timely patent grant. The timings are:

For national applications: within 3 months of patent filing or on/before the mailing of the first office action. After this period but before the prosecution of the examination closes i.e. the final office action, or a notice of allowance, or Ex Parte Quayle Action, whichever is earlier.

For international application: within 3 months of the date of entry of the national stage. Or before the mailing of first office action in the national stage. After this period or on/before the payment of the issue fee.

Continued examination: before the mailing of the first office action. After this period or on/before the effective withdrawal of the patent application from issue under 35 U.S.C. 1.313(c).

If you file IDS after the above mentioned time period your patent application will no longer be considered.

To learn more, read: IDS Patent: Definition, Obligation, and Requirements in Patent Applications

Types of Delays

The prosecution at the Patent Office is not an easy task. It has its hurdles and complexities. But this can adversely affect the duration of the patent grant. The USPTO is solely responsible for these types of delays and makes patent term adjustments accordingly. These delays include:

”A delay”(35 U.S.C. §154(b)(1)(A)(i) and 35 U.S.C. §154(b)(1)(A)(ii)): failure to issue the first office action within 14 months of filing the application and other applications within 4 months of receipt of an applicant’s response.

“B delay” (35 U.S.C. §154(b)(1)(B)): failure to issue a patent within 3 years from filing.

“C delay” (35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(1) (C)(i) – (iii)): delays due to Patent Trial and Appeal Board, secrecy orders and interferences.

For these types of delays, only the USPTO is responsible and will increase the duration of the patent grant.

Applicant Delay: There is another type of delay at the end of the applicant. This can because of late submission of a reply, or any document. Also, because of filing a supplemental reply or document other than what the patent examiner requested. One such case is the effect of late IDS filing on patent term adjustment. These reasons cause a reduction in the patent term adjustment.

Overlapping Days: the calculation of overlapping days in between delay A and B, and delay A and C. The PTO subtracts the number of overlapping days so that the days do not repeat twice.

We can understand this through an equation:

Patent Term Adjustment (PTA) = A Delay + B Delay + C Delay – Applicant Delay – Overlapping Delays.

Effect of Late IDS Filing – A Case Study

If the court finds a delay in the prosecution because of the applicant will result in a reduction of the patent term adjustment. Moreover, the statute also accounts for the delay and will reduce the term of PTA if he/she fails to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude prosecution of the application. One such effect of late IDS filing illustrates this case study.

Gilead Sciences v/s the Federal Circuit – Case No. 14-1159 (Fed. Cir, Feb. 26, 2015)(Wallach, J.).

February 22, 2008- Gilead filed a patent application for the ‘374 patent.

November 18, 2009; the PTO issues a restriction requirement. Sometimes the patent examiner finds that there is more than 1 patentably distinct invention in claims. They issue a restriction requirement to divide the claims into segments (37 C.F.R. § 1.142 (2007)).

February 18, 2010: Gilead responded to the restriction requirements and selected one of the 4 groups of inventions.

April 16, 2010: in the meanwhile, Gilead filed supplemental IDS disclosing 2 other co-pending patent applications of Gilead.

July 29, 2011: the PTO issued a notice of allowance.

April 3, 2012: patent issued for the ‘374 patent.

Both the parties agreed that Gilead should get a PTA because of the delay on part of PTO. They issued 245 days of ‘A Delay” and 406 days of “B Delay”. This 651 days reduced by overlapping and applicant-induced delay.

35 days of overlapping delay and an additional 57 days of applicant-induced delay.

October 27, 2011: Gilead contested its filing of the supplemental IDS did not cause any actual delay. But the PTO rejected this argument because Gilead’s filed supplemental IDS after its response to the restriction requirement. And also it failed to engage in a reasonable effort to conclude prosecution stated in 37 C.F.R. 1.704(c)(8).

In this case, late supplemental IDS caused a delay in the process of prosecution. Hence, the effect of late IDs filing results in reduced patent term adjustment.

Why Choose SmartIDS Solutions?

The effect of late IDS filing on Patent Term Adjustment is surely not in favor of you as an inventor/applicant. We, at SmartIDS Solution, are here to help you out. Timely delivery of information disclosure statements and opportune patent grant for your invention is our top priority. We provide ready to file IDS forms in USPTO prescribed format. Our team remains up-to-date with the current regulations and always comply with the rules of the USPTO. To know how it works, do give a visit to Smart IDS Solutions.

1. **Patent Watch Services : A Vigilant Eye on Patent**

Do you really need Patent Watch Services? It does not matter which industry your firm operates in, it is necessary to watch all the activities of the competitors to remain safe. Doing so makes it easy to pick out any product/patent that may infringe or harm the reputation of your brand. Moreover, patent watch helps you to keep a close look at the following activities of your competitor:

Dynamics of IP

Patent litigation

Research and Development strategies

Development of Technology

Licensing and Acquisitions

Transferring the patents

Recent Patent related activities

Thus, the Patent watch allows you to stay a step ahead from the competitors.

Patent Watch Services: Must know

The Patent watch helps you to keep a track of the latest technology or information about the innovations related to the industry you are into. Moreover, these important updates motivate the research and the development department of the firm to think something more productive.

A Patent watch provides an update regarding new Patents and Patent Applications. Thus, it gives you enough time to act against the Patents that may harm or infringe your Patent or invention. The main goal of the Patent watch is to avoid Infringement from either side.

You can keep an eye on the expired/abandoned Patents or the patents which may soon fall into the public domain. This enables you to sort out the Patents which are safe for your use.

The patent watch helps you to modify your patent/product in time if your technical team finds out that it is infringing any other patent/patent application. Thus avoiding legal actions against you.

You not only get to know about the details to new inventions but you can also seek the advantage of the information that is open in front of you.

Patent Watch Services: Fields

A company that provides services or produces goods must seek the help of Patent watch services to be on the safe side. There are a few types of watch services available for these firms:

Design watch:

It monitors the Design Patents that are recently published or granted. Also, it tracks the expired or abandoned/rejected Patent applications.

Trademark watch:

The Trademark watch service tracks the Trademarks which are newly filed or granted.

Infringement watch:

The Infringement Watch service keeps an eye on fresh EOU (Evidence of Use) in various fields i.e. Goods, process, services, and others.

Competitor patent watch:

The competitor Patent watch tracks the competitors in the same industry to get information regarding the grant, rejection, publishing or expiration of the Patent application.

Technical patent watch:

Technical Patent watch searches for the Patents which are newly grant or published in the relevant technical field.

Patent legal status watch:

It helps to check the status of the Patent application during processing and the Patent after acceptance. Also, it allows updating the client for any sort of change or iteration needed in the Patent.

There are various types of Patent watch services and it is better to seek the help of a patent specialist. This will help you to know which type of Patent Watch services will benefit you the most.

Related Article: How to Draft an Accurate Patent Claim?

Why only the Patent Watch Company?

The Patent Watch Company receives input from you and utilizes them as the base to the search online and manually. As soon as we receive the data, our experts start preparing the strategy and working plan for the task. Also, they inform you on a regular basis with timelines, work progress and expected results. We deliver the outcomes within the deadlines and at a budget-friendly price. Our motto is to completely satisfy the customer and provide better than what they want. To seek more advantages of our services, please visit The Patent Watch Company.

1. **Patent Illustration Rules: Must Know**

Patent Illustration rules are the standards set by the USPTO for drawings, pictures, and diagrams present in the patent application. An illustration requires you to explain and outline the subject matter that associates with the patent. The illustrations are essential in almost all patent applications. Thus, to increase the chances of getting a patent grant, it’s important to follow patent illustration rules given by the USPTO. The illustrations don’t have to be works of art but describe and demonstrate the invention with a great deal of accuracy.

Related article: How to create a quality patent illustration?

The Patent Illustration Rules: Key Points:

Good quality patent illustrations are very important for the correct disclosure of the invention. So, there are some of the general rules one needs to follow while creating a patent illustration. The patent illustration rules are as follows:

Colour drawings:

Utility patent and Design patent rarely accept color drawings. Also, they may be necessary as the only practical medium to disclose the subject matter. The color drawings must be of sufficient qualities such that all the details are reproducible in black and white printed format. Although, one cannot use color drawings in the PCT application.

Graphic Forms in drawings:

Tables, formulas of mathematics and waveforms are subject to the same rules as any other type of drawing. Formulas and waveforms also have specific requirements:

Formulas: One needs to label each formula as a separate figure and include brackets to show any necessary information.

Waveforms: The presentation of waveforms must be in a single figure that uses a vertical and a horizontal axis to showtime. Also, each individual waveform must have a letter designation adjacent to the vertical access for identification.

Tables: The tables in the illustration should be present in the sideways of the sheet. Also, the top of the table must be present on the left side of the sheet to make it look desirable.

Click Here to Download (Free Samples)

Views of the drawings:

It is one of the most important factors in the patent illustration rules. To show how the product looks and works, one needs to use several viewpoints in the drawing. If possible, one should use the following views of the invention:

The standard six views which include front, back, right, left, top and bottom view.

Perspective views with three dimensions.

Only the front and back views of a flat object.

Sectional views to show the function of the object.

Exploded views to show how a single part works during the operation of the invention.

Shadingis another key part of the patent illustrations. It shows depth, contour and texture of the object. To do this, one can use dots, lines and distinctive patterns.

Margin Requirements:

Margin requirements are also an essential part of the patent illustration rules. The sheets must not contain frames around the usable surface of the object. But they should have a scan target point that means cross-hairs printed on two corner margins. Each sheet must include:

A top margin of at least 2.5 cm.

A left-side margin of at least 2.5 cm.

A right-side margin of at least 1.5 cm.

A bottom side margin of at least 1.0 cm.

Identification of the illustration:

The patent application must include Identification of the drawings. Hence, it should include the title of the invention, inventor’s name, and the application number. If the assigning of the application number has not taken place, one should use the docket number. Also, the placement of these to identify the illustration must be on the front of each sheet, centered within the top margin.

Other Considerations:

Even with all these rules, there are some general considerations that one should take into account while creating patent illustrations. These are as follows:

Copyright or Mask Work Notices:

You can place these notices in the illustration directly below the portion they pertain to. However, they must only be 1/8 inch by ¼ inch.

The numbering of sheets:

The numbering of the illustration must be in Arabic numerals in the middle of the top of the sheet. But it should not cover the margin. Numbers can move to the top-right if they interfere with the illustration.

The numbering of views:

 Views numbering must be independent of the sheet numbering. Partial views must also use Arabic numerals followed by a capital letter.

Security markings:

Security markings use is essential in the center of the top margin.

Corrections:

 All corrections that one submits with the patent illustration must be permanent and durable.

The character of Lines, Numbers, and Letters:

All illustrations are made by a process which will give them satisfactory reproductive characteristics. In short, every line, number, and letter must be durable, clean, uniformly thick and well-defined.

Symbols:

Graphic illustrations use symbols for the conventional elements when appropriate. The elements for which one uses symbols must have an adequate identity in the specifications. Known devices should use symbols which have universal recognition and are generally accepted in the art.

Paper used in the illustration:

The paper must be white, flexible and strong. The USPTO allows only one-sided writing on the paper. One should use black ink on white paper. The paper size must be either 21 cm by 29.7 cm or 21.6 cm by 27.9 cm.

The illustration should be drawn on a non-crowded scale at 2/3 size. Indications like full scale or “1/2 scale” are not acceptable.

Related Article: Difference between Illustration and Drafting: For a Perfect Patent Application

Looking for Patent Illustration? – Patent Illustration Express

Patent Illustration plays a vital role in a patent application for displaying of the invention. If you are looking for any assistance regarding patent illustrations, Patent Illustration Express (PIE) will guide you with the illustration guidelines. PIE is a team of professional patent illustrators, who provide our clients with super-fast delivery of the illustration services. Our team creates illustrations that have 100% compliance with the patent illustration rules. Furthermore, PIE provides flexible output formats to our clients with full satisfaction guarantee. Also, we make sure to cover a descriptive invention for our clients through illustrations. For more information, Visit Patent Illustration Express.

1. **Best Patent Drawings services – Whom to trust?**

Patent drawings services are the services provided by Patent illustrators. This includes the creation of drawings according to the Invention. Every new Invention needs an illustration in the form of drawings to ease the interpretation of the invention.

Patent drawings services provide a professional’s touch, who ensure that your drawings follow the latest guidelines and regulations. They will boost your chances of getting a patent grant with great drawings. But, you must be wary of which service to hire. Let’s look at every aspect of patent drawings and the services, one by one.

Patent drawings and their need

Patent drawings comprise of the set of illustrations that describe an Invention and its various features precisely. They are submitted during the Patent filing process, to help the Patent examiners understand the Invention clearly. During the process of drafting a Patent application, the applicant needs to describe the invention in the best possible way. If they do not provide a detailed description, he/she can lose the possibility of getting the Patent.

Thus, for dealing with this problem we need Patent Drawings. A Patent Drawing helps to illustrate the Invention thoroughly, as it contains

The physical design of every part of the Invention.

Different views of the Invention, including exploded and sectional view.

The detailed working principle of the Invention.

Processes and steps required for the making of the Invention.

Graphs, charts, formulas, tables and key aspects of the Invention.

Also Read: Patent Watch Services : A Vigilant Eye on Patent

Patent drawings on Patent Prosecution Process

For a Patent to either get granted or not, patent drawings are the deciding factor. They play a significant role in the decision related to the Patent.

The Patent drawings contain visual details about the invention. They describe the parts of the Invention with different views; this helps the Patent examiner to understand the Invention clearly and easily.

The Patentee could also include the points in the drawing that he might have forgotten in the written description.

The more detailed the drawing is the more are the chances of acceptance for the patent application.

The Patent application can get accepted the very first time if proper drawings are provided. This may help the Patentee to save precious time and money as he won’t have to file for the same Patent again.

Also, visit: 5 Major Benefits of Patent Paralegal Service

How to get the desired Patent drawings services?

By now you must have realized the worth of a good patent drawing. Now the question arises, How to get one?

It is a time taking and complex procedure, but you don’t have to take any burden on yourself. We already have a solution in the form of TPDC. They own Patent experts and professionals that are ready at your service for an escape to this problem.

You just have to provide them your Input data in any form, such as photographs, videos, sketches, etc. They will confirm your order online. The moment they receive your files, their team of experts starts preparing the drawings. You can check the running work at any time you want. Your drawings will be delivered within 4-6 working days and you will be able to download them from your TPDC account.

They also provide you free iterations until you get fully satisfied. This step is rarely used though as they try to present you with the perfect work at the very first time. patent drawings services

Since the last decade, they are known for their adequate, reliable, instant and quality services. They provide services on Patent drawings that are within the guidelines of the USPTO.

Let us make your Invention a masterpiece

The Patent Drawing Company (TPDC) owns a team of experts in the field and professionals. We with the help of their technical groups provide you with the most pertinent output in the form of the Patent drawings.

TPDC believes in 100% customer satisfaction while matching the lowest prices. The ordering, as well as the result, is super quick. The outcome can be obtained in any format as there is a variety of soft wares and applications used by the company.TPDC has set new standards in Patent drawing services. We define the actual value of your art.

1. **A Quick Guide for Patent Registration**

Do you wish to get patent registration in India? A patent registration helps one to get the legal rights of a certain invention. It is an exclusive right given to the inventor that restricts others from selling and making use of the same. It stands for 20 years before coming in public domain. There are certain mandatory steps involved to complete the patent registration process in India. The patent registration process and several steps involved in the process are discussed below.

Patent Registration Complete Process:

Check patentability of the invention by Prior Art Search :

A prior art search helps in checking the patentability of the invention. You can perform your patent search here to determine the patentability of the same. It helps in determining that the invention is already in use or not.

Draft a patent application :

Once you have completed your patent search in order to complete your patent registration, drafting of the patent application comes into play. You need to complete your application which has to be accompanied by a patent specification. The patent draft is important as it helps to specify and declare in-depth information about the invention which in turn will help the patent application getting proper protection. Whether a patent will be granted or not is decided by a patent draft.

File the patent application:

The next step of patent registration is the filing of the drafted patent application. If the state of invention is yet to be completed, file a provisional application, and if the invention is in a complete state, file a complete application for that patent. If one has filed a provisional application, there is a time of 12 months allocated to the applicant for filing a complete application. Declaration of the inventor’s name is one of the most important things to mention in the application. The application is to be submitted to the patent office of the region where the applicant resides.

Publishing of the patent application:

The patent office publishes the patent application. Further, after 18 months to a prior date, the application gets its publication in the office patent journal. Only the publication of complete application takes place. If the application is provisional, then one needs to complete it to publish the application. It is important to publish the patent application as early as possible due to the fact that the rights of the patentee start accruing only after the publication date.

Examination of the patent application:

This is one of the most important parts of the whole process of patent registration. After the application is published, it goes to the patent examiner for the examination of the application. The examiner compares the details of the invention to the prior art. The examiner asks to amend the application if any obligation is present in the application. The application moves ahead by issuing out a letter to the applicant citing the requirements. The application won’t move further if the applicant is unable to satisfy the required examiner’s objection. On the contrary, the patent application moves ahead if the applicant provides acceptable arguments and clears all the objections of the examiner. This is the last step before the grant of patent.

Patent Grant:

Finally, the application gets a patent grant after following all the above steps. However, the patent gets grant only after clearing all the objections of the patent examiner.

Looking for Patent Registration?

It is true that patent registration is a time-consuming process. There are tons of inventions happening all around the world and whoever files the patent application early gets the legal rights of the patent.

 Your Patent Team (YPT) would help you in doing so. YPT is an exclusive group of the world’s leading technology experts. We are having more than 225 employees serving in more than 45 countries and helping innovators to file the patent. Our professionals have an in-depth understanding of the working style of each of the four patent offices in India. The experts utilize their experience to help you complete the patent registration process effectively. We will assist you with all the steps involved in the registration process.

1. **Who is an IP Paralegal and Why do You Need One?**

While dealing with matters of intellectual property, an IP paralegal is of very high importance. IP matters always involve a lot of paperwork, keeping tabs on deadlines and a lot more. An IP paralegal can act as a super assistant because it’s their job to make your life easier.

But how exactly can they help you? To what extent can they help you? It is important to know everything before hiring one that you know how much money to allocate for this. Let’s dig in and find out everything there is to know.

Also, Read: Intellectual Property (IP) Paralegal Facts

Who is an IP Paralegal?

An IP paralegal, as the name suggests, is a paralegal that specializes in matters of IP. Their job is to assist in IP matters such as patents, trademarks, copyrights, etc. They work with clients to help them protect their IP by assisting them in various processes. These processes include preparing trademark, patent or copyright applications, assisting intellectual property litigation, and conducting IP research.

To be an IP paralegal, one needs to not only have the legal knowledge but also some technical knowledge/experience as well. Preferably, one should have a scientific background in terms of education, like engineering, life sciences, or biotechnology. This makes the job of an IP paralegal harder than a regular paralegal.

Let’s understand their job responsibilities in greater detail further.

Role of an IP Paralegal

Now, you understand what an IP paralegal is. Let’s focus more on their role now. They are responsible for handling a lot of paperwork and maintaining the application docket. It is a challenging task which requires a lot of vigilance and awareness.

You can see that their responsibilities focus on 5 domains, which are:

IP Research

Before filing any form of intellectual property, it is vital to perform a background check. Whether it is trademark, patent or copyright. Every aspect of IP requires you to be absolutely firm and assertive about your creation so that you can get the right protection for it. If you find something similar to your creation then you may not get protection for your IP. Hence, researching before filing is very important.

An IP paralegal will conduct searches like:

Prior Art Search

Patent Novelty Search

Trademark Search

Patent Invalidity Search

They can also conduct other relevant important searches so that you have all the information before making a decision.

Document Preparation and Filing

This is an absolutely critical task and requires skill as well as experience. Any IP document needs to be elaborate, thorough, and completely unambiguous. You will need their assistance and expertise in the following processes:

Patent Drafting and Patent Filing

IDS Preparation and Filing

Patent Proofreading

Trademark Preparation and Filing

Other necessary IP documents

Client and Court Interactions

Their job also requires them to act as an intermediary between the court and the client. Such processes require lengthy interactions, both via written documents and in-court hearings. An IP paralegal will help you to prepare documents such as Office action response.

They will try their best to help you secure protection for your IP.

Docketing and Tracking Deadlines

The amount of documents in any IP process is very large. Naturally, you will need to keep them in an orderly manner. An IP paralegal can efficiently docket your documents. They utilize docketing systems to help them manage all your documents easily.

Also, they will ensure that you don’t miss any deadlines and stay up-to-date about everything happening with your application.

Watching your IP Post Grant

Once you secure protection for your IP, you also need to guard it. If an infringement occurs, then it is your responsibility to enforce your rights. An IP paralegal service can provide you with Patent Watch and Trademark Watch among other watch services.

They will monitor your IP and sound the alarm as soon as an infringement occurs.

Need Paralegal Assistance? – Patent Paralegal Force

For any technology company or R&D, the main concern is to keep track of their leading competitors, dynamically. This can become tricky to do if you are alone or new to this. You should consider hiring a professional like Patent Paralegal Force.

We provide you with patent application monitoring. We alert you on a regular basis about the latest patents in your field of invention. Our fully-functional team of paralegal professionals uses state-of-the-art tools, which reliably provide a bouquet of services. These include docketing for multiple countries, proofreading, end-to-end IDS management, document procurement, data verification and even form preparation and filing. We are currently serving our clients from more than 45 countries. Client satisfaction is paramount to us. So, we offer the best paralegal services at a negligible cost.

1. **Poor Patent Translation: Why you must avoid it?**

A poor patent translation may cost you a patent. Thus, it is quite common for an IP service firm or an inventor to have an urge to opt for a low-cost but quality translation provider. Patent translation is an expensive process as it carries much significance. A translation can account for more than 50% of the cost of PCT National Stage Filings and EPC validations. Thus, anyone would opt for an affordable translation provider to avoid poor patent translation. Regarding translation service, the quality and cost go hand in hand. Thus, whenever there is a drop in translator fee there might be a drop in quality too.

Key points of Patent Translation:

Patents are techno-legal documents that use very precise technical language to describe the usage and features of an invention. Therefore, it is necessary to take the help of a translator who excels in the technical background in order to get an accurate translation. It will be impertinent to engage a translator from the biological domain to work for a mechanical domain.

The most important part of any patent is the Claims section. The translated patent must unambiguously reflect the original technical and legal aspects. Thus, you must take help of native translators of the particular country to maintain the exactness of translated text and strict adherence to accurate terminology.

Any error in a patent translation can never be compromised. However, sometimes there can be minor errors made by efficient translators. In order to maintain the quality of the translation, it must be proofread by another skilled translator. This bears much more important when the technical patent translation is subjected to anything that would be used in a patent infringement case.

The Intellectual Property domain requires high quality and error-free translations. This is so because they are mostly used for research and development purpose and also for filing a patent application in foreign countries. Even a small error in translation, in this case, will cost huge.

Let us have a look at how a poor translation can affect the following areas:

Research and Development

Regular and proper tracking of competitor activity or gathering information from published patents is vital when it comes to research and development, IP portfolio maintenance & monitoring, or the support of patent licensing & commercialization activities. Keeping in mind the budget constraint, companies sometimes take the help of free translator tools. This results in poor patent translation, missing important details and can finally lead to the business possibility to go off hand. Herein, lays the credibility and credit of an efficient translator.

Patent Prosecution / Filing

It involves translating prior art for domestic filings and patent applications for filing overseas to protect the IP of a company. Different countries have different filing costs, which in turn means hiring local patent attorneys from different countries. This leads to an overall increase in the cost of translation.

In the above scenario, it is better to take help of translation service specialist to save translation cost and obtain maximum protection against patent translation risks. A translation provider minimizes the cost and executes work accurately in required languages.

Patent Examination

You must translate the application such that it is understandable and clear for the examiners in their own language. Similar translation for a technical term is tough, thus it is necessary to hire an expert familiar to the professional terms and Patent applications.

Moreover, poor patent translation may lead to unnecessary office actions. Thus, increasing the filing cost.

Thus, you must consult the translators which are expert in their fields and have knowledge about related wordings/phrases to avoid unclear meanings.

Data about Competitive Patents

A number of companies keep an eye on the patents of their rivals to remain updated of their plans. You require a translation if the rival patent is filed in another country. However, you may use machine translation to save money, but it is inaccurate and may portray wrong information about the rival patent. You need a professional translation to get beneficial information about the rival patent and plan in accordance. Here, poor Patent translation may cost you a lot.

Post-grant Translation

Poor Patent translation can cause problems even after the grant. The translation may harm the scope and motto of the invention if the translator makes a different word choice other than the original one. You may find yourself stuck in a very unfortunate scenario where you gave a hefty amount of money for a patent that went in vain.

Business

A Poor Patent translation may damage the reputation of a company and present an offensive message to the cultural aspects if not kept in mind during the translation. The International partners may not indulge in business with the company if they find them unprofessional. Also, it may turn customers away from related products/services.

This may allow the competitors to jump in and lure your hard-earned customers. Moreover, poor Patent translation provides misleading data that may lead to legal actions against the company.

How to get a distinctive balance?

A translation is a human art, whether it be for information purpose, research and development, or a patent prosecution purpose. Thus, a translation by a human and that of a machine bears significant difference. So, working with a reputed translation service providing company may help the clients to get the best form of work. This would finally help achieve a long-term trusted relationship with the client with the service provider. Moreover, the value of a patent translation cannot be ascertained by mere monetary units. A poor patent translation can prove fatal leading to serious legal and financial outcomes.

Services at the Patent Translation Express:

Our professional team at the Patent translation Express is equipped with experts from various backgrounds. We excel in 100% customer satisfaction within a pocket-friendly price. You can place online results in various formats and expect a quick turnaround time. Moreover, we provide you free iterations to get what you want even after the services. You can trace your work progress at any time. Also, our team remains updated with the official rules and regulations and provides you the best output. We advise you throughout the process to present better and long-lasting results. To get a hold of more of our services, do visit Patent Translation Express.

1. **Patent Proofreading Benefits: The Best Five**

An experienced Patent drafter is aware of the patent proofreading benefits. As the way of a patent, drafting determines the grant of the patent. A patent may become useless because of the drafting mistakes. In worse conditions, the invention may fall under the public domain which makes it impossible to patent again. Thus, it is important to draft a patent carefully.

There is always a chance for unwanted errors even after working with full concentration. These faults may lead to patent rejection or granting of patents that are of no use. In these cases, we require patent proofreading.

Also Read: Patent search types ‘The Major Eight’

Patent Proofreading:

Patent proofreading is the last but the most important step in the process of patent drafting. You must proofread the patent draft before finalization. It helps to pick out the errors made unwillingly, for example, spelling mistakes, improper use of articles, formatting errors, skipped points, etc. Thus, it eradicates any harm that the errors would have caused.

Patent Proofreading Benefits:

Now, that you know what is patent proofreading and how it can be helpful in the process of drafting. In the following segment, we will discuss the top patent proofreading benefits, which are:

Construction of Claims:

Claims are the most important aspect of any patent. They define the limits of patent protection. Proofreading of claim checks missing references and ensures support for the specification of the claim. Also, it helps with omitting claims that are not definite.

Proofreading provides the claims with a definite structure that maintains a balance between what to disclose and what to claim.

Reducing grammatical errors:

Grammar plays an important role in providing definite meaning to a sentence. A single word may have different meanings based on the use of the sentences.

Proofreading ensures that the words used in a sentence provide a proper and clear meaning to the claim.

Moreover, the officials might reject the patent if there is an unclear meaning for the claim. Proofreading helps to omit grammatical errors and build precise claims.

Enabling the Invention:

Several times, a patent fails to enable the invention even after you mention the details thoroughly.

It is required that a person with ordinary skills must be able to understand and make the invention with the help of provided details. Also, failing this may lead to the rejection of the patent application.

Thus, proofreading helps to determine whether the draft qualifies for enabling the invention or not.

Stretch of the patent:

The patent draft decides the limits for patent protection. Proofreading helps to maintain the scope of protection for the patent. The scope must not be too broad, as it leads to increased chances of patent rejection. Also, it must not be too narrow that results in the patent being useless.

Technicality:

There are few certain technical formalities that you must follow to draft a patent. Proofreading helps to determine whether all the formalities are completed or not.

Any shortage of technical working may lead to application rejection.

How The Patent Proofreading Company serves you?

The Patent Proofreading Company serves you best when it comes to patent drafting services. We have our experienced Patent drafters to receive the work details online in .doc or .pdf format. Also, we provide you patent proofreading benefits via another qualified drafting team. The delivery time is within the assigned dates and you can also check the status of work anytime. Moreover, you can place your orders easily at very reasonable prices. To get a hold of more of our services, do visit The Patent Proofreading Company.

1. **A Comprehensive Guide for TESS**

Trademark Electronic Search System or TESS, is a search system of USPTO trademark applications. It includes submitted, registered i.e. LIVE as well as abandoned (DEAD) trademark applications. Before filing a trademark application it is pretty much wise decision if you go for a thorough search into the databases. This allows you to determine whether you should proceed with the current trademark or not. It eventually saves your time and expenditure on the procedures of the trademark application. The USPTO maintains the TESS database by updating and maintaining up to 3 million federal applications from the past 3 decades. But, there are no applications made before 1984.

Features of TESS

There are a few features that makes TESS an incredible search engine for Trademark related search. Here we are highliting those features:

The interface of TESS allows even a layman to easily perform a clearance search. By clearance search we mean, searching conflicting marks with the current trademark.

It allows you to search trademarks based on their various elements. These elements are the searchable piece of information. Design search Codes and Classes help perform an effective clearance search. An effective search is broad enough to find all the conflicting trademarks and narrow enough for evaluation of a manageable number of trademarks.

You can also narrow down the search results to a number of relevant trademarks. For this, you need to select various basic and advanced search tools to your benefit.

The procedure of TESS Search:

TESS allows a step-by-step comprehensive search of the USPTO database for registered and pending trademark applications. Here is the procedure of how you can conduct a trademark search in the database.

(Step 1) Visit the Home Page:

To reach TESS search engine visit the USPTO portal or directly type TESS on a search engine and visit the home page of TESS. This is how it looks like-Figure 1- TESS Homepage

Figure 1- TESS Homepage

(Step 2) Options of Search:

TESS allows three types of search options:

Basic Word Mark Search (New User): this system allows you to perform a search based on words in the mark, serial and registration number and/or the owner name. It is suitable for you if you are new to TESS as it is the most basic search option.

Word and/or Design Mark Search (Structured): if you are a novice TESS user then this system is suitable for you. It provides more advanced features as compared to the basic word mark search. It comes with an added advantage of constructing your own format of search criteria.

Word and/or Design Mark Search (Free Form): expert TESS users use this system of search and it is the most efficient search option. It gives you the advantage of conducting a personalized search.

(Step 3) Add Relevant Details:

As per the information that you have about the trademark. There are many basic and advanced functions like AND/OR help you to find more than one term. Moreover, you can conduct specific searches with ‘Result Must Contain’. Also, there are many advanced options like NOT, SAME, XOR or WITH for more specific results.

Benefits and Limitations of TESS:

This system comes up with various benefits of conducting a trademark search and at the same time, it has certain limitations to it. Advantages:

TESS is the official search engine of the USPTO database. It has the database of trademarks from the past 3 decades and covers both active and inactive trademarks.

The search engine has a user-friendly interface and provides different types of searching options for both basic and advanced search.

It so provides additional search options such as Browse Dictionary and Search OG options. The Browse Dictionary option lets you search all the fields in the database unless specified. While the Search OG searches the Official Gazette for marks registered or published on a particular date.

It comes with instructions for both basic and advanced search procedures.

Limitations:

Doesn’t cover all the trademarks i.e. TESS searches only the USPTO database. There might be another mark that your mark may infringe upon in some other database.

It can become a time-consuming task for an amateur conducting a trademark search. But once you master over it then there is nothing like it.

The clearance search doesn’t guarantee your trademark registration as a mark needs to meet various criteria put forth by the patent office (here USPTO).

What do we bring?

We at The Trademark Search Company, perform a comprehensive and easy trademark search and monitoring services. Our expert legal searchers ensure that your brand receives a unique trademark. A strict trademark watch by our expert team keeps infringers away. Moreover, we perform an active manual search on a global trademark database for more accurate outputs. Also, providing total customer satisfaction is of paramount importance to us. We take pride in having a quick-turn-around time for all the services. To know more, please visit The Trademark Search Company.

1. **Patent Search Affects Your Business: Learn How?**

If you’re a business then you’d want to make sure that you can freely develop/sell your products in the market. You need to understand how a patent search affects your business before thinking of getting any form of protection. You wouldn’t want to infringe on another entity’s intellectual property while creating a product. Hence, you must look for any prior art that can be potentially dangerous for you. Before patenting something, you want to make sure that your invention is novel by doing a patent search.

But, you need to be aware of the types of patent searches that exist. Consequently, each particular patent search affects your business in a different manner. This article will help you gain insight into the different types of patent searches and how they affect your business.

Related Article: Why is Patent Search important for Scientists and Inventors?

What is a Patent Search?

A patent search, also known as a Novelty search, is done prior to the filing of a patent application. This is done to find out if the invention in fact, new and original. Hence, the invention shouldn’t have significant similarities to the prior art. The patentability criterion for an invention to get a patent is that it should be new, useful and non-obvious.

The patent examiner will conduct the search during the examination to determine the novelty of the patent. The search will also check whether the invention complies with the inventive-steps and other requirements of the patent law.

When you file a patent application, you need to file an Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) as well. Basically, the applicant needs to disclose the relevant information found about the invention. Hence, you need to disclose all the information about any prior art that you find.

The examiner might miss some information while carrying out the search. The inventors are more aware of the relevant field of technology. Hence, the patent law puts the onus on the applicant to reveal everything they know about the invention. A patent search affects the amount of information you have that you would want to reveal.

Patent Search Affects your Business Plans?

During a patent search, documents from all previous patents and applications are taken into consideration. Along with this, the search also reviews research publications in journals, magazines, websites, brochures, books and research papers. Let’s have a look at the main focal points to understand how exactly a patent search affects your plans.

Keywords: The search is generally focused on a list of keywords that closely matches the features of the invention. The keyword should belong to the same technological domain as that of the invention. An inventor is obviously the best person to know about his product or invention. Hence, he can also build a set of prospective keywords for the same.

Early Detection: An unoriginal invention will be easily detected in this step and there won’t be any need of searching further. Any similarity, if found, might potentially require the inventor to modify the invention or drop the idea of filing.

The Search execution: After finalization of the search strategy, you conduct the search on patent databases to obtain the results. Apart from patent databases; you should review research journals, any academic documents or trade collections. A searcher can broaden his search further by expanding his/her search to patent databases all over the world. This involves different regions and languages, which broaden the scope.

The role of the Patent office: A patent office allocates a specific subject matter classification code to a patent application. The search strategy is constructed upon this classification. A classification searching is also a much-opted search method besides keyword search.

Related Article: Why Patent Information is so important?

In conclusion, a patent search affects your business as it uncovers any potential prior art. This can require you to modify your invention in order to draft a patent. In more extreme cases, you might have to drop the idea of a patent completely.

Learn Prior Art and Prior Art Searches in detail.

Freedom to Operate Search

This is also known as Clearance Search. You conduct the freedom to operate to determine whether the manufacturing/selling of a product infringes others’ intellectual property rights. Thus, the main motto of a clearance search is to establish that not infringe any other existing intellectual property rights.

How to overcome an adverse patent clearance search?

Sometimes exploiting a product can lead to infringing other’s existing intellectual property rights. However, it may be possible to negotiate a license or obtain an assignment of the patent. If a business doesn’t have a patent of their own, it’ll prove to be difficult to negotiate in situations of patent infringement. Hence the lack of a clearance patent search affects your position in patent infringement negotiations.

Patent Search and Freedom to Operate Search

A preliminary patentability search or an official patentability search does not include a Freedom to Operate or FTO search.

The term ‘Freedom to Operate’ essentially means the freedom of an entity while producing anything. The results tell you whether or not you can manufacture or sell a product in a particular country or jurisdiction. It also entails that you don’t infringe other intellectual property rights.

Differences between Patentability and Patent Clearance Search

Let us summarize the basic differences between a patentability search and a patent clearance search in the form of a chart below.

Every patent search affects your business. This will make it easier to decide which type of search you should go for.

Points of Differences Patentability search Patent Clearance Search

What is the search done for? To find out the novelty, non-obviousness of an invention or product Whether a product can infringe any existing IP rights

What kinds of documents are favorable? Documents available publicly-existing patent, patent applications, research paper, journals Only patents that are non-lapsed and patent applications

Which countries are covered? Documents from any countries will be considered This is for those particular jurisdictions where the product will be commercially exploited

What to do to overcome negative search results? Practically nothing can be done It may be possible to negotiate licenses to use patents located in the search

For any business planning to develop its own product must consider both the patentability search and patent clearance search in its first developmental stages. It’s wise to categorize the IP fundamentals in its initial stages rather than being forced to abandon a project in its terminal juncture.

Patent Invalidity Search

Sometimes, you might infringe on someone’s intellectual property. So, as a measure of self-defense, you can carry a patent invalidity search to declare the patent invalid.

In some instances, an examiner might miss out on some prior art. A patent invalidity search is a comprehensive prior art search which you carry out after the grant of a patent. This can prove to be paramount in a patent infringement suit.

This form of patent search affects any business with drastic repercussions. The result of the search can yield substantial evidence to invalidate a patent. Then, the patent holder’s time, money and efforts to acquire go in vain.

Need a professional for conducting searches? – The Patent Search Firm

Now a days patent search has become an important process before filing the patent. If you are looking to seek any assistance regarding patent search, The Patent Search Firm (TPSF) will guide you with the process. Our team of professionals are experts in conducting patent search globally. The Patent Search Firm (TPSF) helps you to take business decisions quickly and effectively. We, a team of professional experts provide world class services to our clients by minimizing office actions at optimal cost. We make sure that our clients are always two steps ahead of their competitors. The legal protection of the clients is our utmost priority. To avail our services, Visit The Patent Search Firm.

1. **Trademark Registration Cost in India – A Thorough Analysis**

While going for trademark registration in India, the brand owner should know the trademark registration cost in India. Also, the cost varies with selecting the mode for registration and various factors. A registered trademark is a distinctive mark which declares its ownership by a company for its products or services. Although not compulsory, registering your trademark with the Indian Patent Office has its own benefits. We will discuss those benefits and costs associated with registering a trademark in this article.

The Chief Benefits of Registering a Trademark

A trademark is not just a name or symbol. It is the very first source of identification for a company’s product and services. Along with this, it keeps perpetrators at bay who try to cast a shadow on your brand made with your toil and money expenses. All these benefits surpass the trademark registration cost in India. Following are the major benefits of registering a trademark for your brand:

Exclusive Rights: it gives exclusive rights over the trademark. Registering a trademark prevents others from using the same and similar marks under the same class of products.

Token of Trust and Goodwill: an established brand builds the trust of the clients. The products and services get identification and hence establish a market for the brand.

Differentiation and Recognition of Product: a trademark serves to identify your brand in a pool of brands. Moreover, a logo communicates your vision and quality of your company and keeps your customers stick to your brand.

Asset Creation: a trademark is an intellectual property and an intangible asset for an organization. A registered trademark gives the right to sell, assign, franchise or commercially contract the brand.

Infringement Prevention: your trademark is unique to your company. In case if anyone tries to copy your trademark or uses it without your consent, then he/she is liable to punishment. Thus, a trademark helps in to establish an exclusive image in the market.

 Global TM Registration: you can also go for worldwide trademark registration. Prior to this, your trademark registration in India will work as a basis for international registration. The national registration of the trademark prior to global registration helps in showing goodwill of the brand in the country.

Human Resource Attraction: your established brand helps not only attracting customers but also brings good candidates in your organization.Thus, this reduces the cost of hiring-related activities.

Trademark Registration Cost in India – A Detailed Analysis

The cost of filing a trademark application with Indian Patent and Trademark office is quite variable. This is so because it changes with change in various factors. One of the factors is the mode of filing i.e. the physical and e-filing modes. The fee structure varies quite drastically. Here is a detail on Trademark registration Cost in India as per the First Schedule- Trademark Rules 2017.

S. No. On What Payable Cost of Physical Filing Cost of e-filing

1 Application for registration of a trademark/collective Marks/Certification Mark /Series of a trademark for the specification of goods or services of one or more than one classes.

 Trademark registration cost in India where the applicant is an Individual/ Startup/Small Enterprise. ₹5,000 ₹4,500

 In all other cases (Note: Fee is for each class and for each mark). ₹10,000 ₹9,000

2 On a notice of opposition under section 21(1), 64, 66 or 73 or application for rectification of register under section 47-57, 68, and 77. Or application under rule 99, 103, 135 and 140. Or on application under section 25 of Geographical Indication of Goods (Regulations and Protection) Act, 1999. This is to invalidate a trademark or counter statement related thereto. (Note: Fee is for each class opposed or counterstatement filed). ₹3,000 ₹2,700

3 Trademark registration cost in India for renewal of registration of a trademark under section 25 for each class. ₹10,000 ₹9,000

a Application for renewal with a surcharge of registration of a Trademarks under section 25 (3) for each class. ₹5,000 Plus renewal fee applicable under entry 3. ₹4,500 Plus renewal fee applicable under entry 3

b Application for renewal with surcharge/ restoration and renewal of trademarks under section 25 (3), 25 (4) for each class. ₹10,000 Plus renewal fee applicable under entry 3. ₹9,000 Plus renewal fee applicable under entry 3

4 On an application under section 45 to register a subsequent proprietor in case of assignment or transfer for each trademark. ₹10,000 ₹9,000

a On application for Certificate of the Registrar under section 40(2), or for approval of the Registrar under section 41. Or Direction of the Registrar for the advertisement of Assignment without goodwill under section 42. Or add or alter a registered trademark under section 59(1) for each trademark. Or Conversion of the specification under Section 60 for each trademark. ₹3,000 ₹2,700

b On application for extension of time for applying for a direction under section 42 for the advertisement of assignment without goodwill. Or extension of time for registering a company as the subsequent proprietor of trademarks under section 46(4). Or the consent of registrar to the assignment or transmission of a certification trademark under section 43. Or Change a name and/or description of a registered proprietor or a registered user of a trademark under section 58 for each trademark. ₹2,000 ₹1,800

c On application for dissolution of association between trademarks under section 16(5), or change in address or address for service in India of registered proprietors under section 58 for each trademark. Or request for cancellation of an entry in the register or part thereof under section 58 for each trademark. ₹1,000 ₹900

5 Application under section 49 to a registered user of a registered trademark in respect of goods or services Or On application under clause (a) of sub-section (1) of section 50 to vary the entry of a registered user of one trademark where the trademarks are covered by the same registered user in respect of each of them Or On application under clause (b), (c) or (d) of sub-section (1) of section 50 for cancellation of entry of a registered user of one trademark Or On notice under rule 95 (2) of intention to intervene in one proceeding for the variation or cancellation of entries of a registered user of a trademark (Note: applicable fee is for each mark) ₹5,000 ₹4,500

6 Trademark registration cost in India for a request for search and issue of a certificate under rule 22(1) ₹10,000 ₹9,000

a Trademark registration cost in India request for an expedited search and issuance of a certificate under rule 22 (3) Not Allowed ₹30,000

7 On application for: Extension of time or Certified copy, or Duplicate Registration Certificate. Or inspection of the document, or Particulars of advertisement to the registrar. Or seeking grounds of decision of Registrar, or Enter in the register and advertise a note of certificate of validity under rule 127. Amendment in the trademark application, or Particulars of advertisement of a trademark to Registrar under rule 41. ₹1,000 ₹900

a On application for deposition of regulation of collective trademark under section 66. Or alteration of regulation of certification trademark under section 74 (2). Or seeking registrar preliminary advice, or for the division of an application. ₹2,000 ₹1,800

b On application for review of Registrar’s decision, or Petition (not otherwise charged) for obtaining registrar’s order for any interlocutory matter in a contesting proceeding or any other matters not covered in other TM forms. ₹3,000 ₹2,700

c On request for an expedited certificate of the Registrar (other than a certificate under section 23(2) of the Act). Or certified copies of the documents under proviso to rule 122. (Note: for entry in respect of each registered trademark or for each document). ₹5,000 ₹4,500

d On an application under rule 34 for the expedited process of an application for the registration of a trademark.

e Trademark registration cost in India where the applicant is an Individual / Startup/Small Enterprise. Not Allowed ₹20,000

f In all other cases (Note: fee is for each class and for each mark). Not Allowed ₹40,000

g Request to include a trademark in the list of the well- known trademark. (Note: applicable fee is for one mark only.) Not Allowed ₹1,00,000

8 On application for registration of a person as a trademark agent under rule 147 & 149. ₹5,000 ₹4,500

a For continuance of the name of a person in the register of trademark agents under rule 150 for every five years. Payment made on or before 1st day of succeeding financial year. ₹10,000 ₹9,000

b On application for restoration of the name of a person to the register of trademarks agents under rule 153. This is within 3 years from the date of removal of registration. ₹5,000 Plus continuation fee as mentioned in entry number 20. ₹4,500 Plus continuation fee as mentioned in entry number 20.

c On application for an alteration of any entry in the Register of trademarks Agent under rule 154. ₹1,000 ₹900

9 Trademark registration cost in India for handling fee for certification and transmission of international application to International Bureau with MM2(E). Not Allowed ₹5,000

Why Choose Us?

Your trademark is the keystone of your brand. It brings credentials to your company which it deserves. Your trademark is as unique as the products that you offer. Hence, searching that unique trademark for you should fall in the right hands. At Your Trademark Team, you will find experts with a deep understanding of Indian and Global Trademark Laws. We not only offer trademark search services but also, trademark filing/registration services in India and also worldwide. Along with this, we guarantee you a quick turn-around-time, so that you don’t miss any deadline. We do take care of trademark registration cost in India and as well as for global filings. Not only this, we provide unlimited iterations and professional services for complete trademark lifecycle and even beyond.

1. **Everything You Need To Know About USPTO Trademark Filing (And Bonus Tips)**

USPTO Trademark Filing is the process through which an entity protects its brand design by preventing others from copying it. If you don’t protect your brand properly, then anyone can steal or copy your design and confuse potential customers. You wouldn’t want another organization to profit from your brand name by misusing it. In order to seek protection for your brand, you must file an application for a federal trademark with theUSPTO. So it’s crucial to understand the entire procedure of the USPTO Trademark Filing to secure protection in a seamless way.

This article will help you understand all the key points about the USPTO Trademark Filing procedure. We’ll also be giving some bonus information to keep in mind while creating a trademark.

Scope of Trademark Protection

Before we explain the USPTO Trademark filing procedure, let’s first understand the scope of coverage of a trademark. A trademark covers various types of elements that an entity typically uses for brand recognition. These elements include:

Name of the brand/product/service.

The phrase that the brand uses as a tagline.

A unique word that the brand associates its product/service with.

Any symbol that sets the brand apart in its domain.

A design that is the creation of the organization.

A device that an organization may create to set it apart in its domain of service.

However, you cannot just trademark anything. According to the government, the subject must be distinctive and it should set the brand apart such as a logo. So, choose your mark wisely and ensure that it stands out.

The USPTO Trademark Filing Procedure

1. Trademark Search

The very first step in the trademark filing procedure is conducting a trademark search. This is done primarily on the USPTO’s Trademark Electronic Search System (TESS).

Fig1. The TESS homepage

The USPTO will not register your trademark if it appears to be too similar to a pre-existing trademark.

You should also check your state’s database if possible, to expand the scope of your search. This is because sometimes entities don’t get a federal trademark but they protect their product/service through a common law trademark. A common law trademark doesn’t require registration, and hence, it doesn’t exist in the USPTO database but offers similar protection. Therefore, it’s a good idea to perform an internet search for similar items in your domain to avoid any infringements.

2. Check for Potential Conflicts

After obtaining your search results from TESS, you should check the status of any potentially conflicting application or registration. This can be done through the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval (TSDR) system.

Fig2. The TSDR homepage

After comprehending the entire situation, you should analyze whether it makes sense to seek registration.

Note: You should understand that once you file the application, you cannot cancel it. The only way the application stops is if it doesn’t meet the necessary requirements. There is no refund available either so you must be absolutely sure before filing the application.

3. USPTO Trademark Filing

Once you are sure of your mark’s originality, you can go ahead with the filing procedure. You have to file the application online with the USPTO using the Trademark Electronic Application System (TEAS) portal. You can choose from 3 applications to fill, namely:

TEAS Plus: This form comes into play when you:

Can communicate with the USPTO through email about your application and file forms through TEAS.

Furnish all the important information when you submit your application (also known as a complete application). Check out the TEAS Plus filing requirements.

Accurately select your goods/services from the Trademark ID Manual.

2. TEAS RF: Use this form when you:

 Can communicate with the USPTO about your application via email and file forms through TEAS.

Don’t want to use the ID Manual or you don’t possess the important information to complete all of the necessary fields in the TEAS Plus form.

TEAS Regular: This form comes into play when you:

Can’t communicate with the USPTO through email about your application and file certain forms through TEAS, the online application system.

The ID Manual does not contain an accurate listing for your goods/services.

Don’t have the information needed to complete all of the required fields in the TEAS Plus form.

Fig3. TEAS applications

The filing process is pretty direct, but you need to provide an extensive amount of information. This information includes contact information like name, address, and phone number. These particulars are very important because the USPTO will utilize it to ask any questions that they have during the application process. There are other requirements like:

Classification of the type of items that will be attached to the mark

A replica of the mark, either in the form of a drawing or image

Image of goods with the design present, if applicable

Explanation as to why a trademark is necessary for the entity

Once all of the information is given, and the form filling is complete, you simply need to sign it and submit it.

Do’s and Don’ts while creating a trademark (Bonus Information)

DO’s

You can boost your trademark application by ensuring it has a strong, distinctive mark. For example, an amalgamation of two words that portray the product or explain the brand is unlikely to pre-exist.

If you’re trying to trademark a shape or logo design, render something uncommon, something that doesn’t come in frequent use in everyday life.

Make at least 2 back up designs for whatever mark you create. Chances are, you may find a similar mark for your item while conducting the trademark search. So it is better to keep yourself ready with more ideas in the pipeline.

Consult professional help to be absolutely certain about your mark, right from the search to filing the application.

DON’Ts

Don’t use generic identifiers as they won’t make it through the approval process. For example, words of daily use like ‘cars’ are not a wise option. This is because it’s already in use on a daily basis as a descriptor for a variety of companies. Such a mark would be impossible to enforce, so the USPTO is likely to reject it.

Ensure that your mark doesn’t contain any of the following:

Offensive language or targets an individual/group

An individual’s name or likeness

Exists as a movie or novel title

Uses a geographic description

Generic non-English term

Need Professional Assistance for USPTO Trademark Filing? – The Trademark Filing Company

Your brand name carries a lot of weight and importance to your company. Copycats can confuse customers and damage your brand. Therefore, it is absolutely crucial to secure the necessary protection to prevent that from happening. You’ve already seen that the USPTO trademark filing process is not always the easiest of tasks. Therefore, if you wish to take professional aid, The Trademark Filing Company can help you. We focus on protecting your business identity from copycats. Our expertise lies in providing gold-standard trademark data and our team boasts years of experience in trademark filing. However, we don’t stop there. You cannot worry about your trademark 24/7, so you can also use our trademark monitoring services.

1. **How to select a Patent Drawing Illustrator? Qualities to look out**

When it comes to rendering illustrations for your patent application, hiring a patent drawing illustrator should be your plan. The USPTO has a lot of guidelines and regulations for the drawings and it is crucial to get them right. This is why you should turn to a patent drawing illustrator. But how will you know if the illustrator you’re hiring is an experienced one? A lot of entities are into the illustration business. These include individuals who are just starting out and also some big companies which have been in the industry for years. The primary difference comes in terms of costs, quality of product and professionalism. You need to consider these aspects when you hire a professional. Let’s talk about this in greater detail below so that you can make the best value for your money.

Related Article: How does a patent illustrator add value to your patent application?

Top Qualities of a Patent Drawing Illustrator

1. Knowledge about Latest Rules and Regulations

The USPTO has a set of drawing rules which you need to follow for all your illustrations that go with a patent application. Hence, you must ensure that you follow these guidelines like the Bible. Right from the dimensions of the sheet you produce the illustration on to nomenclature that you need to use.

A good patent drawing illustrator will ensure that all your drawings are up to the mark and are following these guidelines. Consequently, the illustrator needs to be up-to-date with the latest technical specifications. You can check that by requesting samples from the illustrator so that you can judge their work.

2. Specialization and Versatility

A good patent illustrator often specializes in one field to ensure the quality of products. They might offer illustration services only for specific types of patent applications.

For example, an independent illustrator might just cover utility patent applications. That way, you have an assurance that this entity focuses only on one service. Hence, it will be of better quality in comparison to others who claim to offer a huge variety of services. But this is not necessarily true. You should always check the quality of work the illustrator has done in the past before making a call.

On the other hand, an entire team of professionals working together can prove to be versatile. Having multiple people with varying specializations boosts the company’s image and promises to offer a better quality of service.

Check out some of our sample patent drawings here.

3. Computer and Hand-made drawings

You may have certain preferences about the choice of tools the illustrator uses while creating a drawing. Sometimes, inventors want the drawings to be hand-made because of their belief in the authenticity of such drawings. There is nothing wrong with hand-made drawings, as long as they serve the purpose of describing the invention completely.

The benefit that comes with a computerized drawing is that you can make changes easily and duplicate drawings easily. This reduces the time and resource consumption from the illustrator’s end. It also offers higher precision because a computer is likely to be more accurate in contrast to a human. But this is dependent on the skill of the patent drawing illustrator and his/her experience. Ideally, an illustrator should be proficient in both methods and should have skills in a wide variety of drawing software applications. This helps with his/her credibility and understanding of drawings.

Related Article: Hiring Good Patent Illustrators Vs. Do it yourself (DIY) with Patent Drawing Software

4. Vision and Technical Understanding

This has to be perhaps the most important characteristic in a patent drawing illustrator. The inventor will try to give a complete description of the invention so that the illustrator can render an accurate illustration. However, the illustrator needs to be receptive and should have the vision to understand the invention as well. In case there is a lack of communication or understanding between the inventor and the illustrator then the results may not be optimum. A good illustrator will ensure that he/she understands the intricacies of the invention and replicates it on the drawing sheet.

5. Turnaround time vs Quality

A good patent drawing illustrator should keep striking the right balance between the turnaround time and quality. Sometimes, clients require the illustrator to meet tight deadlines. However, to meet them, the illustrator shouldn’t compromise on the quality of the work he is providing. The entire process turns out to be a waste of time if the quality of the drawing is not optimum.

Convinced to hire an illustration service? – Professional Patent Illustrators

You may have a brilliant invention, deserving of a patent. But by now you already know how important it is to hire the right professional. Professional Patent Illustrators boast 10+ years of experience in delivering top quality patent illustrations. Moreover, we specialize in Utility patents and design patents, with thorough knowledge of the latest guidelines and norms. Our turnaround time is incredibly fast and we guarantee any number of iterations until we satisfy your needs.

1. **Sequence Analysis: Things to Avoid**

 With the advent of molecular biology and biotechnology, it is now possible for professionals to perform sequence analysis of such compounds. Scientists carry out sequence analysis for Nucleotides (DNA, RNA) and Amino acids (proteins) found in various biological systems. Once they get to know the sequence of these chemical compounds, they can now correlate its structure with its biological and physical properties.

Sequence analysis is widely applicable in the field of drug manufacturing, textiles, fertilizer, and pesticide manufacturing. Also, sequence analysis becomes a major part of Non-provisional patent applications (plant patent).

These domains require manufacturing new organic molecules every now and then. However, if you don’t know the basics of doing sequence analysis it may appear simply characters of a foreign language. Thus it is important that only experts who have prior knowledge of sequence analysis to carry out this process.

Sequence Analysis: Things Not To Do!

With this article, we are going to share some important things that you should avoid while doing sequence analysis. Avoiding these could help you do a sequence analysis in a better and fruitful way.

Use of Annotation Data: Annotations are a kind of metadata used in a specific portion of a document to add additional historical contexts to the text. These annotated data are the goldmine of knowledge and if utilize them thoroughly these could be of immense purpose. While doing sequence analysis it is important for searchers to analyze each and every annotation produced with each search result. Moreover, you can find annotated data in various fields of a document including bibliographic references and date of earliest publication.

Use of various data forms: the advent of computers and web made the gathering of data in a matter of clicks. However, we must accept the fact that there is a world beyond internet which is more rich and resourceful. When we deal with the matters of patenting, it is important to search through these resources as well. These resources include books, newspaper articles, journals, etc.

Use of redundant and old data for reference: patent databases are very dynamic as entries keep on changing with the passage of time. We need to make up to date searches and rely on data that is current. Using redundant and obsolete data could become detrimental to our overall goal.

Also Read: How To Conduct Patent Search: A Quick Guide

Use of stagnant database algorithms: A patent search is all about utilizing patent databases to its maximum potential. More familiar you are with a database, the better the output. Since every database uses a different algorithm, it is important for searches to know the basic algorithms of the database.

Important Nucleic Acid and Amino Acid Databases

There are certainly important and up-to-date databases related to nucleic acid and protein databases. These databases are quite reliable and updated from time to time for rationalized information. To name a few:

International Nucleotide Sequence Database Collaboration: it is a joint database for both DNA and RNA sequences. It collaborates with multiple databases including- DNA Data Bank of Japan, GenBank (USA), and the European Nucleotide Archive (UK).

EMBL (European Bioinformatics Institute): it is the world’s first nucleotide sequence database, situated in Germany. It started as a computer database od DNA sequences to supplement sequences submitted to journals. But, later on too up major genome projects and grew invisibility, and the data became much more relevant for research in commercial sector.

Protein Data bank: is a worldwide database for 3-D structural data of large biological molecules, such as proteins and nucleic acids. They obtain the structural data with the help of X-ray crystallography, NMR spectroscopy, and cryoelectron microscopy and submitted by biologists and biochemists around the world. It is freely accessible on the internet through the websites of – Protein Databank in Europe and Japan; and RCSB.

Our Search Approach

Sequence analysis is a tedious process indeed. It not only involves searching various databases but also, digging deep into each and every relevant biological sequence. But, whatsoever a thorough search is inevitable. But not to worry, you can always take help of experts with years of experience in such searches. We, at The Patent Search Firm, have 100+ full-time searchers with 8+ years of experience in this domain. The searches carried out are from relevant and authorized databases. You can find our samples for biological sequence searches for your reference. This is not it; we also provide patentability search, invalidity search, patent landscape analysis, chemical structure research, and many more related services. To know more do give a visit, to our service page.

1. **PCT patent Filing: All That You Need to Know**

Seeking patent grant in international jurisdictions is no longer a cumbersome task with the introduction of PCT filing system. PCT aids in the international filing of patent applications in various countries that fall under the arena of the treaty. PCT or Patent Cooperation Treaty is an international agreement between 152 contracting states. With its introduction on 24 January 1978, a person can perform international filing from a single receiving office.

With this basic background knowledge of PCT, let’s move onto the Elements of PCT application. Later we will also discuss the procedure of PCT filing and prosecution.

Elements of PCT application for filing:

There are certain basic requirements that comprise a PCT application. Here are those elements and in the order in which they are present in the application. So, if you are looking for what comprises a PCT application, do go through it.

Request: it is a petition for international application. The request form has 10 boxes It contains the following elements:

Title of Invention: the title is the main heading of the invention. The preferred word-limit for the title is 2-7 words when in English or translated to English. Fill the title in Box I (1) of the request form.

Applicants and Inventors information: name (Surname and then First name) and address details identify an applicant and/or inventor. Where the applicants is a legal entity or a corporation then mark the check-box “applicant only”. Along with this do provide some contact detail, as in telephone number, e-mail and/or facsimile number. Information of the applicant and inventor(s) are part of Box II (2) and III (3) respectively.

Agent or common representative: add the details of the agent in the Box IV of the request. Otherwise a separate document “Power of Attorney” signed by the applicant. Do mention the contact and address details of agents the same as in the case of Applicant and/or inventor.

Designation of States: for the applications filed after 1 January 2004, filing automatically constitutes the designation of all the contracting states. But, Japan, Republic of Korea and Germany are not a part of the automatic designation process.

Priority Claim and Restoration of the Right of Priority: an applicant can claim priority of an earlier application filed in or for another country in some other convention or for a member of World Trade Organization (WTO) that is not a part of PCT. It serves to seek a priority date for the current application.

International Searching Authority (ISA): sometimes 2 or 3 ISAs are eligible to carry out the international search, in this case, the applicant indicates one ISA chosen by him/her in Box No. VII (7).

Declarations: the applicant can declare any of the following declarations:

-Regarding the identity of the inventor.

– Applicant’s entitlement as at the international filing date, to apply for and for grant of patent.

– Applicant’s entitlement as at the international filing date, to claim priority of the earlier application.

– Declaration of Inventorship (Only for USPTO).

– Regarding Non-prejudicial disclosures or exceptions to absence of novelty. Box VIII (8) incorporates the declaration part of the request.

Checklist: Box IX (9) comprises the checklist. It allows the receiving office to verify if all the documents constituting the international application are present.

Signature of Applicant or Agent: the applicant signs the request form in the BOX No. X (10). An agent hired can sign the form if the application generates a separate “Power of Attorney”. Also, sign the request form in black ink and indicate the name next to the signature.

Notes to request form: facilitate the completion of the request form. They provide a description as to what each box of the request indicates and how to make them.

Fee calculation sheet: helps in calculation of the total amount of fee payable to the patent office. Annex it right after the form as it is not a part of the request form. 3 types of fee are payable within 1 month of filing- Transmittal fee, International filing fee, and search fee.

Description: this part discloses every detail regarding the invention in a clear and complete manner as produced by a person skilled in the art. Starting with the Title as mentioned in Box 1 of the request form. Also, it comprises the technical field of the invention, Disclosure of Invention, Description of drawings and industrial applicability. Additionally, the applicant and/or inventor can add sequence listing where applicable (eligible for both electronic and paper format filing).

Claim(s): draft the claims in a clear and concise format. Also, the content of claims must match with that of description. Also, write them in 2 distinct parts- first the statement of the prior art and secondly the differentiating features for which protection you are seeking protection.

Abstract: it is a brief summary of the descriptive invention. It serves the purpose to assist scientist, researchers and other people holding knowledge in the field. Draft it in English with word length ranging between 50-150 words.

Drawing(s) (if any): Drawingsin the utility patent help in better understanding of the invention. Add different views of the drawings and always present them on different sheets.

Points to Remember:

Number the sheets in Arabic numerals. The date on the right of the priority application is also in the Arabic language with day, name of month and year, in that order.

Language of filing depends upon the jurisdiction of the receiving office. Some offices allow choosing between 2 or more languages.

The procedure of PCT Patent Filing

The PCT procedure works on the same lines as for national patent filing but it also differs to some extent. This basically involves 2 phases- International and National Procedure.

Filing Patent Application: the very first step involves filing an application in the local patent office to receive a priority date. After this, file an international application with a PCT receiving office within 12 months from the priority date. Through the receiving office, the application enters into international phase. Here receiving office is a national, regional patent office or you can directly file an application to WIPO. Keep in mind the PCT guidelines while filing a patent application.

Note: if there are multiple patent applicants belonging to different jurisdictions they can file the application in one of the jurisdictions of the PCT convention countries.

International Search Authorities (ISA): conducts a detailed search of the published patent applications and technical literature for the current invention. Thereafter, the ISA forms a written opinion and generates an international search report (ISR). This takes place within 16 months of the priority date.

Publication: the very next step is the publication of the International application, written opinion and the International search report (ISR). The International Bureau of WIPO carries out this procedure. Publication of the invention takes place within 18 months from the priority date.

Supplementary International Search Report (optional): you can generate an additional international search report by another International Search Authority. This report is completely optional and is not a compulsory part of the basic procedure. This authority produces an International Preliminary Report on Patentability. If required, make the request within 22 months from the priority date.

International Preliminary Examination (optional): on request of the applicant an international search authority (of his choice) generates a preliminary examination report. If required, make the request within 22 months from the priority date.

Communication to the regional patent office: this involves the submission of the following documents to the respected patent offices:

International Application

International Search Report and written opinion

Supplementary International Search Report (optional)

International Preliminary Report on Patentability (optional)

National Phase: at this point, the patent application reaches the national phase i.e. in the regional offices of the selected jurisdictions. Here, the applicant needs to fulfill the requirements put forth by the respected regional offices in the prescribed duration. This involves payment of fees, providing translations and appointment of an agent (where required). Application after entering the national phase is prone to rejection by the regional patent offices. This happens if you fail to bring complete documents and/or don’t meet the basic legal requirements of their jurisdiction.

Note: apart from the PCT procedure, you can go for direct application to different patent offices of International jurisdictions. Also, you can go for Paris Convention for international protection of your Industrial Property.

You cannot file an international application for purely ornamental design patents.

Why Choose Us?

Although through PCT patent filing system international filing has now become a cakewalk. But still one needs to meet all the requirements of the patent offices, be it the international or national phase. If you are looking for help from professional patent drafters, then we are here at your service. We at The Patent Filing Company, have a team of professional patent drafters holding experience of more than 10 years. We provide our services for both national and international patent applications at pocket-friendly rates. To know more about services, please visit The Patent Filing Company.

1. **Significance of Patent Proofreading**

The award of patent largely depends on well drafting of the patent application. Patent proofreading is a method to check all the major and minor errors to rectify and create an accurate patent draft. A drafter can make mistakes at any point while preparing the draft. The major parts include the invention description, drawings, and claims. Also, errors can take any form; this includes grammatical errors, incorrect figure or drawing, typographical error and/or incorrect claim numbering. Therefore, patent proofreading falls at the final stage after preparing the draft. Since we perform proofreading after complete draft preparation.

Errors however minor can affect the enforceability of the patent. Moreover, it is only on the applicant to rectify all the errors made by the applicant and the PTO. Hence, you as an applicant or with the help of patent proofreading paralegals should thoroughly proofread your draft before moving further.

Patent Proofreading: Why is it so significant?

The success of patent grant depends on the quality of the patent application. The major significance is to extract out the errors and prepare a filtered and accurate draft. It majorly helps in:

Reducing office actions and timely patent grant: drafting of patent specifications determine the enforceability of the patent. Hence, always consider drafting patent specifications accurately, this will make the application sail smoothly through the process of prosecution.

37 CFR 1.323 relates to the issuance of a certificate of correction for the correction of errors which were not the fault of the Office. But, there are some mistakes in a patent application which are not correctable by a certificate of correction. There is a possibility of their correction via filing a reissue application.

A reissue application is the same as the original application. Also, it complies with all the rules and requirements of the rules relating to a reissue application. For patent applications filed before September 15, 2012, follow rules as per 35 U.S.C. 251 and 37 CFR 1.172, 1.175, and 3.73. For current provisions follow 35 U.S.C. 251 and 37 CFR 1.172, 1.175, and 3.73.

Common reasons for reissue applications are-

Too broad or too narrow patent claims;

Incorrectness in information disclosure;

If the applicant fails to or incorrectly claims foreign priority;

When an applicant fails to refer or incorrectly refers to any prior co-pending application

Saving patent application from complete rejection: mistakes made while drafting the claims can lead to a complete rejection of the patent application. Moreover, mistakes can delimit the scope of the claims. On the other hand, vague and incomplete specifications change the meaning that the invention conveys.

Note: Even if proofreading is a laborious task, but is very much vital to acquire a patent for your invention. Also, it requires technical and legal understanding at the end of the proofreader for detailed and reliable proofreading of the draft.

Also Read: US Patent Proofreading – with USPTO Best Practices

Essential Elements to Consider while Patent Proofreading:

These are some of the basic yet important sections that make up a patent application. Also, these points are subject to examination by the examiner at the patent office. Do consider them while drafting a patent application.

S. No. Element Name Description

1 Inventor’s Information Inspection of the inventor’s and/or applicant’s information before filing the patent application.

2 Claim Construction Claims define what we are seeking a patent claim for and proofreading helps to remove ambiguity so that it doesn’t hamper the scope of the claims.

3 Grammatical Errors Proofreading removes the grammatical errors. Furthermore, it makes the meaning of sentences more clear so that the draft conveys the information that it wants to convey.

4 Patent Drawings Proofreading of patent drawings helps to sort the complex explanation of the drawings.

5 Technicality To prevent hampering the technicalities of the invention requires thorough proofreading of the patent draft.

 Also Read: Why You Should Not Avoid Patent Proofreading While Filing Patent Applications? to learn why patent proofreading is unavoidable.

What do we bring?

Our professional proofreaders leverage the enforceability of your patent draft by identifying the errors of omission and commission. We provide a comprehensive report that identifies the errors and also the correction suggestions and a Certificate of Correction (if required). Our most trusted professionals perform a multi-step quality check and ensure quality assurance and 100% data security and confidentiality. To know more about services, do visit the Patent Drafting Catalyst.

1. **Patent Monitoring Services: Track Your Patent**

Patent monitoring is the process which keeps a continuous track on the updates of the patent application. This is not all, it also tracks your patent to avoid patent infringement. Patent monitoring services also focus on monitoring of the new patent application to prevent any illegal use of your invention. These services regularly update their clients and notify whenever there is a possibility of infringement. The monitoring also keeps a track of each activity of the patent application such as patent publication detail, legal status details, etc. There are certain patent monitoring services available which are as follows:

Patent Monitoring Services: Essential elements:

Different activities require a different kind of patent monitoring services. These services keep hold of every possible patent application for the benefit of the clients. These services include:

Competitor Watch:

Competitor Watch tracks the latest publication of the competitors. This allows one to track the IP activity of their competitors and also the future R&D strategy. The frequency of watch could be on a weekly or a monthly basis to monitor the patent updates. It also helps in determining the key focus area for research in the future.

Related Articles: Significance of Patent Watching

Legal Status Watch:

The legal status watch means to monitor the legal status of the client’s patent application during the prosecution stage. So, it helps to update the client with any amendments such as office actions or fee payments. A legal status watch is also useful for clients who like to search for abandoned or expired patents in a particular domain. This ensures that they are free to use that technology without any legal risks.

Technology Watch:

Technology watch tracks the newest innovation in a specific field of client’s interest. It can further perform a quality analysis of the patents to identify business operations. Effective technology watch service allows clients to determine areas of research or analyze the growth in any technology.

Patent Infringement Watch:

Patent infringement watch monitors products which can potentially infringe the client’s patent. There may be companies present that can directly affect one’s business by using their invention directly or indirectly. To keep a watch on them and track their activities, patent infringement watch becomes important. It ensures that no one can use the patented technology or invention of someone already having the legal rights of it. So, no one can claim unfair business practices.

Related Articles: PCT Patent Filings: All that you need to know

Design Watch:

A design watch is also important patent monitoring services. As the name suggests, it monitors the design of the product to avoid infringement. It keeps track of the design of new products of potential competitors. It helps one to ensure that the competitor’s product design isn’t similar to that of their client.

Why Choose Us? – The Patent Watch Company

It is very essential for one to make sure that no one else is using his invention, thus affecting his business. So, it becomes very important to go for patent monitoring services. If you are looking to seek any assistance regarding these services, The Patent Watch Company (TPWC) is your one-stop destination. We possess extremely skilled professionals who boast years of experience in this domain. TPWC covers numerous technology areas checking 100+ monitoring tasks every week. We monitor patent/non-patent literature in 100+ countries. Our team also monitors general activities like product launches, investments, litigations, etc. The client’s legal safety is our first priority and we aim to provide 100% satisfaction to them. For more information, Visit The Patent Watch Company.

1. **IDS Filings Timeline and Procedure: Must Know**

IDS filings involve jotting down all the known prior art. But why is it important?

Information Disclosure Statement or IDS is proof of your honesty and authenticity of your invention. IDS filings only include those related prior arts which you are aware of at the time of filing. You don’t need to conduct a special prior art search at the time of filing.

Disclosing already known prior art to the USPTO gives you a clear-chit on the validity of your invention from your side. Therefore, it is important to file IDS within the correct time period. Also, it is mandatory to prepare structured IDS by meeting all the requirements of the Information Disclosure statement.

Not filing IDS on a timely basis will cause abandonment of your application. Hence, it is important to know the correct timelines of IDS filings.

Timeline and Process for IDS Filings

37 CFR 1.97 states the process of filing Information Disclosure Statement with the USPTO. The requirements are in compliance with CFR 1.98 USPTO. Below is the correct time span within which you can file IDS to save your application from abandonment.

Within 3 months from the filing date of national application

Within 3 months of the date of entry of the national phase of an international application.

Before mailing of the first office action.

Before mailing of the first office action after filing a request for continued examination.

In a period of 3 months of the date of publication of the international registration under Hague Agreement Article 10(3). This is in case of an international design application.

You can file IDS within the above stated time periods or you can also file it:

Before mailing of the first office action or notice of allowance or any other action which otherwise closes prosecution. Accompany the IDS form with these following statements in this case:

A set of a fee.

And either of the following statements:

Each item present in IDS is already a part of communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application. This is not more than 3 months of the filing of Information Disclosure Statement.

No item of information present in the IDS was present in communication from the foreign patent office in counterpart foreign application. This is not more than 3 months of the filing of Information Disclosure Statement.

Note: IDS filings doesn’t replace a prior art search. Hence, the patent examiner still conducts a prior art search on his/her end to ensure the novelty of the invention.

Attach the following three documents with IDS form:

Transmittal Letter: indicates the contents of submission, including fee if applicable.

Foreign Reference: cited by the examiner or by the applicant originally and is viewable in IFW.

Non-Patent Literature: Document code indicating Non-Patent Literature (NPL). Either the applicant submits it or the examiner.

 QPIDS – A solution for late prior art discovery

In case if you find a prior art after the issue fee payment, USPTO has a way for you. The full form of QPIDS is Quick Path Information Disclosure Statement. Through QPIDS certification, you file a petition to withdraw from issue after payment of the issue fee and a request for continued examination. In this case, it is known as the Conditional Request for Continued Examination. It is quite convenient to file QPIDS as you can file it through EFS-Web (USPTO’s online portal).

There is only one condition that the addition of the new prior art should not necessitate reopening of prosecution.

File IDS with SmartIDS Solution

Your patent application is majorly incomplete without an Information Disclosure Statement. You see timelines are important at the time of IDS filings. And also the efforts that take to prepare a structured IDS. If you ever feel the necessity of taking IDS filing services, you can eliminate all your IDS related worries with SmartIDS solution. You will find expert professionals delivering you smart and convenient IDS filing services at reduced rates and turn-around-time. Do make a little inquiry to know more about our services.

1. **Things to Do Before Patenting Something**

With the advent of patent regimen, inventors can now monetize their ideas by knowing the facts before patenting something. Inventors now know that there are certain things to do before patenting something like a design, or utility of the process machine or product. However, the criterion is not limited to mere serving the purpose. There are many other factors of patentability to look at to ensure that the invention is commercially viable. Also, the inventor needs to do some common but important things which every invention owner should do before patenting their invention.

What to Know Before Patenting Invention:

Given below are few points of strategic measures, you take before filing a patent application. These actions will give you more clarity regarding your invention and will reduce any hassle on later stages of patent filing. We will go through each of these points one by one.

Prior art Search: before you even think of investing your money on patenting an invention does the comprehensive patent search. This is to ensure that your invention is novel and you are simply not reinventing the wheel. Apart from this a complete prior art search also helps you avoid infringing on someone else’s patent. This, in turn, saves you from incurring a hefty sum of money. Try to do a search which is complete in nature wherein, one uses various fields, keywords, and databases that are of importance. For example, the USPTO Patent Database. Though a person can perform this search on his own, taking assistance from a professional patent search firm is a better option. This is because patent filing involves a hefty sum of money. A small error can prove detrimental to your goal.

Develop the Prototype: if your invention is not a utility patent and is an article of manufacture then one should come up with a prototype. A prototype gives an idea that all the components of the article are in place and its functionality is intact. It becomes important because at latter stages of patent filing you can’t make any amendments.

A Thorough Market Research: the ultimate goal of your invention is either to manufacture something or use it as a utility. Whichever may be the case, it is important to assess the underlying market. Market research is all about that, we assess whether there exists a viable market for that product or not. One needs to define the geography of the market, consumers of the product, competitors who are already working in that arena, etc.

Cost to manufacture: this is the last but most important thing that we need to do before patenting something. Without assessing the cost to manufacture it might become a money pit that may cause heavy monetary loss.

Note: Consider taking patent drafting services before patenting your invention/discovery for a considerably smooth prosecution and timely patent grant.

Inventions Patentable Requirements of USPTO

This is in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 101 of USPTO. Anyone who invents or discovers any new and useful process, the machine, manufacture, or composition of matter, or any new and useful improvement thereof may obtain a patent. He/she is subject to the following 4 patentability criteria:

Whosoever invents or discovers an eligible invention can file only one patent therefor. This forms the requirement for double patenting rejections due to the identical subject matter.

The inventor(s) must be the applicant in an application filed before September 16, 2012, or otherwise provided in pre-AIA 37 CFR 1.41(b). Add the names of each and every inventor in the application filed on or after September 16, 2012.

Third, the claimed invention should meet the 2 criteria of subject matter eligibility before patenting something. These include-

The claimed invention should fall under the category of process, the machine, manufacture or composition of matter.

The claimed invention is a patent-eligible subject matter, encompassing the criteria of novelty, non-obviousness, and non-disclosure.

The claimed invention is useful, have utility that is commercially viable, specific, substantial and credible.

In a nutshell, we can say that you need to remain vigilant both before and after filing something. If you bring the above-mentioned points into practice, they will majorly help you through the patent prosecution process. While ignoring the above-mentioned facts could make your whole attempt an exercise in futility.

Why Choose Us?

Only a quality invention wins the patent grant. Therefore, before patenting something an inventor should assure himself that what he/she is seeking patent protection for is really worth it. Also, conducting a thorough patentability search surely helps. Taking care of these factors might become a cumbersome task. Therefore, it is always beneficial to seek the help of professionals with good experience. We, at The Patent Search Firm, help our clients with assured patent search services.

1. **Benefits of knowing the Patent Proofreading Importance**

A Patent grant depends on the understanding of Patent specification and Patent proofreading importance. Mostly, a successful patent application depends on how you draft the patent specification. Thus, it is necessary to draft a patent professionally. The Patent specification determines the scope of protection for the invention. We all are aware of the important role of a patent specification for patent grant. So, you must draft the specification with most caution and care. However, man is prone to making errors. As a result, you are left with unwanted errors even if you draft the specifications with utmost care. These errors may result in the rejection of the patent application. A single mistake may make the invention available to the public domain. You require patent proofreading to avoid these circumstances. In this article, we will try to understand the patent Proofreading importance.

Patent Proofreading Importance:

Patent proofreading is the most crucial step in the complete process of patent grant. You must proofread the patent draft after finalizing it. Proofreading helps in correcting the unwanted errors that you may have made during the drafting process. You may understand the patent proofreading importance with the following points:

Claims Construction:

Claims are the most crucial part of any specification. They mark the scope of protection that a patent provides. Here, proofreading identifies the missing claims and ensures proper support for the claimed specification. Also, it clarifies definite claims and omits the indefinite one. Moreover, proofreading provides a definite structure to the claims and maintains the harmony between the disclosure part and the claims part. Professionally drafted claims increase the chances of patent grant.

Also Read: Jepson Claims- Know the Importance

Grammatical Accuracy:

Many people consider Grammar as an insignificant part of the patent draft. However, grammar changes the whole perception of a sentence. A single word may own two different meanings. It depends on how and where you use the word. Thus, Patent proofreading ensures that every sentence in the patent draft remains unequivocal. You must form concise and clear sentences to avoid confusion and patent rejection. Moreover, proofreading aids in eradicating grammatical errors and creating a precise and correct draft.

Enables Invention:

Enabling an Invention means the description of the invention must allow a general person to understand and remake the invention easily. Many times the patent draft discloses the invention thoroughly, but it is possible that the disclosure is not an enabling invention. Hence, it may lead to the rejection of the patent application. Thus, patent proofreading helps in determining the disclosure of the draft as enabling or not.

Patent Scope Determination:

The claims in the patent draft determine the extension of the boundary for patent protection. Patent proofreading ensures that the patent protection boundary is neither too broad nor too narrow. As increasing the scope may lead to patent rejection and narrowing the scope results in a non-beneficial patent.

Technical Formalities:

There are a lot of technical formalities that you must perform in order to draft a patent application. Thus, Proofreading is important for the patent draft to maintain technical adherence. Also, the patent office describes certain technical rules that are necessary for a patent draft. Here, proofreading ensures that all the technicalities are performed.

Feedback from the Patent database of the USPTO:

You may take the example of the following research data to realize the Patent Proofreading importance. Among the 1600 Patents issued by the USPTO (United States Patent and Trademark Office):

Out of all the issued patents, 98% were incorrect.

There is at least one mistake in every US patent as per the research.

The USPTO made mistakes in over 50% of Patents.

More than 33% needed a correction certificate.

Approximately 2% of the Patents had serious mistakes that were enough to spoil the original claims.

Need Assistance? The Patent Proofreading Company

The Patent Proofreading Company is a team of highly skilled illustrators that master their fields. We help you throughout the process of Patent grant. You only need to submit the patent application number and other related documents in a .pdf or.doc format. The moment our team gets your documents they start proofreading your application with respect to the official guidelines. Also, another experienced patent drafter cross-checks your application for any minute error. We provide all this within the deadlines and quick turnaround time. Moreover, you may trace the status of the work in progress anytime and ask for iterations. To get to understand more or our services, do visit The Patent Proofreading Company.

1. **Advantages of Getting Patent in India**

“What are the advantages of getting patent in India?” This is a question that is bound to cross your mind when you’re analyzing if your invention is worth patenting. A patent is an exclusionary right that a country’s government grants to an inventor. You must ensure that your invention is in fact novel, non-obvious and has an industrial application to get a patent. However, patent registration is a time consuming and relatively expensive affair. You may think, “if the acquisition of a patent is tedious, then why is it worth it?” A patent offers many privileges to the applicant, because of which only the applicant gets ready to make such investments. Bear in mind that an applicant is not the same as the inventor. Only the applicant gets to exercise the rights that the patent entails.

There are certainly a lot of privileges that you can enjoy if you own a patent. Let’s go through some of the key advantages.

Do you know who can apply for a patent in India? Click here.

Benefits of getting patent in India

1. Perks of filing the application early

If you’re sure about your invention, then you should file a patent application immediately. India follows a first to file system. So whoever files the application for an invention first, gets a priority date. You need not even file the complete application if your invention still needs a bit of work. Instead, you can file a provisional application, which is inexpensive and short to summarize. You have an assurance that nobody can claim the same invention within a pendency period of 12 months from the priority date. You must file a non-provisional application with complete claims and description within these 12 months. If another entity tries to file the same invention after your filing date, then the patent office rejects their request.

Want to know the types of patent applications in India? Click here.

2. The gift of exclusivity

After you receive your patent grant, it enables you to do anything with the invention. It allows you to stop others from copying, manufacturing, selling or importing the invention without your consent. If anyone tries to use it, then they’ll be liable to legal action in the form of patent infringement. This is applicable throughout the entire lifespan of the patent. For India, the tenure of a patent is 20 years from the date of filing. Having complete protection on the back, you can do anything with the invention. Amongst a lot of other benefits, you can improve it even further to optimize the solution that it is providing.

3. Generating ROI after getting patent in India

Naturally, your invention will have a commercial application. Now it is up to you whether or not you want to commercialize it. You would want an ROI on your invention since you have put in time, effort and money into it. So you should study your market well, and plan out a good way to release and sell your invention. This way, you generate monetary benefits out of your invention and still retain its exclusive rights.

4. Generating ROI through licensing or selling the invention

After getting patent in India, there are chances that you might want to sell or license the patent. Sometimes, commercializing the invention on your own can be a burden. So you can license another organization to use it. This way, you generate an ROI by taking money for the license and also retain your rights. You can also sell it off to another entity or organization for a suitable monetary amount. But this will cause you to lose the rights for your own invention.

5. Safeguarding good market status

Disclosing the invention in public domain signifies that you are confident about your invention. This helps you to attain a good public impression and enhance your portfolio. You will attract leading business partners, investors, and shareholders towards you or your organization for doing business. With such a strong image in the market, you will have more negotiating power in your hand for your invention. In India, this also helps in building a good relationship with competitor firms. This will ultimately encourage small firms to participate in the industry as well.

About “Your Patent Team”

The entire patent registration process requires a lot of investment in terms of time and money. It also requires a fair amount of knowledge about market scenarios, patent laws, and its competitors. It is safe to say that the process is anything but a straightforward task. If you wish to take professional assistance, get in touch with us. YPT is a team of 225+ technology/industry experts who speak the inventor’s language and have a deep understanding of Indian & Global Patent Laws. YPT utilizes its knowledge in patent prosecution and patent enforcement to draft patent applications, ensuring maximum enforceability and cost saving. We have an in-depth understanding of the working style of all 4 patent offices in India and also have a good network with them to ensure expedited and accurate information.

1. **Patent Claim Drafting: Major Principles**

A patent claim is that part of the patent specification which defines the boundaries of patent protection. Patent claim drafting is the details and claims of the invention which one needs to furnish while filling the patent application. They form the base of the protection of the patents. In a way, claims create the boundary line which one cannot cross otherwise it will result in patent infringement. The patent claim draft is the first and an important part of a patent application that the examiner reviews.

Essentials of patent claim drafting:

It is important for one to understand the concepts of the invention to begin patent claim drafting. One should remember to draft the patent claims broadly without adding unnecessary information. The scope, characteristics, and structure of the invention must be very clear from reading the claims. Some of the important points to remember while patent claim drafting is:

Writing a basic patent claim:

Every claim has three sections- the preamble, the transitional phrase and body of the claim. The preamble is the first part of the claim. The preamble states whether the claim is for an apparatus or a method. To write a preamble for apparatus, the claim could start with “An apparatus for making a mark on a writing surface”. To write a preamble for method, the claim could start with “A method for making a mark on a writing surface.”

The transitional phrase is the “comprising phrase”. One can use three different types of transitional phrase that is comprising, consisting of and consisting essentially of. You always want to use the “comprising” transitional phrase, as it gives the broadest protection.

Everything after the transitional phrase is the body of the claim. The body of the claim defines the elements and limitations of the claims.

Also read: Patent Filing: Know How to Proceed

Special claim language:

Special claim language consists of two parts. They are means plus function and functional language.

Means-plus-function:

A means-plus-function limitation is a way to claim multiple embodiments in a patent application very quickly. For example, let’s assume that the patent application describes multiple ways of attaching a part to a base. One can claim the various ways of attachment as “means for attaching a part to a base”. By doing this, the phrase is broad enough to encompass all ways of attaching the part to the base.

Functional language:

A patent claim in many instances includes functional language. Although functional language does not provide patentable weight to the claim, it provides context to the claim as a whole.

Also read: Patent Translation Risks: What & How to Avoid?

Technical specification of the invention:

It is one of the most important steps of patent claim drafting. The technical area or the field of the invention refers to the broad area of technology under which the invention falls. One should mention a statement that gives a broad definition of the domain that relates to the invention. Also, importantly one needs to shed lights on the other unknown technical aspects of the product in the patent draft. The invention should be placed in its setting by specifying the technical field to which the invention relates. It is possible by mentioning the prior art portion of the independent claims in full by simply referring to it.

Patent drawings:

One of the best ways to enhance any disclosure in a patent draft is through quality patent drawings. It is one of the ways to make sure that the application is covering major aspects of the invention. The drawings can also help one to make up for the written disclosures. Sometimes, they are detailed enough to cover the missing aspect of the invention. Thus, it would be good if one includes drawings while patent claim drafting in the patent application.

Also read: Patent Drawings: Key points to remember

Alternative use of the invention:

The biggest challenge for inventors is to think about all the possible ways in which one can use the invention. It is very important to cover all the aspects and variations of the invention which can prove to be helpful in the future. If there seems to be an alternative use of the invention, it must also be added in the application. Even if the invention is intended for a different purpose in the future, one must include it in the patent application.

Why Choose Us? – Patent Drafting Catalyst

 If you are looking for a patent claim drafting or seeking any assistance, Patent Drafting Catalyst (PDC) is the way to go. PDC is an exclusive group of the world’s leading patent drafting experts. Our team has more than 100 employees drafting quality patents. PDC is a team of professional experts who serve clients globally with our team helping innovators in drafting the patents. PDC has an in-depth understanding of drafting patents and have the ability to leverage the power of collaborative patent drafting. Our team of experts boasts years of experience in patent drafting and will provide you with the best possible solutions. Ethics is the first priority of PDC and our professionals will guide you in the right direction. We ensure that the legal rights of our clients are safe. To avail our services, Visit Patent Drafting Catalyst.

1. **A Career Guide for IP Paralegal Jobs**

IP Paralegal jobs require you to assist the clients in legal formalities related to the Patent, trademark and copyright laws. Also, you must perform several tasks including researching, drafting of legal documents, trial preparations and filing for a patent or trademark registration. However, an Attorney would supervise your work and provide you the directions. On your behalf, your job is to assist the attorney in the research, preparation, and analysis of the legal documents. Moreover, you are not allowed to provide any sort of legal advice to the client.

At the IP Paralegal Jobs, you may work with an IP law firm or the legal department of any company to manage the IP.

 Career Requirements for IP Paralegal Jobs:

You must possess certain attributes in order to apply for the IP paralegal jobs. There are a few of the points below that you may work on to get the job. They include educational qualification, work experience, skills required, etc.

Attributes

Description

Degree

An associate or a certificate program

Field

Paralegal or legal studies

Certification

Voluntary

Experience

1 to 5 years of IP experience

Required skills

Strong reading and writing comprehension/communication skills

Fine research and organizational skills

Keen knowledge of word processing software

Earnings

An average yearly income of $48810

Also Refer: Patent Paralegal vs Attorney: The Differences You Must Know

Paralegal Training:

Most of the law firms and legal departments always prefer applicants that own a paralegal degree. The degree programs for associates are 15-24 months long. They provide complete training in criminal and civil law, litigations, research, and legal writings. However, the Candidates that own a bachelor degree may access the certificate in less time. Generally around 14-28 weeks of the complete study.

You must attend only approved program. The employers prefer only those applicants who attend an approved program by the American Bar Association (ABA).

Moreover, you must try to focus on IP coursework. The student must select the training or degree that features relevant specialty if he plans to specialize in intellectual property. Also, some of the paralegal programs do not offer any IP courses, thus the student must find one that features IP law.

Certification Requirement:

Although the certification is voluntary, the employers always prefer the paralegals that own the certification from a well-recognized professional paralegal association. There are 2 well-renowned paralegal firms that certify paralegals who fall within their educational, skill and experience requirements:

NALA (National Association of Legal Assistants)

NFPA (National Federation of Paralegal Associations)

Also, there are regional associations that provide paralegal certification. It is very helpful for a job applicant to obtain certification as it proves that the applicant is qualified for the job. It also makes the applicant more preferable in front of the employer.

Moreover, the IP paralegals may follow the current trend of the community where they want to work. As this research may help them to decide the certification that they want to pursue.

Gaining Experience:

A number of paralegal programs never feature coursework in Intellectual Property law. Also, the program does not provide in-depth education even if they feature coursework in IP law. Thus, the Paralegal is left with the only option of learning this area of law on the field during the job.

Moreover, the paralegal must work with a company that deals with a vast diversity of legal areas. It helps the paralegal to gain enough experience to join an IP law firm or any legal department.

The experience required is between 1 to 5 years.

The paralegal must take full advantage of every opportunity of working with IP cases and enhance his IP knowledge while pursuing the job.

Further Studies:

You must take continuing education courses in order to prolong your paralegal certification. There are a number of continuous legal education courses that the bar association and paralegal association offer for the paralegals. A paralegal may develop his specialty in the IP law after successfully completing these education courses. Also, it provides very beneficial credentials that you may mention in your resume.

You must acquire paralegal training, obtain certificates, gain experience and continuing education in order to secure a good career in the IP Paralegal Jobs.

Want Professional paralegal services? – Patent Paralegal Force

The main concern of any technology-based company or R&D is to keep a watch on their emerging competitors. We help you with patent application monitoring and also alert you at the same time. Our firm owns an experienced team of paralegal professionals and state-of-the-art tools. Also, we deal with the services like docketing for multiple countries, data verification end-to-end IDS management, patent proofreading, document procurement and even preparing and filing forms. Moreover, at present, we serve clients of 45+ countries and assure 100% satisfaction within a budget-friendly price. You may have free iterations and regular work updates too. To get a hold of more of our related services, make sure to visit the Patent Paralegal Force.

1. **Design Patent Drawing Requirement – Important Points to follow**

Design Patent drawing is the visualization of the design of the Invention. They include details such as shape, texture, physical property, outline and surface characteristics. For a design patent, the drawings are the equivalent of the soul of the application. You must ensure that you include accurate drawings in your design patent application. These will not only boost your chances of securing patent protection but also protect your invention from infringements.

There is certain Design Patent drawing requirement that you must consider while filing a design patent application.

Design Patent Drawing Requirements

USPTO has set some strict rules regarding the design patent drawings.

The figures on the Patent application should contain only black and white lines.

There is a separate patent that is filed whenever the applicant wants to use a colored drawing or colored photographs. This Patent should include the Patent filing fees and 3 set of photographs as well as colored drawings.

The basic views that are required are front view, top view, bottom view, rear view, left view and right view. Perspective views are helpful in depicting depth, 3D shape, and physical properties.

The Patentee should be very careful during the shading part. He\She should properly categorize different surface properties with different shadings. The examiners should be able to easily differentiate between open areas, solid areas, rough planes, and smooth planes.

Focus on the drawing of the Invention only. There is no requirement of adding extra details other than the Invention. This just makes your drawing more complex.

For example, if the Invention is on a new improved mouse design of a computer, then we don’t have to show other computer parts as well. We should only focus on the Drawing of the mouse.

Also Read: Patent Watch: Why Do I Need It?

Significance of Design Patent Drawings

You must complete the Design Patent drawing requirement to file a Design Patent application. The Design patent application contains a minimum amount of written description and major illustrative part are the Design Patent drawings.

The applicant needs to insert all the possible views in the drawing to give clarity to the mechanism and working features of the Invention. It makes the Patent examiners understand the Invention clearly.

Thus the chances of Patent application getting accepted are high.

The reason to choose us

The Patent drawing is the most crucial factor for Patent application process and everyone wants it to be perfect. This is only possible when you seek the help of Professional of the field or an expert.

Here, at TPDC we are always ready with our skilled technical teams and professionals to get you out of similar problems. We are a trusted organization since the last decade for 100% customer satisfaction.

We complete your Design Patent Drawing Requirement along with the Utility Patent drawings. A quick and accurate way to get a Patent is right here. For further enquiry please visit The Patent Drawings Company.

1. **How to Avoid Trademark Infringement Successfully?**

Trademark infringement means the use of a trademark, which some other person, business, or organization owns, without authorization. A trademark is a design, symbol, mark, word or phrase that serves as an identifying symbol for a product/service. Getting a trademark for a product/service grants exclusive rights from the USPTO to the trademark owner. This legally prevents any other person, business, or organization from using it in their name. So how do you avoid trademark infringement? Let’s find out.

What classifies as a Trademark Infringement?

You know that trademark infringement is commercially using an existing trademark that belongs to another entity without authorization. However, to file a trademark infringement suit, some things must be true:

The mark is valid and eligible for legal protection.

You must own the mark to claim the infringement

The infringement must relate to the sale or advertising of goods/services by another entity under your mark.

Trademark infringement can be possible for both types of trademarks: Federal and Common Law Trademark. A federal trademark gives you more geographic coverage, i.e All over the USA. While a common law trademark offers protection within a local area. However, it’s important to understand that BOTH types offer equal rights. Apart from the geographic coverage, there is no additional benefit in terms of rights for federal trademarks. Also, check out Basic Facts About Trademarks.

How to avoid trademark infringement?

You should always avoid infringing on a trademark because that can have serious consequences. One successful way to avoid it is by performing an extensive trademark search before deploying your mark. This simply means to look around and check, whether the symbol is already in use by some other entity. You search the USPTO databases to check if a similar trademark exists or not. Find out how to conduct a trademark search. However, not all trademarks are federal trademarks (i.e they are common law trademarks). This means that they will not exist in any USPTO database. Hence, you also need to conduct various internet searches for similar trademarks because they might still exist. So you need to steer clear of them as well. It is not a compulsion, but highly advisable to hire a professional to perform this search.

Consequences of Trademark Infringement

Trademark infringement can lead to very serious consequences for the infringer. Let’s have a closer look at them:

Sanctioning of cease and desist letter: The actual or lawful owner of the trademark can issue a ‘cease and desist’ letter to the infringer. This letter is basically a prelude to litigation. It’s a document that informs the infringer about the infringement. The document includes information about your trademark like its domain, date of issue, etc. The intent is to make the infringer stop using the same trademark or to change their trademark. This might result in a positive response from the infringer and he/she agrees to stop using the same trademark. There can be a possibility that the infringer simply ignores this notice letter and continues to use the same trademark. In that case, the lawful owner proceeds to take legal actions.

Sanctioning injunction: The lawful owner can ask for an injunction letter against the infringer. An injunction is an order that the court sanctions against the infringer to warn to stop its usage. This even includes asking to destroy and seize any goods or products that have the same trademark immediately. The infringer has the choice to either stop its usage or continue with the same trademark and face further legal consequences.

Order to pay back the monetary damages: The court can ask the infringer to pay monetary damages that occur to the original brand from the trademark’s illegal usage. This includes paying penalties, such as loss in sales due to illegal infringement and usage. It can also include the future advertising costs that the owner would need to invest to enhance its sales again, etc. The penalties may differ depending upon whether the infringement made is intentional or unintentional. If the infringer is of using the trademark knowingly, then he may have to pay even three times the amount.

Order to pay attorney’s fees: If the violation lawsuit fails to settle the infringement, the court may order the infringer to pay the owner’s attorney’s fees as well. This may incur the infringer to pay a lot of money since the trademark field is too costly. The attorney can also demand any amount he/she wants to fight the same case.

Damage to your own business: Once an infringement is found, the customers may no longer recognize the infringer’s brand with the same reputation. His/her sales might take a big hit. He/she may even have to start over a new business with a new name or maybe with a different trademark.

Want to avoid trademark infringement? – The Trademark Search Company

By now, you know 2 things clearly: Avoid infringement on a trademark and do a trademark search to avoid it. It is advisable to hire a professional for conducting this search. If you do, consider The Trademark Search Company. Our team TTSC offers an exclusive and descriptive guide over which trademark search service will be appropriate for you. We shall determine this on the basis of the size of the firm and client’s requirements. We have a skilled and knowledgeable team of young professionals who can provide the best in time services. Still not confident? Here, have a look at our free sample search reports! To make an inquiry, reach out to us on The Trademark Search Company.

1. **Patent Docketing Jobs – Opportunities at your Doorstep**

Patent docketing jobs are open to those intellectuals who have a passion for organizing and maintaining things. Docketing involves calendaring important tasks and legal deadlines. Also, it is a strict and efficient process, where a person handles multiple documents of different persons. Patent office deadlines are non-extendable and there is no scope to seek a remedy if you miss a deadline. Under such circumstances, accurate patent docketing comes into action for a strong IP prosecution system.

Patent Docketing Jobs – Education and Experience

To find and grab a patent docketing job one needs to have a strong background in the related arena. You can go for following courses to start and make a profound career in patent docketing:

With a diploma certificate of Intellectual Property Paralegal

Associate degree in Intellectual Property

Bachelor’s Degree in paralegal studies or LLB

Master’s Degree in paralegal studies or LLM

J.D. (Juris Doctor), Ph.D. (Doctorate in Philosophy) or Equivalent in Law and/or Paralegal studies.

One can start with their career with a diploma certificate (which is a minimum requirement) or can go till J.D. and Ph.D. Education got no boundaries!

Patent Docketing Jobs – Skills

The patent docketing jobs require peculiar skills for carrying out the tasks efficiently. An IP docketing specialist (also referred to as IP Docketing Coordinator, IP Docketing Database Administrator) need to have certain in-build or acquired abilities that will help in his/her day to day work activities. So, if you are looking for patent docketing jobs do ensure that you have or you must acquire these abilities.

Work in co-ordination with patent drafters

Strong observation.

Strong organizational and prioritization skills.

An eye for detail.

Ability to meet deadlines.

Solid data entry and word processing skills.

Is flexible and meets the changing requirements of attorneys, patent paralegals and clients.

Must know both- how to work in a team and independently.

Must have good verbal communication skills, excellent writing skills and an ability to work overtime.

Knowledge of computers and different operating systems and patent docketing software.

Able to handle large file-wrappers unassisted.

Patent Docketing Jobs – Job Description

You find patent docketing jobs in patent research firms and patent law firms. Therefore, a patent docketing specialist dockets incoming patent-related mails from the USPTO and other patent offices worldwide. Also, they route the mails to their clients and appropriate attorneys and/or paralegals for further action.

Since it is the responsibility of maintenance of documents; patent docketing specialists are responsible for maintaining IP databases with proper integrity.

Most importantly monitors all due-dates and meets the deadlines on time.

Monitors and de-dockets out-going patent-related mails directed to the USPTO, PCT (for international applications) and for individual foreign patent offices.

Other duties involve: copying, scanning and working closely with patent drafting team.

Also Read: How patent Docketing Works?

Who Offers Patent Docketing Jobs?

After seeking the relevant patent docketing knowledge and skills, it is equally important to know where you can apply them. That is, it is important to know who’s going to offer you patent docketing jobs. IP law firms, patent offices’ (USPTO), work with individual lawyers, Intellectual Property Research Firms, and IP cells for various organizations.

Salary Statement of Patent Docketing Jobs

Salary of a docketing specialist is majorly dependent on two factors- Educational background and Work Experience. Here we are going to discuss the salary band for patent docketing specialists based on the educational background as a determining factor:

Intellectual Property Docket Specialist with a High School Diploma or Technical Certificates $62,202 – $67,901.

IP Docketing Specialist with an Associate degree in Intellectual Property $62,202 – $67,901

Intellectual Property Docket Specialist with a Bachelor’s Degree in paralegal studies or LLB is $62,486 – $68,274.

IP Docket Specialist with a Master’s Degree in paralegal studies or LLM is $62,486 – $68,274.

Intellectual Property Docket Specialist with a J.D. (Juris Doctor), Ph.D. (Doctorate in Philosophy) or Equivalent in Law and/or Paralegal studies is $62,912 – $68,834.

Salary of a docketing specialist depends on experience as well, but, it is a variable criterion. Your salary can fall within these pay-bands if you hold an experience of 2-3 years and is also dependent upon the firm offering the position.

Why Choose Us?

Patent docketing is at the nitty-gritty of any IP law firm and various other organizations dealing with Intellectual Property. We at Perfect Patent Docketing hold an experience of more than 10+ years in this industry. We understand that patent docketing is at the very base and crucial to timely attainment of patent grant. With 100+ full-time drafters, we maintain a highly structural and operational patent docketing system. We assure you attainment of all the deadlines before-time. Also, you will get multiple iterations that too at budget-friendly rates. To know more, do give a visit to our service page.

1. **Invention Illustrator: Top Qualities to Look for**

When you want illustrations for your invention, hiring an invention illustrator is the way to go. You may feel that creating your own illustrations is a tedious task. So, you should seek an illustrator’s help.

Basically, an invention illustrator is the same as a patent illustrator. He/she can help you with your patent illustrations. Patent illustrations are a vital part of your patent application. Their job is to reinforce the quality of your work when you write a patent. They describe your invention better than long paragraphs of text can. The illustrations can be the difference makers in your application.

So, how does an illustrator add value to your patent application? Let’s find out.

Related Article: Why Should You Hire Good Patent Illustrators?

Top Qualities of an Invention Illustrator

When you hire an illustrator, there are certain qualities to look out for. You need to be certain about an illustrator before handing out your money to them. Let’s explore them.

Portfolio of Illustrations

A good invention illustrator will never shy away from showcasing their past works. If he/she cannot due to various reasons such as confidentiality, he/she should at least have sample illustrations ready.

A portfolio will help you decide if you can work with the person or not. The previous work will help you in judging his/her ability. After all, the patent process involves a lot of money as it is. You wouldn’t want to waste your money on illustrations that are not up to the mark.

You should read up about the latest patent drawing points by the USPTO so that you can check if the person follows them or not. Check out our Sample Illustrations here.

State-of-the-art Tools for Rendering

In the modern world, advancements in technology allow you to enhance the quality and accuracy of any work. Naturally, you would want to file your patent application with the most accurate illustrations. This would increase your chances of getting a patent.

The current state-of-the-art software includes CAD, Autodesk, SolidWorks, and Adobe. A good invention illustrator should be working on one of these to render illustrations.

Also, Read: Good Patent Illustrators vs Patent Drawing Software: Which one should you opt?

Turnaround Time and Quality

The modern-day technology provides you to work at a lightning-fast pace. Hence, it is up to the illustrator’s understanding of the software and experience which decides their turnaround time.

A good invention illustrator would ensure that he/she delivers their work at a quick pace. However, the swiftness in delivery of work should at no point compromise the quality of the work. After all, if the drawing contains errors then their will have to be more drafts to be made. This will prove to be counter-productive. So there should be no compromise on the quality.

Technical Understanding and Specialization

While working with patent illustrations, it is paramount for the illustrator to understand the technicalities of the invention. This requires one to have the relevant specialization in the relevant field.

Consider the following example. Imagine that you have an invention of a unique car engine. Certainly, a patent illustrator who has a background in automobile engineering would suit your needs better. He/she would understand the intricate parts better and would yield a great output.

Hence, it is important to also review the background of the invention illustrator.

Non-Disclosure Agreement (NDA) and Security

This is the last but certainly not the least quality to look out for. You obviously will have to disclose your invention to the illustrator to hire. What is the guarantee that he/she won’t misuse that information?

A patent process requires a lot of confidentiality and security. That is to say, you should be on the lookout and sign an NDA with the invention illustrator. But, if an invention illustrator offers one himself/herself, then it offers a sense of security.

Check out the Non-Disclosure Agreement we offer.

Need a Professional Illustrator? – Professional Patent Illustrators

You may have a brilliant invention, deserving of a patent. But by now you already know how important it is to hire the right professional. Professional Patent Illustrators boast 10+ years of experience in delivering top quality patent illustrations. We specialize in Utility patents and design patents, with thorough knowledge of the latest guidelines and norms. Our turnaround time is incredibly fast and we guarantee any number of iterations until we satisfy your needs.

1. **Some Important Patent Illustration Examples: Must Know**

The Patent Illustration Examples refer to preexisting or prototype illustrations that help to define an invention for the patent application. You must include a patent illustration with your patent application to define the design or working of the invention. Also, you must understand all the elements of a quality patent illustration. You must provide as many details as possible in the description of the drawing to secure a patent. Also, you must prove that your invention or design contains more advanced features than the existing prior art. Below, you can see some of the Patent Illustration Examples.

Folding bike

Pen needle magazine dispenser

Variable structure computer

Mobile unit locating system

Earbuds and in-ear adapter for earbuds

The patent illustrations add more details and value to your patent application. Also, they make the invention easy to understand.

The USPTO (United States Patent and Trademark Office) provides tolerance for omitting extra details but ignoring details is a big problem. You may omit features that are mentioned in the claims if they do not aid in understanding the invention. However, you must mark these features in the drawing using symbols.

When to consider the Patent Illustration Examples?

In case you are submitting your first patent application, the Illustration Examples of the prior art help you to create your own illustrations without seeking aid from a patent illustrator. However, you must have an idea about the layout of the drawing. That is, even if you want to hire a patent illustrator. You must know what to include, a number of illustrations to add, etc.

The Patent illustration is not just one drawing, but a collection of drawings that provide the in-depth details of the invention to the examiners.

Moreover, the basic reason to seek help from patent illustration examples is to find competitors among the market. It helps to draw the illustrations that are on par with similar inventions in the industry. The complexity of your idea defines the number of illustration examples you must view to get the desired illustration.

How do the Patent illustration examples help?

You may seek a lot of advantages if you take the help of illustration examples of the related art before creating an illustration of your own. It helps you to avoid simple mistakes and provide more professionalism to the illustration. Some of the advantages of using the illustration examples are:

You always get a new perspective about the usage of views when you use illustration examples of the relevant prior art.

They show how two-dimensional and three-dimensional patent illustration software is different when compared to freehand. It is simple for the artistically challenged to prepare illustrations in these programs.

You may even enhance a handmade illustration with the patent illustration software.

The patent illustration Examples may help you in creating the mechanical parts of the invention.

The illustration examples remind you about the necessary attachments for a patent description, for example:

Title

Background data

Prior Art

The usefulness of the Invention

Figures

Field

Invention Description

Intend to use: examples

Helps to prepare promotional strategies for interested manufacturers.

Providing a clear description of the invention to a third person.

A feeling of self-satisfaction while finalizing the illustration.

They play a vital role in avoiding infringement.

Common Mistakes

The most common mistake a Patent applicant does is not studying the illustration examples of the prior art before creating illustrations for his invention. Thus, it provides an upper hand to someone who studied and researched the relevant illustrations and your illustrations are left behind.

Another big mistake is not willing to spend a few amounts of money. You may pay a qualified patent illustrator for an illustration and use that illustration to create one of your own.

Why The Patent Illustration Express?

Our experienced professionals at The Patent illustration Express are always ready to solve your queries regarding the Patents. We have a team of experts that are in regular touch with the latest illustration rules and software. They provide you the best possible outcomes, covering all aspects in a pocket-friendly price. Also, we have a quick turnaround time with solutions providing 100% customer satisfaction. You may order online in various formats and can keep a regular watch over the work progress. Moreover, you may ask for changes anytime. To get a hold of more of our related services, don’t forget to visit the Patent Illustration Express.

1. **What are the Differences Between Provisional and Complete Specification?**

A provisional and complete specification is a very confusing aspect of the application. The level of precision a patent application needs might perplex you. Hence, it’s important to understand the difference between the two and the purpose both serve.

A patent specification is a document that explains your invention is very specific terms. That is, the domains in which you are seeking coverage for your invention. Hence, it needs to be highly accurate in its description. The two kinds; provisional and complete specification vary but essentially serve a similar purpose. That is, to describe the invention and its precise applicability.

So, what is the difference between the two? How specifically do you need to be with them? What are their requirements? Let’s find out.

Also, read: Patent Fundamentals

Provisional and Complete Specification: Their Purpose

Basically, a patent specification serves the purpose of describing your invention. The main difference in the provisional and complete specification comes with the type of application you file. You can either file a provisional application or a complete application. However, the difference comes in Form 2 where you need to fill out the provisional and complete specification section. Of course, it depends on the type of application you are planning to file.

Provisional Specification

You should file a provisional application if your invention is still in the development stage. A provisional application allows you to secure a priority date for your application. Consequently, you get a 12 month period to file a complete application from the date of filing a provisional application.

You need not describe everything about the invention. Basically, just a simple description is enough. There is no need to include drawings or claims in a provisional specification. However, it is highly advisable to describe as much about the invention as possible. But, this’ll eliminate any doubts and you will have a stronger foothold in terms of the protection.

In conclusion, a provisional specification does not need to be very elaborate. The main idea of a provisional application is to secure a priority date.

Complete Specification

You should file a complete application when your invention is complete in a holistic sense. The complete application will enlist every single detail about your invention. From its components to its applicability, everything needs a precise description.

Basically, the more elaborate your description, the better your chances are of registering a patent. Therefore, inclusion of drawings is absolutely necessary and the claims need to be highly specific. Also, you must ensure that you clearly state the components of your invention, what its applicability is, and what its future scope is. Consequently, this will ensure that your IP rights are secure and safe.

If your specification is comprehensive, then it will discourage other entities from infringing/opposing your application at the time of publication.

Also, check out the Manual of Patent Office to gain more clarity on the procedure for writing the specifications.

Provisional and Complete Specification: Structural Differences

Chapter III, Section 10 of the Indian Patent Act explains how to structure the contents in a patent specification. Consequently, you must prepare a complete specification in a format as provided below.

Title of the invention,

Preamble,

The field of the invention,

Background of the invention,

Objects of the invention,

A brief description of the figures,

Statement of the invention,

An elaborate description of the invention,

Claims,

Abstract

A provisional specification also needs to follow a very similar format. However, it need not include the statement of the invention and the claims. Furthermore, the preamble also varies for a provisional and complete specification.

Need help in drafting your specification? – Your Patent Team

It is clear that you need to be careful when drafting both the provisional and complete specification. Hence, from grant of a patent to avoiding any infringements, you must make sure that your draft is top-notch. If you need professional assistance, consider Your Patent Team. YPT is a team of 225+ technology/industry experts who speak the inventor’s language and have a deep understanding of Indian & Global Patent Laws. We can also help you with industrial design registration. We also offer many other IP services from IP commercialization to IP strategy support to help you decide the best level of protection for your invention.

1. **TM Monitoring – Why and How to Perform**

TM monitoring or Trademark Watch is an important step once you acquire a trademark for your company. It is a precautionary measure that keeps your Trademark secured from infringers. People by now know the centrality of a trademark for a brand. It is difficult for a brand to survive without a trademark in the current market. A trademark in the form of an image/symbol and/or a peculiar name works as an instant source of identification for a brand.

Major Benefits of TM Monitoring

Your trademark is an asset that not only identifies your brand but also makes it legitimate and increases its market value. Customers identify your products by the trademark of your company. Therefore, the perpetrators out there try to infringe upon your trademark and try to sell fake products. This ultimately degrades the name of your authentic brand in the market. Think about all the efforts and investments made going in vain.

Hence, in order to maintain your credibility, time-to-time TM monitoring is important to prevent similar trademarks from coming in the market.

An efficient trademark watch ensures:

A global TM search for identifying counterfeit marks that might harm brand reputation.

Ensures that others are not using your brand’s symbol, name, color, etc.

Finds not only visibly but also phonetically identical trademarks.

Tools for Trademark Monitoring

TM monitoring is a way of keeping an eye on your unique trademark in order to maintain its enforceability. Therefore, only registration of the trademark won’t help if not followed by persistent trademark monitoring. For doing so many efficient tools are there to provide you with this service. These include:

AdWords: Google AdWords or AdWords Key Planner allows clients to scan terminologies. The Google AdWords relates to online advertisement whereas, the key planner looks for terminologies of the web traffic. First, look for the keyword in Google Adwords to see if anyone is using your or a similar trademark. The next step is to look for it in the keyword planner to check the number of individuals looking for your trademark.

Google Search: it is also an easy approach to find your trademark. You simply need to type your trademark in the Google search bar. If your trademark is a design, you can look for it on Google images. Although it is an easy approach, it will consume a lot of time for performing a thorough approach. Hence, you as an entrepreneur can go for a third-party professional help as this will save a lot of time and will provide trusted results.

Google Alerts: as the name suggests is a tool that helps you to set up periodic automated search results. It sends notifications on your email address whenever it comes across similar and/or new content that you are looking for.

TESS: the USPTO offers a search system known as The Trademark Electronic Search System or TESS. It is a computerized search system that enables you to perform trademarks search based on different variables. You can simply add terms and pictures to produce results. It is also a TM monitoring tool as strong as a Trademark Search tool.

Madrid Monitor: This System allows you to monitor International TM applications and trademarks that are already in use. Moreover, at Madrid Monitor, you can find simple, advanced, real-time and image search modes for complete search results.

TM Watch Services: last but surely not the least; you can handoff the TM watch to a trusted professional. In this scenario, a TM professional performs TM monitoring for you. Through this, you can save your valuable time and receive globally searched monitoring results.

Why Trust The Trademark Watch Company?

The enforceability of your Trademark is in the hands of trusted professionals at The Trademark Watch Company. Dedicated teams for TM Monitoring and TM search, provide you best of the services across the borders. We generate results in the form of computerized reports, sent to our clients to their registered emails. Customer satisfaction is of paramount importance to us. Hence, we provide quick turn-around-time with iterations for client gratification. You can also check the trademark search and monitoring sample reports at TTWC.

1. **Patent Docketing : Patent Application Process Management**

Patent docketing is a system that manages the Patent application process. It is necessary to use a docketing system as it is difficult to manage a large number of patent applications and data simultaneously.

Moreover, it helps to keep track of filing deadlines, due dates, drawings, drawings, and forms.

Most of the patent law firms hire a docketing specialist to manage the docket system. Also, it is a very crucial tool for law firms to maintain a record of patent applications.

Also Read: Secure Your Patent Drawings: Top 6 methods

Importance of Patent Docketing:

Docketing is a key aspect of the patent filing process. People who skip the docketing process tend to skip the deadlines and are unable to protect their patents. The charges to rework on a previously filed application are $1620 for big companies.

However, the chances of a client to work with the attorney are less, once he misses the deadline. Thus, the most important part of law firms is the docketing system.

The docketer must consider the following important points while patent docketing:

Must mention the prosecution and management related fees of the patent application in every portfolio.

He\She must realize the business value of the invention as it is directly proportional to the fees involved.

Normalization is necessary to maintain a regular workflow and update every patent application when needed.

Enhancing the data quality of every patent portfolio is also necessary. Hiring Docketers aids in reducing errors, storing documents properly, entering fee structure and due dates. Moreover, it helps the attorney to keep an eye on the deadlines.

The system must be flexible to some extent. The law firms must allow free text to put notes that explain the stage of the application process.

Also Read: Technical Patent Illustrator – Benefits of Hiring

Patent Docketing Procedure:

The Patent application process requires skilled paperwork. The Docketer must provide specific and detailed information. Some of the key points are mentioned below:

The portfolio must include the name of the client, contact information, invention, and its category, etc.

One should also mention fees due/paid, account number of the client and other related information.

Then the Docketer must scan the forms, drawings, and documents related to the application and add them to the portfolio of the client.

Moreover, on the basis of the current status of the client in the application process, officials announced the deadlines and due dates.

Selection of Patent Docketing Software:

A variety of software is available to manage the docketing of Patent, for example, Foundation IP, IP Manager, Patricia, Anaqua, IPendo, Inprotech, etc.

A few programs allow free text, such that the Docketer can enter any suitable information. On the other hand, other programs provide due dates to nullify manual procedures.

Some software has an audit log to determine the editing of a portfolio. Patent law firms must recognize all the possible software and choose the most pertinent option.

Moreover, one must use the docketing software with manual expertise for an efficient docketing process.

Why choose Patent Drafting Catalyst?

Patent Drafting Catalyst drafts the most enforceable Patents which are technically accurate. We present the desired outcome within the deadlines and that too in a pocket-friendly price. Our team of experts has an experience of 10+ years in drafting patents. Also, we have 100+ full-time drafters with high skills that draft 1500+ applications every year. Our main motto is 100% client satisfaction. To grasp more of our services, please visit the Patent Drafting Catalyst.

1. **How to minimize patent translation & filing costs?**

Patent translation & filing costs are generally very high because of the complexity and the time it takes to complete. They are two of the most crucial processes when it comes to earning a patent for an invention. The filing of an application requires a lot of technical knowledge, patience, and subject-specific skills. Hence, because of its complexity, you should invest plenty of time to frame it in the right technical way. The only thing which we could possibly work upon to change is its cost. Here we will focus on the various ways on how to minimize patent translation & filing costs.

Importance of Patent Translation & filing

According to the latest report by the leading IP magazine, translations hold about 50% of the total cost-share. Therefore, there is a need to learn and follow certain criteria by which you can reduce costs by a remarkable amount. But, while managing the budget, one must remember, that you must not compromise on the quality. You spend a huge amount of money on the patent translation and filing services. Compromising on quality would be pointless to save some a little amount of money. You should use strategies to make savings such that there is no change in the quality of the application. Later, you can use these savings in the expansion of your patent’s protection or its commercial application in other countries.

Related Article: Patent Translation and Filing Cost: How To Manage?

The end goal is to obtain the broadest, strongest patent portfolio in a variety of jurisdictions where meaningful business opportunities exist. Now, let’s look at some of the methods and tricks to reduce patent translation & filing costs.

Methods to Minimize patent translation & filing costs

Use of Prominent Languages for Translation

The language which a lot of people from different nationalities can communicate and understand is English. This means that you should first draft a patent in the English language. You can use this patent application in different countries where the patent office accepts English as an official language for patent applications. This would definitely save a lot of money. This method focuses on not having to use translation services and hence, saving a significant amount of money.

Another savings method is using one prominent language for translation where one translation will cover multiple countries. Consider, if you choose Arabic as the translation language, you can file the same patent application in the different Gulf States. These countries include Saudi Arabia, Kuwait, Qatar, and the UAE. Similarly, using Latin American Spanish as translation language could help you cover almost all the countries in South America.

Use Translations from existing patent applications

Another method to save the cost is to have knowledge about pre-existing similar patent applications. This will help in framing the current application since you can take most of the language from the previous patent. This will help you in cutting costs because you won’t have to translate the application from scratch.

For example, consider want to file a patent in Russian language and there happens to be another similar application. Then, it will be easier to use the existing work, to create the new application by using repetitive text analysis. However, you must be careful and only use the translations and not the actual substance of the application. This could lead to that application acting as prior art and you might have trouble in dealing with it.

Perform market survey

Another way is to perform a market survey about the cost quotes from various translation vendors. This is done to get an idea about the rates, and then comparing the rates with the actual invoices. This would help you to determine how much can you invest in patent translation & filing costs. It will also make you aware of the cost savings that you can do.

Involve translation experts

One must consider consulting a professional translation expert to avoid unnecessary time delays and money losses. A good expert most likely knows everything about framing an application and making claims, etc. It’ll be helpful if the expert is of the same nationality as the place where you want to file the application. This will facilitate a much better and smoother translation.

Related Article: 3 Must-to-Have Possessions of A Patent Translator.

Perform proofreading

One of the most important criteria to remember is to perform patent proofreading before submitting the patent application. This check is to ensure that there are no errors are left in the application.

Conclusion

If you utilize all of these approaches, there will be no degradation in terms of quality. Sometimes, even after being very careful, you make some mistakes. There is a possibility that after having all the relevant technical and legal knowledge, the translator might still make an error. No one can possibly guarantee 100% accurate and consistent translation. As the patent process is so expensive, you must make efforts to cut through these costs, without compromising on the quality.

Need a translator? – Patent Translations Express

Our team at Patent Translations Express includes professionals who boast years of legal and technical experience. We provide translation services in various technical domains, such as life sciences, chemistry, hi-tech & mechanical engineering. We have a team of native language translators that covers more than 40 languages. Our aim is to provide the best service in the market at economical rates.

Check out our Patent Translations services to avail us. We also assist in the filing process in PCT Nationalization and Multi-Country Filings.

1. **The top 6 benefits of trademark filing services**

Trademarks are symbol, word, numerals or combination of all to graphically represent a company’s brand. Trademark Filing Services grants you the right to use a unique symbol which helps to distinguish one’s product. A trademark or brand name influences the decision making the power of the consumers approaching the organization with the reputation it holds. That is why filing a trademark is an important step in forging the identity of one’s business. The trademark filing services help to establish one’s rights as the legal owner, which will protect its use in an unauthorized manner.

Related Articles: Global Trademark Search and its significance

Essentials of trademark filing services :

An entrepreneur or a business owner cautious to build a brand must be aware of the benefits of trademark filing. Also, they need to make sure that their trademark is unique and does not resemble any other trademark. So, it is a must for one to avail trademark filing services. Some of the benefits of it are:

Increases bond with customers:

It is one of the most important factors for filing a trademark. No matter what industry you are in, you will find a crowd in the market. So, this makes it more difficult for the customers to find you online or in a retail store. As trademark filing increases a company’s brand name, it becomes easy for the customers to find a product of the company. With a trademark, your business, services, and product stand out. This builds a relationship and reputation of the company and influences the final decision of the consumer.

Related Articles: How to trademark a logo?

Exclusive rights:

The owner of the trademark enjoys exclusive rights of it by disallowing usage of the trademark without his consent. It fulfills one’s wish by offering the owner of the brand name for all the products falling under the class applied. It gives the trademark owner right to sue the unauthorized use of the trademark. However, one gets the right after issuance of a certificate from the trademark office on completing the trademark filing process.

Creates goodwill and trust:

There are some products in the market having good quality and lifespan. But still, they are not able to compete with their counterparts. The reason is that they are not able to create trust among consumers.

Trademark plays a vital role in creating trust and goodwill for the company. As the logo or trademark of a company attracts people, it results in an increase in the brand name. So, as consumer remembers a product by its trademark, it creates goodwill and trust for the product among consumers. This result in creating a permanent set of customer base those are loyal to the company and opt for the same brand.

Protection against infringement:

When a company is at its peak, the only thing for them to find is the possibility of unauthorized use of their trademark. This can hamper the company’s goodwill and trust. Trademark registration will ensure that no other competitor can use your product without your permission. If someone uses it for their benefit, you have the right to sue them by taking legal action against them. They will have to face a charge of trademark infringement which will enforce them to pay the damages to you. So, trademark filing services provide legal protection to your trademark.

Related Articles: Trademark Watch and its Significance

Attract human resources:

Young minds aspire to join big brands as it acts as a magnet. As trademark increases the goodwill of a company, the aspiring candidates always look to join them for a better work environment. It inspires the positive image of the organization thereby attracting candidates towards them. This reduces a company’s cost related to hiring activities.

Low-cost asset:

A trademark seems like a bargain when one compares it with other business costs. It costs a little to register your trademark with the USPTO and use it for a few years to create brand awareness. The trademark renewable cost is also very less, which one has to pay after five or ten years.

Why Choose Us? – The Trademark Filing Company

It is always beneficial to claim your trademark before someone else does. The Trademark Filing Company (TTFC) consists of professionals who have years of experience in trademark filing services. If you want to register your trademark, TTFC with its world-class facilities and professional expertise would help you in doing so. We file quick and easy trademark applications for our clients at an optimal cost. Our team also provides timely notifications to our clients at each step. TTFC is well aware of every guideline and the latest trademark laws to ensure our client’s trademark safety. We will also report you with the proper updates. To avail our services, Visit The Trademark Filing Company.

1. **What is the Trademark Registration Cost?**

A trademark has become an absolute necessity in today’s market. So you might wonder, “What is trademark registration cost?” It is paramount to know everything about the trademark registration process so that you can plan out your expenses accordingly. A trademark can protect your brand and its reputation so you must get one.

 There are a series of steps that require dealing with different entities. These include the Trademark Registry office, trademark consultant/agent, etc. You need to be certain about every single trademark registration cost.

Trademark Registration Cost: Know Everything

There are different fees that you need to pay. They vary from getting the initial application form to getting a renewal of your trademark. The fees are according to the Trademark Rules, 2017. Let’s find out every cost or fee that is a part of the trademark registration process.

Trademark Fee for New Applications

The very basic part of the trademark registration cost; the fees for a new application. There are 2 categories of entities; the first being individuals, start-ups and small entities, the other is regular organizations. The form for the same is TM-A

For small entities, the fee is ₹4500 for E-filing and ₹5000 for physical filing. On the other hand, a regular organization needs to pay ₹9000 for E-filing and ₹10,000 for physical filing.

Extension of Time, Certified Copy, Duplicate Registration Certificate

If you need an extension of time on responding to an office action, then you need a form TM-M. You can use this form to get a certified copy or a duplicate Registration Certificate. Another use is an inspection of the document, or Particulars of advertisement to the registrar, or seeking grounds of decision of Registrar. Further, this can be used to enter in the register and advertise a note of certificate of validity under rule 127.

The fee is ₹900 for E-filing and ₹1000 for physical filing.

Trademark Registration Cost: Expedited Process

If you wish to have an expedited registration process, then you can do so under Rule 34. You can only file an online application only under this process. The fee for the same is ₹20,000 for small entities. For other entities, the fee is ₹40,000. There is no option for physical filing.

Fee for Renewal

In case you wish to renew your existing trademark, you need to pay a fee of ₹9000 for E-filing and ₹10,000 for physical filing. The form for the same is TM-R.

Fee for Restoration and Renewal

There might be a case where your trademark lapses. In such a case, the trademark registration cost for the renewal of the trademark is ₹18,000 for E-filing and ₹20,000 for physical filing. The form for the same is TM-R only. You must file the renewal under 25(3), 25(4) for each class.

Trademark Fee for Opposition/Rectification

An entity can oppose a trademark registration under Section 21(1), 64, 66 or 73. They can also file an application for rectification of register under Section 47 to 57, 68 or 77. The form for this is TM-O

The fee is ₹2700 for E-filing and ₹3000 for physical filing.

Trademark Fee for Search Certificate

In case you need a search certificate for your trademark, then you need to pay a fee for it. The fee is ₹9000 for e-filing and ₹10,000 for physical filing. In case of expedited issue of search certificate, the fee is ₹30,000 under e-filing while physical filing isn’t an option.

You can visit the Form and Fees page to know about specific fees in further detail.

Need a Professional’s help? – Your Trademark Team

You have seen the trademark registration cost and the entire process. You can go ahead with the process on your own or you can hire legal services, which is advisable. You may face some confusion due to inexperience to carry out certain steps such as the search or drafting the application. A legal service will cost you money. But, in the long run, if it means protecting your brand identity, then the investment is worth the money.

If you need help, Your Trademark Team is at your service. We’re a team of trademark agents/attorneys who boast 10+ years of experience in the field. We will ensure to help you out along every step of the way in trademark-related services. Your satisfaction is our guarantee.

1. **IP Paralegal Training: Know How to Start With**

Intellectual property is an intangible property that a person creates and that the law recognizes as belonging exclusively to them. IP Paralegal training is essential for one to perform several tasks that relate to drafting legal documents and filing patents and trademarks. One will be able to assist attorneys with legal duties and copyright laws by acquiring IP paralegal training. One can also work for an IP law firm or the legal department of a company to manage its intellectual property rights. We will discuss some of the requirements for getting an IP paralegal training.

Also read: Patent Paralegal: Duties to Perform

IP Paralegal Training: Essential Requirements

IP Paralegals work for law offices, corporations, institutions, and government agencies preparing trademark, patent, and copyright applications. They help corporations in assisting with intellectual property litigation and conducting intellectual property research. Some of the essentials of IP Paralegal training are:

Acquire Paralegal Training:

Some employers, especially smaller law firms usually hire applicants who do not have a paralegal degree or certificate but have appropriate experience. However, most law firms prefer applicants who have a paralegal degree or certificate. Associate’s degree programs are 15-24 months long and provide comprehensive training in criminal and civil law, litigation, legal writing, and research. Candidates who have a bachelor’s degree can obtain a certificate in paralegal studies in less time, usually around 14-28 weeks of full-time study.

Also read: What is the Importance of Patent Proofreading?

Obtain Certification:

While certification is voluntary, employers prefer paralegals that hold certification from a recognized professional paralegal association. There are some recognized paralegal organizations that certify paralegals who meet their educational, experience, and skill requirements. There are also regional associations that offer paralegal certification. Obtaining certification is a good way for the job applicants to let employers know their qualifications for the position they are seeking. The paralegals can also go for Intellectual property legal assistance program.

Gain Experience:

This is one of the most important steps of IP paralegal training. Many paralegal programs do not feature coursework in IP law. If they do, the program usually does not offer an in-depth education in this legal specialty. Consequently, the graduate may have to learn this area of law on-the-job. The paralegals may have to accept a job in a company that practices in a variety of legal areas. They need to gain enough paralegal experience to get into an IP law firm or legal department.

Continuing Education:

Taking continuing education courses is a requirement to maintain paralegal certification. Even if the paralegal is not certified, there are many continuing legal education courses that the bar associations and paralegal associations offer. Successfully completing IP law continuing education courses will help develop the paralegal’s specialty in IP law. Also, it will provide valuable credentials for one to include on his resume.

Develop management skills:

IP paralegals are frequently in charge of a team of professionals, working together to create and register a unique mark or product. So, it becomes important for them to have good people and project management skills. Therefore, it is essential for IP paralegals to consider taking a management class or taking on more management responsibilities. One should enroll in a project management course to enhance their management skills.

Conduct Informational Interviews:

An informational interview is an informal conversation with someone working in the field you want to explore your knowledge base. The goal of an informational interview is to gain information and advice, not necessarily to find a job. However, informational interviews can lead to jobs, so one must take this process seriously.

Looking for IP Paralegal Training – Patent Paralegal Force

IP paralegal training is essential for all paralegal applicants to learn and explore the paralegal field. Patent paralegal services play an important role in the patent process, handling end to end documentation for the USPTO office. Patent Paralegal Force (PPF) provides you with the best possible patent paralegal services. With experienced paralegal support, the clients can concentrate on more critical IP matters. PPF consists of highly experienced professionals having the state of the art tool to support you throughout the entire prosecution process. We follow flexibility to accommodate the best of our client’s needs through our automation and manual techniques. Our team provides paralegal services such as docketing for multiple countries, proofreading, end-to-end IDS management, document procurement, etc. We also perform data verification while patent application filing.

1. **Patent a Process in the US: A Complete Guide**

If you’re an entity in the service industry, you might have thought, “Is it possible to patent a process?” The simple answer is yes. But, the bigger question is, how can you do it?

A process patent is a form of a utility patent. It serves the purpose of protecting methods of changing the functionality or characteristics of a material for a particular use.

You can patent a process, which can be a business method or even computer software. These processes include targeted advertising networks, email systems, subscription-based services, etc. The USPTO has certain guidelines that you need to meet in order to get the patent grant.

Let’s dive deeper into the entire procedure to patent a process.

Patentability Subject Matter

Before we begin, let’s quickly understand the subject matter eligibility set out by the USPTO. It is a set of guidelines that clearly outline what is patentable in the USA. It is clear that the invention needs to be novel, non-obvious and industrially applicable. However, it also needs to meet the patentability criteria as well.

You can get a patent for:

Machine

The US Supreme Court has a definition for the term “machine”. It says that a machine is “a concrete thing, consisting of parts, or of certain devices and combination of devices.” The parts MUST interact with one another otherwise one might consider them to be articles of manufacture

Article of Manufacture

An article of manufacture has a specific definition. It involves the production of articles of use from raw or prepared materials. This is done by giving to these materials new forms, qualities, properties, or combinations. One may do so by hand-labor or by machinery.

Process

A process usually refers to a series of steps in manufacture. It can also mean a method to use a product to accomplish a result. However, the method must be a method of purpose to be eligible for a patent.

Composition of matter

Composition of matter means “all compositions of two or more substances and all composite articles. They may be the results of chemical union, or of mechanical mixture, or gases, fluids, powders or solids.”

Any useful improvisation to any of the above

The US Patent Law allows one to improve on existing technology. However, It should serve the purpose of genuinely improving the current technology by reducing the time, or improving efficiency, etc.

As we can see, the USPTO allows you to patent a process. The validity of the patent is 20 years. With the evolution of IP, the laws have gone through the evolution of it.

In the modern world, IP doesn’t limit to just to machines or other physical inventions. Let’s see what types of processes are eligible for a patent.

Patent a Process: Which Process can get a Patent?

The US Patent Act has strict rules and classifications of business methods that can get a patent. Hence, not every process is eligible for it. You need to check the classes and file under the relevant class.

For example, the most common class for business methods is class 705. It encompasses computer processes involving business practices, price determination, financing, etc. There are other classifications as well for different models. These involve gaming (class 273), agriculture (class 47), and education (class 434). Once you are sure of your class, you can move on to the filing process for your patent.

Drafting and Filing Procedure

Before anything else, you must first conduct a patent search to check for any prior art. If no prior art exists, you can go ahead with the drafting and filing procedure.

You need to treat a process patent just like a utility patent. Hence, when you write the patent, the patent draft needs to follow the guidelines of a utility patent only. The application needs to have comprehensive and all-encompassing claims, specifications, descriptions, patent drawings, etc.

The claims need to be precise and detailed to ensure that the process is safe from potential infringements. When you patent a process, the patent drawings also play a crucial role. They need to comprise of elaborate flowcharts describing the entire process thoroughly. But they must follow the USPTO guidelines.

Also, check out the complete guide for software patent drafting.

Once your draft is ready, make sure to proofread it. The Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) needs to be up-to-date and very meticulous.

The patent filing process is also a direct procedure. You can either file your application online at the EFS-Web or send it via post to the USPTO. Once the USPTO receives the application, it will publish it.

After the publication, you will have to go through a patent examination. The examiner will study your application and send objections in the form of office actions. The objections will pertain to technical and non-technical issues with the application. You will have to clear these objections in order to patent a process.

Patent a process: Netflix Example

We all know about Netflix and its stronghold in the entertainment industry. It is an online-based provider of subscription services. Netflix got a patent grant in 2003 for its computer-implemented system for renting TV shows and movies. Their flow chart explains the process very clearly and elaborately.

Patent No.: US6584450B1

https://thepatentwatchcompany.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/09/Fig.-Flowchart-of-Netflix’s-Process-Patent.png

Fig. Flowchart of Netflix’s Process Patent

Blockbuster, a competitor of Netflix also launched a similar service. Netflix took legal action against them in the form of a patent infringement suit. The case was settled later and Netflix received a lot of money because of their patent.

Problems to Overcome

Despite the existing guidelines, when you want to patent a process, there are still some issues that the USPTO needs to address. There are certain ambiguities, uncertainties, and issues that persist. These create hindrance in the entire patent process. Let’s have a look at them.

Ambiguity in Terminology

The US Patent Act lists words like “useful” and “result” in the patent law, which creates an air of ambiguity. Since we are talking about “utility”, the inclusion of “useful” might refer to something else. It might also simply reaffirm the existing language. Nonetheless, it creates confusion.

Similarly, the term “result” might render the process itself meaningless. This is because a process patent mainly focuses on the process and not the result that comes from it.

Problem of Disclosure

The patent system requires full disclosure of the invention that requires the patent. The disclosure should be so elaborate that any person skilled in the domain should be able to replicate it. This is where inventors hesitate and there needs to be enough awareness about the disclosure and its impact.

Software patents

Unlike other fields, we don’t have comprehensive sources of prior art to compare an invention with. Another issue is determining if the business method is intrinsically linked to computer technology. The business method needs to be novel, useful and must have an inseparable use with computer technology. Determining the grant of the patent on these grounds is often subjective and needs more attention.

Conclusively, there are issues that the USPTO needs to work on. However, if you want to patent a process, then you should not hesitate because of these factors.

How can we help you? – The Patent Watch Company

When you patent a process, you must also ensure that nobody infringes on your rights. Infringements can occur at any time and anywhere. The enforcement of your IP rights is your responsibility, so you must keep a vigilant eye on the market and your competitors. If you need the assistance of a professional, consider The Patent Watch Company. We cover numerous technology areas and have years of experience under our belt in the monitoring domain. Our monitoring focuses on patent/non-patent literature (by patent/patent publication numbers) as well as general marketing activities like product launches, investments, etc. We also assure timely delivery and value for money in our services.

1. **Trademark Clearance Search – An Elementary Guide with Benefits**

Many individuals and companies perform a trademark clearance search before going with a logo for their organization. It requires conducting thorough research through databases of USPTO. But going through just the USPTO database is not enough as USPTO approves trademark rights solely on use and not on registration. Therefore, make sure you perform a comprehensive trademark clearance search. For this, you need to refer multiple databases, visit trade directories, internet domains and product catalogs.

Therefore, through a trademark clearance search, you will learn whether your chosen trademark is viable and will not infringe upon other existing trademarks.

International Trademark Clearance Search

A company can’t limit its search for trademark clearance if it operates in multiple jurisdictions. For that, it needs trademark clearance internationally i.e. for multiple countries.

Therefore, it is always beneficial going for International trademark search, before finalizing a trademark for your company.

You can also refer to WIPO trademark search database for worldwide scrutiny of the trademark in hand.

Note: You can perform an international trademark clearance search on your own. But there are high chances that you might miss out a similar or overlapping trademark by just performing a superficial search. Therefore, it is preferable to take the assistance of a professional to get a comprehensive search result.

How does a Trademark Clearance Search Help?

Let us now learn why you should go for a trademark clearance search before finalizing a mark for your business. You came up with your business with all your blood and sweat and now you have created a trademark that would uniquely identify it. But, before that, be 100% sure of the authenticity of the mark. In essence, that mark is actually unique and is not even a look-alike of some other trademark.

Trademark Clearance before filing: going for trademark filing or looking for companies providing trademark filing services. Therefore, before spending your money on further processes be sure that your trademark is distinctive enough so that it can represent your business.

Unique name/logo: a clearance search help you find a unique logo or name for your products. Through a clearance search, you might find that the logo that you chose overlaps with some other trademark. But don’t get disheartened there, because you can always enhance your trademark by making changes to it.

Prevents you from Charges: although you can make use of a mark as a trademark without performing a clearance search. But, there are chances of you becoming an infringer if a similar mark already exists and/or is in use.

Regional trademark filing: a comprehensive clearance search help you find trademarks of a particular region. So if you want to limit your brand reach till particular regions, you can fetch regional trademark databases for trademarks of that particular region(s).

Why choose us?

Building a brand takes blood and sweat of people. It is not just the money but creativity and efforts that build a brand name for a business. A successful brand needs a unique name or logo for its identification. We, at The Trademark Search Company, have a team of trademark professionals that perform comprehensive trademark clearance searches. We take pride in providing more than 100 searches and results in a relevantly short period of time. There is no compromise in the quality as customer satisfaction is of paramount importance to us. Additionally, you can approach us for trademark monitoring service and can check the samples of our results on the same platform.

1. **What are the Important Elements of Patent Prosecution in India?**

What is the meaning of Patent Prosecution in India? It is easy to get it confused with litigation since prosecution generally refers to that. However, patent prosecution is the process of writing and filing a patent application with the patent office to seek protection for an invention. It involves a number of elements such as early publication request, examination request, Office action response, and much more. Therefore, you must be clear about each and every step to ensure a smooth Patent Prosecution in India.

This article elucidates on every step of the patent prosecution process and where we can assist you.

Patent Prosecution in India: Key Points to Remember

1. Filing the Patent Application

This element is self-explanatory. If you’re seeking protection for an invention, you have to file a patent application with the Indian Patent Office. Here is a list of all the forms and their fees that exist in the Indian patent system. You may file an application either online or offline. The online filing happens through the eFiling portal and the offline filing via post to the relevant regional patent office. India has 4 regional patent offices – Mumbai, Chennai, Delhi, and Kolkata, each of which covers certain states under their jurisdiction.

2. Request for Early Publication

The Indian Patent Office publishes every patent application in the patent journal. The purpose is public disclosure of the invention, which is a requirement in the grant of a patent. However, the publication happens 18 months AFTER the date of filing of the patent application. You may not want to wait that long before disclosing your invention. So, you can request an early publication using Form 9 and paying an extra fee to the patent office. It is advisable to submit the form with your application. Then, the patent office publishes your application within a month from the date of filing.

3. Request for Examination

You must file a request for examination with the patent office for them to assess your patent application. The relevant form for this request is Form 18. This should be done within 48 months from the date of filing. If the pendency period expires, then the patent office considers your application to be “withdrawn”. You may even file for an early examination using Form 18A but this is applicable ONLY for start-ups. After filing the request, your application eventually lands on the desk of an examiner. This examiner is an expert in the field of the invention and thoroughly examines your application. He/she generates the “First Examination Report” (FER) which contains all the objections with the application.

4. Respond to First Examination Report

The FER consists of objections in the form of technical and non-technical errors. Any formal document you receive from the patent office is an Office Action. Your job is to overcome each and every objection in order to convince the Controller to grant your patent. This is an Office Action Response. This step involves written correspondence and appearing before the patent office. You have a time period of 6 months before responding to the FER. But you can file for an extension of 3 months using Form 4. After your response, the patent office may further raise other objections if your response doesn’t satisfy them. This is the most tedious part of the patent prosecution in India.

5. Grant of Patent and Annuity Fees

If you’re able to overcome all objections that the Controller raises, then you get a patent grant. Its validity is 20 years from the date of filing. You must pay an annuity fee for the renewal of the patent. This starts from the 3rd year and payment needs to be made in intervals till the 20th year.

6. Pre-Grant Opposition

A third party might challenge your invention after you disclose it to the public through the publication. This generally involves objections relating to the novelty of the invention and happens before the grant of a patent. You may file an application for pre-grant opposition with the Indian Patent Office under the relevant provisions. The provisions are under section 25(1), sub-section (2), sub-section (3) of section 29, or section 8 of the Indian Patent Act. There is no statutory application fee for this and the original patent applicant has to overcome these objections. After both sides make their cases, a judge decides whether or not the opposition has any merit in their claims.

7. Post-Grant Opposition

There is also a provision for a third party to oppose your patent after its grant. The time period to file this is 1 year from the date grant of the patent. You may file an opposition application under the relevant provisions with the Indian Patent Office. The provisions are under section 25(2), sub-section (2), sub-section (3) of section 29, or section 8 of the Indian Patent Act. There is a fee that you have to pay to file a post-grant opposition. The rest of the procedure is the same as pre-grant opposition.

8. Statement and Undertaking

You must file a statement and undertaking in accordance with section 8 of the Indian Patent Act without any fee. The applicant here promises to inform the Controller about the details regarding any corresponding patent applications he/she files outside India.

9. Statement of working of patent

It’s mandatory to submit a statement of working to the Controller in the relevant form. This doesn’t require any extra-statutory fee and must happen every year. If the applicant fails to submit this, then he/she may have to pay a heavy fine as a penalty.

10. Submission of a certified copy

You must take a certified copy from the Indian Patent Office. Sometimes, you may need to deposit the application to the relevant authorities. These include the International Bureau of WIPO or regional patent offices. The latter is to file any conventional application by claiming the priority of Indian application.

11. Getting the foreign filing license

In order to file a patent application outside India, you must get a foreign filing license from the Patent Office. This is basically permission in written format which you get after paying the necessary fee. In case you want to file patent outside India first, then you must have this license. If you fail to do so, then you will have to pay a lot of amount as penalties. Another possibility is that you first file the application in India. Then you can file it outside India 6 weeks after the filing date.

12. Modifications in the patent application

There is a provision where you can update your patent by filing a request for amendments. This must be in accordance with the section (57) of the Indian Patent Act 1970. You may request for this before or after the grant of the patent. There may also be a case where you want to give the patent rights to someone else with your full consent. You may also wish to change your address details or any other details. You can do this by submitting a request application in the necessary format.

Need help with Patent Prosecution in India? – Your Patent Team

Patent prosecution in India is a time-consuming process with no guarantee of a patent at the end of it. There are numerous deadlines, forms, timelines, etc. which you need to follow. It is advisable to consult a professional with this process. YPT is a team of 225+ technology/industry experts who speak the inventor’s language and have a deep understanding of Indian & Global Patent Laws. We provide our mentorship to our clients after studying the situation to move forward in the right direction. We provide our assistance in all the phases of the patent prosecution. This includes drafting the application, filing it, facing pre-grant or post-grant opposition, monitoring the patent after the grant, etc. We also update our clients regularly by sending reminders at different stages through the course of the patent prosecution. To make an inquiry, contact us on Your Patent Team.

1. **Patent Filing Guide: Every Step Simplified (And Common Mistakes)**

The Patent filing process isn’t easy to understand at first, and you may feel the need to have some guidance. If you’re looking an all-encompassing patent filing guide, then your search should end here. The patent process is very expensive with absolutely no assurance about the grant of a patent. Hence, it is all the more critical to understand that you must get every step of the process right. There are different forms, guidelines, deadlines, etc. to take care of which you must be aware of. Let’s dive into this patent filing guide and understand everything there is to know.

Patent Filing Guide: A Stepwise Approach

The sequence of steps to follow might seem confusing. But don’t worry, here you’ll find a complete stepwise guide for patent filing.

Patentability Criteria

Before even thinking about the filing process, you must ensure that your invention is patentable. This means checking if your invention is novel, functional and non-obvious. You can do this through a patentability search. This involves searching for prior art in the field of the invention. You must check for material in written format, be it existing patents, patent applications, research publications, etc. Once you get the results of this search, you can decide if you want to go ahead with the filing process.

Determine the Type of Patent

If you think your invention is patentable, you can move to the next step which is deciding your patent type. There are 3 broad categories of patents that the USPTO offers. They are:

Utility patent: This patent protects how a product or process functions. Utility patents protect functional and new inventions or systems. It is valid for 20 years.

Plant patent: It is useful if you have created a new species of plant. Plant prevents other companies from breeding it. It has validity for 20 years as well.

Design patent: These cover the way a manufactured product looks but it isn’t concerned with its usefulness or function. However, you can get a design patent ONLY for useful inventions. Design patents are valid for 15 years.

Draft The Patent Application

After determining the patent type, the next step in the patent filing guide in drafting your patent application. The USPTO follows a “first to file” procedure. Therefore, whoever files the application for an invention first, gets priority. Following are the types of patent applications that you can file:

Provisional Application

This application is a simple tool to secure a priority date. You need not describe the application completely here. The basic purpose is to disclose your invention, secure a priority date, and later use that priority when filing a non-provisional application. You get 12 months to file a non-provisional application from the date of filing of the provisional application.

Non-provisional Application

This is a complete patent application, and it is the real deal. Hence, you must include every single detail about your invention, right down to the last fiber of its being. Claims, drawings, descriptions, etc. need to be pitch-perfect for this application.

International Methods

You may want protection for your invention in a multiple number of countries. These are options given by the World Intellectual Property Organisation (WIPO) which allow you to do that. You may file an application under the following:

Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT)

Paris Convention

Each type requires you to follow a set of norms and standards that you must meet while preparing the application.

Filing the Patent

The most important part of this patent filing guide is the submission of your application draft. You can submit the application either online or offline.

Online

You can use EFS-Web for online filing. It is the USPTO’s electronic filing system for patent applications. It is also used for any official correspondence with the USPTO via the Internet.

Offline

You can send the application via delivery by U.S. mail, or hand delivery to the Office in Alexandria, Virginia. But, the offline method charges you a lot of extra money. So, it is preferable to use the online method.

Common Mistakes

Entities often are not careful about certain things which end up as the reasons for not getting a patent. Some of them include:

Not describing the invention in enough detail: You must understand that getting a patent grant is not easy. You need to be careful while selecting which information to include. The examiner runs a fine-tooth comb through your application. If things aren’t clear, he/she wouldn’t hesitate to strike your application down.

Incomplete or no research on prior art: Before filing, you absolutely must dig up everything you can. If a similar prior art exists, then you must ensure that your invention is different.

Directly filing a non-provisional application: This can be counter-productive if you are in a competitive market or if you are unaware of the process. Therefore, it is always better to first file a provisional application. You should use the 12-months’ time to complete the invention and improve the non-provisional application.

Not hiring a lawyer: You must understand that this process is a tedious one and if this is your first time, you will face obstacles. Investing money in a lawyer will not be a waste as it will bolster your chances of getting the patent.

Why choose us? – The Patent Filing Company

After reading this patent filing guide, you may feel the need to take the assistance of a patent professional. Be mindful of the steps and deadlines involved. You should consider engaging a patent professional / firm who has years of experience in the patent field. We offer complete support for provisional patent application filing, design & utility patent Applications, patentability search reports, nonprovisional patent application filing, patent drawings and much more. Visit us to avail our Patent Filing services.

1. **Introduction to Freedom to Operate Search**

You came up with an amazing invention, patented it and now you want to make money out of it. But hold on! Conduct the freedom to operate search. A Freedom to operate or FTO search ensures that a product does not infringe valid, in-force patents held within a country.

Unlike patentability search, freedom to operate search looks only at patent information and focuses on the claims of existing patents.

Freedom to operate search – importance after patent grant

The patent grant gives you the exclusive right to stop others from making, using or selling your invention for a limited period of time. But, if your invention has something in common with a third party invention, then they have the same exclusive right over the technology as you. That is, you are not the sole manufacturer and distributor of that particular technology. In other words, you don’t have , freedom to operate.

Let us understand this with an example. Let’s say that you invented an attachable eraser tip to a pencil, and got a patent for it. But the pencil to which it attaches is not invented by you, and someone else holds a patent for it. Then, in this case, you won’t be able to manufacture and sell eraser tips without infringing the original pencil patent, hence, no freedom of operation.

Important Considerations before an FTO Search

An FTO analysis invariably begins by searching patent literature for issued or pending patents. This also involves taking a legal opinion as to whether a product, process or service infringes any active patent(s). Some important considerations for FTO search are:

Clearly, describe the essential features of a product or process for which an FTO search is being conducted.

Separately search all the features of the product or process.

It is only the claims that determine the scope of the patent. Whatever function the invention performs or wants to claim patent protection for is there in the claims.

Related Articles: Patent Search Techniques to expand your horizons.

Way outs for Freedom of Operation

If you find an already active invention blocks your freedom of operation for your invention, don’t worry there are solutions to it. Let’s look into them one by one.

Wait for patent expiry: wait for a while and let that active patent expire. The duration of patent protection is 20 years. But, patents are difficult to upkeep and therefore, some of them expire before time because of the high maintenance fee. Also, the time reduces due to hefty prosecution at the USPTO. Freedom to operate search identifies such patents and provides opportunities to improve these technologies as per the current product or processes.

Patent licensing or selling: this is comparatively an easier way of achieving the freedom to operate. In licensing the original patent holder gives permission to use their patent. The other option here is, if the original patent holder sells his active patent to you, this gives you the complete hold over the invention.

Invent around: this is the best way to achieve freedom of operation. To invent around is to adjust your patent claims to sidestep claims that are clashing with an active patent. This technique is enforceable for a patent with narrow claims.

Let us serve you better!

By now you must be familiar with the concept of freedom to operate search. If you are looking for experienced professionals who can help you with FTO searches for commercializing your technology, then TPSF is the right choice for you. At The Patent Search Firm (TPSF) we have experts with 10+ years of experience in the patent industry. Our reliability reflects in our work. We have a full-time search and FTO search coverage in 16+ languages and 30+ technical domains with clients in more than 100 countries. You can find our comprehensive search reports samples free of cost by making a little inquiry.

1. **US Patent Proofreading – with USPTO Best Practices**

When we talk about US Patent Proofreading, we strictly abide by the patent drafting rules of the USPTO. Since a patent draft is a legal document; therefore, every patent office expects it to be in a format as per their jurisdiction. According to a popular saying “to err is human” – it is natural for humans to make mistakes. Therefore, while preparing patent drafts the occurrence of mistakes is inevitable.

If you want to file a patent application with the USPTO do perform US patent proofreading, so that your patent application sails smoothly through prosecution. It is better to let a trusted patent drafting and proofreading professional take care of your patent draft. This will not only reduce your burden but also, help you get a timely patent grant.

General Errors for Patent Proofreading

Since, a patent draft comprises multiple parts, going through each of them is mandatory. Mistakes can happen in any part of the patent draft. This may include the format of the patent draft, the text of the specification the form of grammatical mistakes, spelling errors, claim construction, superfluous content. Also, in case of drawings if not prepared as per the USPTO guidelines for patent drawings.

Proofreading claims is the most essential element in the specification part since claims set the scope of the patent protection.

Grammatical errors are also of utmost consideration. Even a single comma (,) goes here and there it changes the meaning of the sentence. Hence, it is important to take due care of punctuation and other grammatical error doesn’t occur.

Patent drawings have a set format as per the USPTO. For instance, draft black and white drawings, use India ink, avoid solid shading and superimposition, etc.

Also, follow the link – Proofreading Essentials ‘The Universal Eight’ to learn more.

For US Patent Proofreading – Consider USPTO Best Practices

USPTO at its own end declares certain practices while preparing a patent draft. If you don’t go wrong with them the probability of seeking patent protection gets real high. Therefore, while proofreading a patent application do consider whether these requirements are met or not.

The considerations are as follows:

Application Preparation: consider MPEP 608 formats for patent applications. It talks about the written disclosure and specification format. Also, portray the invention as per the manner described in 35 USC 112(a). It asks to obtain full and clear disclosure of the invention. It also states that you cannot introduce new matter into the application after its filing date. Also, do not submit the application as per the European Problem/Solution format.

Make sure that you state the specifications in full, concise, clear and exact terms. This is so as to enable a person skilled in that field to make and use the invention.

Avoid improper language: use language as per decorum and courtesy. This implies that the language should not sound offensive to any race, religion, sex, ethnic group or nationality.

Multiple Dependent Claims: avoid crafting multiple dependent claims that depend from other multiple dependent claims. Therefore, you should follow MPEP § 608.01(n) for the best US practices.

To learn more about Multiple Dependent Claims follow the link.

Avoid “Use” claims: it states the statutory requirements of the claim. It says the applicant particularly needs to point out and distinctly claim his/her invention. Since a “use’’ claim is equivalent to a “process” claim which is more relevant. Therefore, it better to use the word “process” to build it as per the USPTO guidelines. Craft claims as per MPEP § 608.01(k).

Pre-examination tips forms: Use USPTO forms without making changes to the language. And make sure that you not use combined declaration and attorney form. Make sure you consider these points while performing US patent proofreading.

Our Patent Proofreading Approach

Although you can perform patent proofreading on your own, US Patent Proofreading approach is quite peculiar and a daunting task. Therefore, if you consider taking professional assistance The Patent Proofreading Company is at your end. Our professionals are expert at finding errors before they become an issue. To ensure this we follow a multi-step quality check and use state-of-the-art software for assistance. Also, we issue a ‘Certificate of Correction’ with comprehensive proofread results which proves the authenticity of your patent application. We have and are delivering all these services at cost-effective rates. To know more, do give a visit to our service page.

1. **Why is IDS Management Service Important?**

IDS stand for Information Disclosure Statement. IDS management describes all prior art and the technology that one claims in the invention. It places the burden of disclosure on the inventor or applicant. If an application doesn’t have this statement or fails to include key prior art, the patent may become invalid. As we know that the applicant is more likely to be aware of the existing patents than the examiner. So, the USPTO requires the applicant to mention the entire prior art and claims of the invention in IDS.

Essentials of IDS Management:

The IDS is part of an applicant’s duty to work in good faith and with complete candor when applying for a patent. Applicants should include any information that may affect an invention’s patentability. In addition, they must also disclose prior art in the patent application.

Also Read: 5 Major Benefits of Patent Paralegal Service

Significance of IDS management:

The main significance of IDS management is the disclosure of the prior art. This makes it easy for the examiner to know about all the related things about the applicant’s invention. It is simply anything that explains the technology of the invention which is similar to the applicant’s invention.

If one fails to comply with the rules of filing IDS, the patent grant over the invention becomes unenforceable.

This will happen because; it gives an impression that the inventor didn’t disclose the prior art of which he was aware of.

Content requirement in IDS:

This is one of the most important points of IDS management. The content in the IDS must be in compliance with the provisions listed in IDS by the office. The content is as follows:

List of all publications, patents and other information:

The office requires a specified identification for each page of IDS and one must list the publication of the patent application separately. It also requires a column that provides a space next to each document to permit the examiner’s initials. One must also include a heading that identifies the list as IDS.

The content requirement also includes that each page of the list must clearly identify the application number while submitting the IDS.

Also Read: Intellectual Property Paralegals Facts

Legible Copies:

The information disclosure statement must include:

Each foreign patent.

The publication or portion due to which the listing took place other than the patent application publication.

For each unpublished application, one must submit the application specification including claims and drawings.

A copy of the translation of non-English language statement to the English language documents.

Also Read: Patent Translation and Filing Cost: How To Manage?

Relevance for Non-English language information:

The IDS must further include a concise explanation of the relevance which must be understood by the individual designated in the office. If one completes the translation of the information in English as well as non-English language, then one doesn’t need a concise explanation. The explanation may be either separate from the specification or part of the specification.

If explanation is part of the specification, the listing includes pages or lines where the concise explanation is located in the specification.

Reasons for filing IDS:

You should file IDS if the prior art meets any of these criteria:

It is known or sold anywhere in the world.

The prior art has got a patent grant in any country.

It is featured in a publication of the application anywhere in the world.

The description of the prior art is present in an issued USPTO patent or a foreign patent application.

Why Choose Us? – Smart IDS Solutions

It is very important to prepare an Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) while filing a patent. If you are looking to seek any assistance regarding IDS management, Smart IDS Solutions (SIS) will guide you with the IDS preparation process. We have a highly skilled professional team who are experts in this domain. Our team prepares ready-to-file IDS forms in USPTO prescribed formats in a cost-effective manner. We compile data with obligation, maintain and update it by timely and accurately reporting prior art references. We ensure 100% quality assurance in IDS creation for our corporate clients. To avail our services, visit Smart IDS Solutions.

1. **Why Patent Drawings Services are Important?**

Patent drawings services are an aid to the inventors for creating illustrations, embodiments, with several views and photographs. Although not compulsory drawings play an important role by giving a pictorial presentation of the invention. During the drafting process, make sure the format of the drawings is as per a particular format as per the USPTO guidelines, or of the pertinent patent office.

Importance of Patent Drawings Services –

Creating professional patent drawings is not a cakewalk. Be mindful of creating specific and detail-oriented drawings. Also, there are particular rules and are different for all the patent offices. Patent drawings services are of great aid for inventors, the major reasons include:

Pictorial Presentation of Complex Details: a professional patent illustrator knows how to represent a complex design and/or processes with utmost simplicity. So whenever there is a requirement for better clarity of the invention, patent drawing is a solution to go for.

Added Clarity to the Invention: although it is not a compulsion to add patent drawings, these serve to add clarity to certain inventions. Say, for example, the description of a mechanical watch doesn’t serve to bring much clarity as appropriately as a patent drawing would portray. The gears, levers and springs, all these parts need detailed clarity provided by professional patent drawings services.

Boost Strength of Claims: The claims of your invention are the most crucial aspect of your application. The clearer they are, the better. The drawings you add will certainly help you in reinforcing your claims while you draft them.

Design Patent Filing: lucidity of a patent drawing is most important when you go for a design patent. This is so, as this type of patent has less number of claims and designs/drawings are the only source on which we can rely upon. Hence, taking patent drawings services for design patents is of great benefit.

An Uninitiated Inventor: patent drawings are not simple designs; they associate plenty of rules with them. It is very much prudent to deliver drawings that abide by the rules of the patent office.

Patent drawing services are affordable, and you can learn how wisely you can invest in patent drawings services.

Features of a good patent drawing –

There are certain features that a patent drawing should possess in order to avoid any office action or rejection of the patent application. Here is a list of major predefined standards that one needs to comply with to create patent drawings for their inventions:

Drawings should possess all the features of the claims;

Include the drawings if they are the best mode of explanation of the invention;

Provide proper reference numbers;

Use only black and white drawings and photographs. File a petition if at all you want to include colored patent drawings and/or photographs;

Leave proper margins and use good quality paper of acceptable size;

Provide exploded views that completely go with the overall view of the invention;

Number the pages in Arabic numerals only;

Always number the pages in Arabic Numerals;

Provide various views of the drawings on different pages and number them properly.

Why Choose The Patent Drawings Company?

The team at TPDC ensures that you get the services that are the best among the rest. Our patent drawing services are as per the rules and regulations of the USPTO. Thus, we ensure quality work as per the rules and regulations of countries. With quick turn-around-time and iterations, we ensure complete customer satisfaction. You can check our patent drawing samples and do give a visit to us to learn more.

1. Patent Illustrator Jobs –Great Opportunity at Your End

Patent Illustrator jobs are for professionals of great skill in the domain of patent drawings. Basically, they are imaginative and creative persons and are well aware of the different tricks of patent illustrations. A patent illustrator’s imagination helps him/her in the visualization of the products of the invention. Hence, they come up with multiple views of those products that describe the invention perfectly. Patent illustrator jobs require illustrations that are as per the USPTO guidelines.

Related Article: Hiring Good Patent Illustrators Vs. Do it yourself (DIY) with Patent Drawing Software: which will be a smarter choice?

Chief Opportunity Domains

A patent illustrator is opportune for many sectors in the same field. Consequently, they can make use of their knowledge and skills and have a great career in these major sectors.

Individual Lawyers/Attorneys:

Lawyers and attorneys also hire patent illustrators for generating illustrators for their clients at an individual level.

IP Research Companies:

Intellectual property research companies provide patent illustrator jobs to create patent illustrations for their clients. This is because they deal with different types of intellectual property differing from company to company.

Research and Development of product companies:

Various product companies come up with unique designs of their products. For example, Nike, Apple, Mitsubishi, etc. They hire patent illustrators to create illustrations for different designs of their inventions related to their products.

USPTO jobs:

The United States Patent and Trademark Office hire patent illustrators for creating and examining patent illustrations.

Patent Illustrator Jobs Responsibilities

They are responsible for creating patent illustrations with the help of technical software. The results are as per the rules of the USPTO. Use of knowledge and artistic abilities for incorporating multiple styles of illustrations which includes flow charts, Venn diagrams, to the detailed and artistic style of drawings.

Technical Knowledge for Patent Illustrator Jobs

Patent drawings are not like other artistic drawings. Firstly, nobody draws patent drawings with just a pencil and scale. Above all, the patent illustrator jobs demand knowledge and practice of technical software is mandatory for creating patent illustrations. For instance, you can use softwares like Anaqua, SmartDraw, CorelDraw, Adobe Illustrator, Inkscape, etc.

This software help you create diagrams, flowcharts, engineering schematics, and computer-aided drafts, 3-D renderings and virtual prototypes.

Qualifications and Background

They have a background in engineering with mechanical and drafting knowledge or skills. Also, hold experience of using software like CAD, CorelDraw, etc. this background is suitable particularly for design and utility patent illustrations.

On the other hand, deep understanding of biology and botany with a background in zoology, genetics, biotechnology, or microbiology would do for plant patent illustrations.

Patent Illustrator Skill Set

Professional Patent Illustrators create patent illustrations which are as per the USPTO guidelines. As a result, those good patent illustrations make the examiner easily understand your invention. But, the illustrator needs to have certain skill sets that seek patent illustrator jobs. Finally, let’s have a look at these.

Deep knowledge of state-of-the-art software.

Adheres to deadlines with no compromise in work quality.

Expertise in simple as well detailed and also complex illustration is a must.

Well aware of the patent office rules and also regulations for all the types of patent illustrations.

A person with not only vivid imagination but also accurate execution.

Improves the quality of drawings since better drawings strengthen your patent.

He/she is a team worker.

Knows how to interact with clients and members of other departments.

The Pay-scale Perimeter

Patent Illustrators are getting a decent salary which ranges $23000 to $100000 annually across the United States. This is because the salary structure varies from company to company. But, you can always move up the ladder of salary. This is possible but only if you take certifications from reputed educational institutes and organizations. Also, with improvement in skills and years of experience makes your bio-data strong as a patent illustrator.

Why Choose Us?

At Professional Patent Illustrators, we have a working team of expert patent illustrators. We not only deliver well in time but also we do ensure the quality of illustrations with no compromise. Our patent illustrators adhere to the patent drawing rules of USPTO. We cover both the domains of patent illustrations i.e. utility and design patents. Also, you can find our samples of illustration by making a little inquiry to our page.

1. Importance of Trademark for Businesses

The importance of trademark is rising with the passage of time. When you have Trademark protection over your services or goods, it is easy for the customers to identify them in the market. As per the International Trademark Association, you can apply trademark protection to word, name, symbol; design, etc. until and unless it distinguishes your product from others.

Moreover, the company can seek legal advantages from the third parties, if they try to infringe the protected Trademark.

The registered Trademarks crack better business deals, as the other party finds the negotiation more secure. Moreover, reputed registered brands are more likely to survive the economic crisis than non-registered brands.

Related Articles: Trademark Monitoring Fundamentals: Know the Importance

The disadvantages of not registering the Trademark are:

Spoiling the status

Ruining the brand

Unable to secure the IP rights of the Trademark

Many companies think that keeping the Trademark name as that of the Company’s registered name provides protection to the Trademark. However, this is not the case. You have to provide separate protection for the Trademark in terms of Trademark registration.

It is also important to keep an eye on the registered Trademarks for possible infringement. As companies often lose sales and monetary profits by the original Trademark due to the infringing marks. However, you can avoid these circumstances after understanding the importance of Trademark registration and monitoring.

Related Articles: Why do you need a trademark monitoring?

How to Create a Trademark?

The Trademark must meet the requirements of the segment in which you want to file the Trademark. Moreover, it must be unique in nature as per the local IP office.

Trademark Individuality Criteria

The main criteria for the individuality of a trademark are:

Non-specific: A Trademark that is too common in nature cannot qualify for registration as anyone can use it.

Creative/Exotic: This type of Trademark gets

the maximum level of protection. This includes using a phrase or wordings that are not directly related to the product or services.

Expressive: The Descriptive type is only valid when the supplementary meaning is attached that shows the public relation of the Trademark.

Suggestive: This Trademark category demands the customer to find the logical relation between the word/phrase and the product or services.

Why consider The Trademark Search Company?

The Trademark search Company provides you with the most extensive search results from the Global Trademark database. Our teams of experienced professionals go through a manual search to be more precise. The outputs you receive are within the deadline and at pocket-friendly prices. We have proved ourselves since the past decade by providing 100% customer satisfaction.

1. **Why Trademark watching is Important?**

Trademark Watching is an important process which helps companies to identify the infringement and misuse of their trademark in a timely manner. The trademark watching allows trademark owners to get alerts when the filing of a similar trademark takes place. By keeping a check on similar trademarks, it ensures one’s position to oppose the trademark at the right time. Trademark watch asserts one’s rights by providing regular updates regarding the similar trademark. The owner has the rights to present the opposition actions against the application, aiming to prevent its registration.

Trademark Watching Significance: The Best Four

Trademark is basically a logo or a symbol representing any product or a company. Most companies understand the benefits of registering corporate brands as trademarks in the countries in which they trade their products. But, it is equally important to protect the trademark from the unauthorized and potentially damaging use. So, to avoid trademark infringement, trademark watching plays an essential role. The importance of it is as follows:

Early infringement identification: The earlier, the owner identifies infringement of the trademark, the easier it is for the companies to enforce their trademark rights. To identify this, keeping an eye over the trademark is very important. Early identification is important for brands at risk in building up evidence of misuse when acting against the infringement.

Option to oppose: Whenever you get to know that someone is trying to copy your trademark, you have the right to oppose it freely. Several companies provide services to monitor new trademark applications. Trademark watch helps you to get a notification that the upcoming trademark is similar to yours. This can benefit you from stopping that company by filing a formal notice of opposition at the trademark office.

Effective watching strategy: Trademark Watching is an important process in the proactive monitoring of registered marks. It helps to identify any misuse of the trademark. However, to be truly effective, there is a need for the formation of a trademark strategy. This is due to the fact that it takes into account the size and reach of the brand owner’s portfolio. A brand owner’s trademark watching strategy should cover all the relevant trademark registers to identify applications for similar trademark. It prevents the counterfeiting of the symbols and logos.

Technology and trademark watch: Technology improves the process of trademark protection by a huge margin. Online watching services deliver a similar service but on the wider internet. Based on the trademarks, the services monitor the web, including online message boards and auction sites to identify instances of infringement. Again, such services should take place in accordance, keeping the company’s core trademark rights in mind.

Related Articles: Trademark Filing Fees: A Quick Overview

What to watch?

It is important for one to keep a watch on things that can possibly damage the company’s reputation by trademark infringement. Trademark Watching to monitor for potentially conflicting application will typically take one of the three forms:

Identical trademark watch: It identifies marks or devices that are visually or phonetically identical.

Similar trademark watch: It identifies identically and confusingly similar marks.

Trademark watch with opinion: It identifies the trademarks based on their consideration of the prior art that impact the business and its market share.

In general, a trademark watch service can be a highly useful process in administering and monitoring intellectual property rights. It prevents unauthorized use of the trademark as well as determines the appropriate remedies in case of an infringement.

Related Articles: How to trademark a logo?

Why Choose Us? – The Trademark Watch Company

If you are looking to protect your trademark, The Trademark Watch Company (TTWC) will help you in doing so. TTWC boasts years of experience in trademark watching so that no one misuses the brand you have built. We keep a vigilant eye on every trademark filing going on multiple countries that can impact one’s brand. TTWC can help assess if the trademark, trade name or other trade-related assets are being misused anywhere in any jurisdiction. Our team consists of highly skilled experts with uttermost quality. We cover 92+ countries across the globe and our team has become successful in satisfying our clients.

1. **Why Trademark watching is Important?**

Trademark Watching is an important process which helps companies to identify the infringement and misuse of their trademark in a timely manner. The trademark watching allows trademark owners to get alerts when the filing of a similar trademark takes place. By keeping a check on similar trademarks, it ensures one’s position to oppose the trademark at the right time. Trademark watch asserts one’s rights by providing regular updates regarding the similar trademark. The owner has the rights to present the opposition actions against the application, aiming to prevent its registration.

Trademark Watching Significance: The Best Four

Trademark is basically a logo or a symbol representing any product or a company. Most companies understand the benefits of registering corporate brands as trademarks in the countries in which they trade their products. But, it is equally important to protect the trademark from the unauthorized and potentially damaging use. So, to avoid trademark infringement, trademark watching plays an essential role. The importance of it is as follows:

Early infringement identification: The earlier, the owner identifies infringement of the trademark, the easier it is for the companies to enforce their trademark rights. To identify this, keeping an eye over the trademark is very important. Early identification is important for brands at risk in building up evidence of misuse when acting against the infringement.

Option to oppose: Whenever you get to know that someone is trying to copy your trademark, you have the right to oppose it freely. Several companies provide services to monitor new trademark applications. Trademark watch helps you to get a notification that the upcoming trademark is similar to yours. This can benefit you from stopping that company by filing a formal notice of opposition at the trademark office.

Effective watching strategy: Trademark Watching is an important process in the proactive monitoring of registered marks. It helps to identify any misuse of the trademark. However, to be truly effective, there is a need for the formation of a trademark strategy. This is due to the fact that it takes into account the size and reach of the brand owner’s portfolio. A brand owner’s trademark watching strategy should cover all the relevant trademark registers to identify applications for similar trademark. It prevents the counterfeiting of the symbols and logos.

Technology and trademark watch: Technology improves the process of trademark protection by a huge margin. Online watching services deliver a similar service but on the wider internet. Based on the trademarks, the services monitor the web, including online message boards and auction sites to identify instances of infringement. Again, such services should take place in accordance, keeping the company’s core trademark rights in mind.

Related Articles: Trademark Filing Fees: A Quick Overview

What to watch?

It is important for one to keep a watch on things that can possibly damage the company’s reputation by trademark infringement. Trademark Watching to monitor for potentially conflicting application will typically take one of the three forms:

Identical trademark watch: It identifies marks or devices that are visually or phonetically identical.

Similar trademark watch: It identifies identically and confusingly similar marks.

Trademark watch with opinion: It identifies the trademarks based on their consideration of the prior art that impact the business and its market share.

In general, a trademark watch service can be a highly useful process in administering and monitoring intellectual property rights. It prevents unauthorized use of the trademark as well as determines the appropriate remedies in case of an infringement.

Related Articles: How to trademark a logo?

Why Choose Us? – The Trademark Watch Company

If you are looking to protect your trademark, The Trademark Watch Company (TTWC) will help you in doing so. TTWC boasts years of experience in trademark watching so that no one misuses the brand you have built. We keep a vigilant eye on every trademark filing going on multiple countries that can impact one’s brand. TTWC can help assess if the trademark, trade name or other trade-related assets are being misused anywhere in any jurisdiction. Our team consists of highly skilled experts with uttermost quality. We cover 92+ countries across the globe and our team has become successful in satisfying our clients. Reach out to The Trademark Watch Company to avail our services.

* 1. **Design Patent Examples – Why Are They So Important for You?**

Design patent, as the name suggests, is the patent right over ornamental design, unique shape, font, color arrangement, etc. on an article. An exemplary document for design patents shows how a design patent looks like. There are a few criteria on which we receive a design patent:

The first and foremost requirement is that the design should meet all the patentability criteria i.e. Novelty, Non-Obvious, Non-Disclosure, and patentable Subject matter.

Unlike the utility patent, design patent serves to protect the unique design of a product. Therefore, it is very much important for the design to be in conjunction with an article.

Also, that article or product is of commercial utility.

The design is repeatable, i.e. you can reproduce the exact design multiple times with exactly the same proportion.

The time period of protection is 14 years.

What is Design Patent Examples?

As mentioned earlier design patent examples are specially made patent document samples which are as per the patent office norms. They work as a reference for the current patent application. You can consider previously accepted patent applications for the same purpose.

An inventor should know for what they can receive a design patents for. Here are a few examples for the same:

S. No. Year Inventor Patent for Patent Number

1 1842 George Bruce New font U.S. Patent D1

2 1879 Auguste Bartholdi Statue of Liberty U.S. Patent D11,023

3 1919 American Legion The badge of American Legion Women’s Auxillary U.S. Patent D54,296

4 1936 Frank A. Redford Wigwam Motel U.S. Patent D98,617

What makes design patent examples important?

An example or reference always helps in making a more confident step in the future. Also, for the patent grant, it always better to consider an example over taking a leap of faith.

Reviewing your design patent application is worth your time and efforts. In short, if you file a patent application in haste it might cost huge amounts of money if the design doesn’t turn out as per the patentability criteria. Moreover, you might produce an application which is not as per the desired format of the patent office. Consequently, this will lead to rejection of your patent application with a huge loss of time and money.

Considering an example might increase the chances of getting a patent grant, manifolds. At the same time, it will save you the cost and your precious time spent on preparing the patent application.

Also Read: All you must know on Antecedent Basis

How to Find Design Patent Examples?

To begin with design patent example search, one can start by typing the keywords related to your idea.

USPTO offers a full-text database to perform patent applications search. This portal offers you quick search for USPTO approved patent examples with ease.

However, if you want to perform a thorough search, one must avail it by hiring an attorney. He/she will help you perform a thorough analysis of extensive and considerable results.

Approach at Professional Patent Illustrators

If you are serious about getting a design patent, ask yourself whether you want professional assistance or not. By now you know the drawbacks of an improper patent application or of not meeting the patentability criteria. A rejected application might take your chances of future patent protection for your invention. We at professional patent illustrators take care of the patentability criteria for patents and deliver top-quality utility and design patents. With 10+ years of experience in this industry, we have developed an expert team with thorough knowledge of the latest guidelines and norms. We guarantee you a quick turn-around-time and multiple iterations until we meet your needs.

* 1. **Difference between Illustration and Drafting: For a Perfect Patent Application**

Patent illustrations and drafting are ways of providing visual and details of your invention to your audience. At the time of patent filing, a visual always works the best to give an instant and precise reflection of your invention. There are major points of difference between Illustration and Drafting. However, people use these two terms interchangeably, in spite of having different meaning and significance altogether.

But, no matter what, these are pivotal to your patent application at the time of patent filing and you need to file them as per the rules and regulations of the USPTO.

Difference between Illustration and Drafting: A Concise Portrayal

Let us now look at the differences between Illustration and Drafting and by going through both the terms one-by-one. Also, in Intellectual Property, there is a term called “Patent Draft”. It has a distinct meaning, therefore, do not confuse it with either drafting or illustration.

Learn About Drafting:

Drafting is quite a broad term. It encompasses several meanings. In terms of patents and drawings, it carries two meanings which you will find here. Since this term belongs to the domain of drawings as well, people get confused and look for the difference between illustration and drafting.

Drafting is a stage wherein the writers prepare a preliminary document. It is a process through which a drafter produces a complete illustration or drawing or any written document. Also, it is a more generic term and marks a difference between illustration and drafting.

Related Article: Intellectual Property (IP) Paralegals Facts

What is a Patent Draft?

A patent draft is a very important part of the patent application and therefore, do not confuse it with the drafting of drawings or illustrations. The specifications part of the patent application is known as the patent draft. Hence, Patent Drafting is a process of writing a patent description and claims.

* 1. **Why patent assertion is important?**

Patent assertion takes place when the patent owner gets to know about the patent infringement on his patent. A Patent assertion is the declaration of the infringement by the patent owner. Even though the USPTO grants a patent, they do not enforce it. If you own a patent, it is your responsibility to make sure that no one infringes on that patent. If you find an issue of infringement, you must assert it and take legal action in order to right the wrong. Patent owner’s goal in the assertion is to stop the infringer on further using his invention and paying for the damages.

Essentials of Patent Assertion:

The assertion of patents simply requires the appropriate attribution and payment for the use of someone else’s intellectual property. If any company wishes to use the already patented invention, it must first acquire a patent license. This way, the company using the invention pays the patent owner a set amount of money throughout the time they use their invention.

Related Article: Intellectual Property Paralegals Facts

Taking patent assertion to court:

Civil cases require the plaintiff to prove someone guilty which is known as the burden of proof. The burden of proof in an infringement case under patent law lies with the patent owner. The patent owner has the right to go to court in case of patent infringement. Once the issue is taken to court, the party asserting the patent must be able to prove the accused party guilty.

Related Article: Significance of Patent Watching

Patent assertion benefit:

If the patent owner can successfully prove the violation of his patent, it can be very beneficial. It makes sure that the infringer rightfully pays you for your IP rights. When an infringer is found guilty, either the further use of patent stops or infringer pays for licensing to use the patent. More importantly, the infringer also pays for any use that took place before he was caught. This can come in the form of large settlements, sometimes an amount leading to millions of dollars.

Common patent assertion settlement:

Settlements for patent assertion are usually quite uneventful. If the violation is proven, the infringer pays money that appropriately covers the past and future use.

Under a patent license agreement, the licensed party can pay the patent owner in two different ways:

Each year for their profits made through the use of the patent.

Once per quarter for profits made through the use of the patents.

The licensee also has to pay royalties to the patent owner throughout the lifetime of the patent. Large companies sometimes pay the patent owner a huge amount of money at once instead of keeping up with the regular payments. One decides this amount by estimating how much the company will profit from the use of the patent. Accordingly, it takes a percentage of it depending on the royalty rate.

Multiple patent infringers:

In some cases, patent owners find out that more than one individual or company is infringing on their patent. This complicates the patent assertion process even more. In such cases, the owner has to prove the infringement case right individually. Such cases also lead to multiple settlements.

There are a few things to keep in mind when deciding whether or not to go for the patent assertion process. Firstly, you need to make sure of the infringement of your patent on a legal basis. Moreover, you must also make sure that the settling damages which the infringer pays you are right as per the standards.

Why Choose Us? – The Patent Watch Company

 It is essential for one to make sure that no one else is using his invention, thus affecting his business. So, it becomes very important to go for patent assertion services. If you are looking to seek any assistance regarding these services, The Patent Watch Company (TPWC) is your one-stop destination. We possess extremely skilled professionals who boast years of experience in this domain. TPWC covers numerous technology areas checking 100+ tasks every week. We have our reach globally as we provide services in 100+ countries. Our team also monitors general activities like regulatory approvals, investments, litigations, etc. The client’s legal safety is our first priority and we aim to provide 100% satisfaction to them. To avail our services, Visit The Patent Watch Company.

* 1. **Patent Filing Date vs Priority Date: Basic difference**

A lot of people that file a Patent application are unclear with the terms Patent Filing Date vs Priority Date. People often get confused with these. The USPTO (United States Patent and Trademark Office) faces a number of problems related to the patent dates. These dates help to determine the priority and time period for the rights of the Patent. Thus, it is important to understand the exact difference between Patent Filing Date vs Priority Date to seek beneficial outcomes through them. Here, we are going to discuss general similarities and dissimilarities between Patent Filing Date vs Priority Date. However, we first need to know about each of them separately.

Related Article: Why online patent paralegal services are important?

Patent Filing date:

A patent filing date is when the Patent Office recognizes the filing of the application for your patent. It is a key date that clarifies which application must get the patent first. The party which files the application first among the two similar applications gets the priority. Sometimes, there is a situation where the filing date of your patent application differs from the actual date of filing the application. This causes a distinction between the effective and the actual filing date.

Related Article: Patent Watch Services: A Vigilant Eye on Patent

Patent Priority Date:

A priority date is the earliest date on which an application may claim precedence. Also, it defines the prior art materials for the patent. Thus, it is necessary to claim the earliest possible priority date as it plays an important role in patenting particular inventions.

In the case of a single patent application, the priority date and the filing date are the same for the patent application. However, in the case of multiple interrelated patent applications, the priority date of the application is the filing date of the earliest patent that disclosed the invention initially.

Patent Filing Date vs Priority Date:

The important issue to understand regarding filing dates is the difference between the Patent filing date and vs priority date. Generally, the filing date is the date when you filed the patent application. On the other hand, the priority date defines the date of the establishment of the novelty of your invention.

There are many cases where the priority date is different than the filing date. Also, you may claim a priority date on the basis of previous patent applications. In such situations, the priority date for the new application is the same as that of the patent application.

Also, you may claim the priority date of a patent application in various circumstances. It is possible with a continuation application. You may claim the priority date on a foreign application for the domestic application if you filed an international patent application and later filed a domestic application for the same.

Therefore, Priority date means the earliest filing date on which the novelty of your invention is evaluated against the prior art. Hence, the priority date for your application is the date of filing of complete specification if you have not filed a provisional application.

Why trust The Patent Filing Company?

The Patent Filing Company is equipped with a team of professionals and experts in various fields of Patent filing. We believe in 100% customer satisfaction while considering a pocket-friendly price. We provide you the most beneficial guidance at every stage of your patent. Also, you may keep an eye on the work status of your patent application on a regular basis. Moreover, we provide you a quick turnaround time and iterations until you get what you want. You can place your order online and for more service-related inquiries, you can visit The Patent Filing Company.

* 1. **Cost of Trademark Registration in India – With Bonus Information**

limited iterations and professional services for complete trademark life-cycle and even beyond. The cost of Trademark registration in India depends on a number of factors. A registered trademark is a distinctive mark that declares its ownership by a company for its products or services. Although patent registration is not compulsory, it saves your brand from potential infringers and safeguards its authenticity and uniqueness.

Before discussing the cost associated let us first discuss the proper procedure for registration of the trademark with the Indian PTO.

The procedure of Trademark Registration in India

If you own a business or want to own one and want trademark registration for your brand, learn the right way of registering your trademark. Trademark is now mandatory for the successful recognition and growth of a business. Also, so many companies are launching, and they need some sort of identification that differentiates their products from others. Be it in device, symbol, name, label, numeral or color form.

Let us now discuss the process for trademark registration in India. Beginning with the first step, that is Trademark Search.

Trademark Search: this involves searching through a database of the trademark. This is so to find out if your logo is similar to some other trademark or not. Trademark attorneys and agents conduct his search for you. Also, their search results are thorough and reliable, through both online and offline modes. Once you find that your trademark is unique, then you are good to go with the trademark application creation process.

Trademark Application: once you get to know that your trademark is unique you can now draft a trademark application and submit it to the Indian patent office. From this point, you can start using the TM symbol on your trademark.

Trademark Registration: depending upon the type of company you own, trademark registration cost in India is different for different entities. The procedure is as per the Trademarks Act 1999.

The examination and report generation usually takes 3 months to 1 year depending upon their backlog.

After the generation of the examination report, the applicant replies within a period of a month to the generated examination report. Only when the reply satisfies the registration team, then the trademark proceeds for an advertisement in the trademark journal.

Pre-grant opposition occurs at this stage so that if anybody finds the mark infringing over an already existing trademark. Also, the time period for this is 4 months from the date of advertisement of the trademark in the Journal.

In case of no opposition, the application proceeds for registration. If in case opposition occurs, then further hearing takes place in the court.

Moving further we will discuss the cost of trademark registration in India. These costs are as per the trademark rules of 2017.

Cost of Trademark Registration in India

Cost of Trademark registration in India is quite variable. This is so because various sections and clauses are applicable. Also, you can go for both online and offline filing mode and the cost of registration is different for both the modes.

Here is an overview of the trademark registration cost in India. It also involves costs related to different proceedings that might or might not take place but are equally important. You can find a detailed structure of cost of trademark registration in India on Controller General of Patents, Designs and Trade Marks.

S. No. PAYABLE Cost of Physical Filing Cost of Online Filing

1 Cost of trademark registration in India for application for startups, Individuals and Small Enterprises ₹ 5,000 ₹ 4,500

 In all other cases (Note: Fee is for each class and for each mark ) ₹ 10,000 ₹ 9,000

2 On a notice of opposition or application for rectification of procedure. ₹3,000 ₹2,700

3 For renewal of registration of a trademark under section 25 for each class. ₹10,000 ₹9,000

4 On an application under section 45 to register a subsequent proprietor in case of assignment or transfer for each trademark. ₹10,000 ₹9,000

5 Request for search and issue of a certificate under rule 22(1) ₹10,000 ₹9,000

6 Application for: Extension of time, or Certified copy, or Duplicate Registration Certificate. Or inspection of document or Particulars of advertisement to the registrar, or seeking grounds of decision of Registrar. Or Enter in the register and advertise a note of certificate of validity. Amendment in the trademark application, or Particulars of advertisement of a trademark to Registrar. ₹1,000 ₹900

7 On application for registration of a person as a trademark agent under rule 147 & 149. ₹5,000 ₹4,500

8 Handling fee for certification and transmission of the international application to the International Bureau with MM2(E) Not Allowed ₹5,000

Trademark Registration Services at Your Trademark Team

Trademark is the first and the foremost identification symbol of your brand. It is as unique as the products that you offer. Hence, enabling and protecting your trademark from potential infringement is very much important. Moreover, registering a trademark is equally prudent as soon as you find a unique trademark for your company. Let the experts handle your trademark filing/registration processes. At Your Trademark Team, you will find experts with a deep understanding of Indian and Global Trademark Laws. Client satisfaction is of paramount importance to us. Therefore, we offer you quick turn-around-time with no compromise on the quality of results.

We do take care of the cost of trademark registration in India and as well as for global filings. Not only this, we provide unlimited iterations and professional services for complete trademark life-cycle and even beyond.

* 1. **USPTO Trademark Filing: Key Steps**

If you are a startup or an established firm, USPTO trademark filing is of sheer necessity in the current scenario. The trademark is the identity card of your brand. In essence, people instantly identify the company by just recognizing the trademark.

 Now, imagine a scenario where someone comes with an identical trademark as yours. This will not only degrade your sales but also, confuse your brand identity. Hence, through USPTO trademark filing and registration, your trademark is legally now your own. Therefore, if any infringer comes up with an identical or similar mark, you now have the authority of filing infringement cases against them.

Here you will find a step by step procedure of USPTO trademark filing in 2 easy steps:

USPTO Trademark Filing – Know the Procedure

The fool-proof way of securing your trademark is USPTO Trademark Filing . In order to get trademark protection to follow the steps given below.

Verify Uniqueness: firstly, find out whether the design, logo, scent, or sound that you want to trademark is actually unique or not. Take help of:

USPTO’s Trademark Electronic Search System (TESS).

State’s registered trademarks

Internet Search

Figure 1 – Interface of USPTO’s Trademark Electronic Search System

TESS also provides you additional search options for more intricate and detailed searches. Refer to the image given below:

Figure 2 – Basic and Addition Search Options of TESS

Covering all these searches will provide you thorough trademark search results.

The whole purpose of registering a trademark lies in its uniqueness. Therefore, USPTO is very strict regarding this criterion. Your mark should have no similarity with an already registered trademark. Along with with this criterion, the factors due to which patent office examiner can reject your trademark is:

An offensive Trademark – an unpleasant logo, smell, design or name will lead to straightforward rejection.

An individual’s name

Consisting of a geographic description

Generic term (Non-English)

Novel, Book or Movie title

NOTE: You can take the help of a trademark attorney to be confident with your search results. He/she will carry out in-depth research and will take care of further filing procedures.

Trademark Filing: once you are sure about the uniqueness of your trademark, you are free to move with the filing procedure. Here you will find 2 modes of trademark filing- online and offline.

Online Mode- Trademark Electronic Application System (TEAS) – it offers a straightforward process of trademark/service mark filing. It is the official USPTO trademark filing portal. The only requirement is of your contact information so that the PTO office examiner can reach out to you. Along with this, provide the following details for a healthy USPTO trademark filing and registration.

Refer to the image given below:

Figure 3 – Interface of USPTO’s Trademark Electronic Application System

A replica of the mark, either in the form of a drawing or image

Image of goods with the design present, if applicable

Classification of the type of items attached to the mark

Explanation as to why the company needs a trademark.

It also gives you the option of filing a regular or reduced fee filing option and whether an attorney is filing an application. Refer to the image given below:

Figure 4 – Filing Options on TEAS

Once you provide all this information, your USPTO trademark filing procedure now completes with this.

Related Articles: Global TM Search: Strategies and Advantages

Trademark Prosecution Procedure at the USPTO

Refer to the following flow chart to get a glimpse of the trademark prosecution that takes place at the USPTO. You will also find the timeline and deadlines of various stages. As you look through the chart you will find various deadlines to meet. Be mindful of performing the tasks on time, as the USPTO is very strict regarding the timeline.

Figure 5 – Flowchart on USPTO Trademark Prosecution

Trademark Filing Approach at TTFC

Before you move to the trademark filing stage, ask yourself whether you actually need trademark filing assistance. USPTO receives more than 1 lac trademark applications every year, out of this only 60% of applications get approval. Even a slight similarity or confusion can lead to rejection. Hence, it is advisable to take professional assistance for the same. We at the trademark filing company provide professional assistance for USPTO trademark filing, search and monitoring services. We assure you of the quality of our services, as our experts hold years of experience. Also, we do provide quality results and multiple iterations for complete satisfaction. To know more, do visit, The Trademark Filing Company.

* 1. **Why Patent Docketing Process is Important for Your Patent?**

The patent docketing process is at the very core of patent management at any patent law firm and research companies. Moreover, what required is an overall smooth docketing system without glitches. Since the patent process generates a great deal of paperwork. As soon as the documents reach the patent office, paralegals allot the documents a file name or number. Soon after this, they upload those documents to the database.

Learning how to create a smooth docketing process can help you:

Create a smooth docket for your firm from scratch;

Smoothen a prepared docket;

In switching your IP docketing system.

Learning about one process can solve three problems and can help maintain a rather smooth docket for the long run.

You can avail of these benefits only by following the below-mentioned steps carefully.

Patent Docketing Process – Complete Anatomy

What happens to the patent applications and other documents as soon as they reach a patent law firm or patent professional organizations? How these firms maintain so many documents?

The answer to these questions is –a robust patent docketing system.

But how does it work? Let’s dive into the patent docketing process.

A common mailbox: since docketing begins as soon as a patent application reaches in the mailbox of the patent examiner or attorney. As the number of clients and applications increases at the time of patent filing, it becomes difficult to handle multiple documents. Therefore, at this stage creating a common mailbox proves to be a smart idea. You can create client-specific mailboxes or can categories them as per your convenience. This strategy proves to help in the long run for firms with small docketing needs.

Docketing file/manual: a manual works to help in case of an emergency like system technical issues, or a patent docketer might switch his/her organization. In such cases, a well-maintained patent docketing file/manual supports the docketing process.

Customize robust docketing software: in today’s fast-paced patent environment it is impossible to singly depend on manual procedures. Hence, it is better to incorporate robust docketing software and customize them as per the requirements. The software in this league includes – IP Manager, Anaqua, Memotech, Docket Trak, Patricia, IPfolio, DIAMS, Alt Legal and Equinox. Moreover, the software will help you create periodic reports on time and a convenient medium for sharing reports with clients.

Also Read: Most Important Points About Patent Docketing Systems

Build and train a patent docketing team: building a team divides the task and helps in the inefficient working of the docketing system. In a team where every person performs some specified tasks help reduce the burden and ultimately fuels the overall efficiency.

A supervisor/head: patent docketing team requires a person who knows each and every aspect of the patent docketing process and system. A supervisor/head not only circulates the tasks but also, tracks the common mailboxes, coordinates with multiple teams and patent attorneys. Hence, it harmonizes the work in a more centralized manner.

Timely audits: not only creating but also a time-to-time audit is way more necessary for an efficient patent docketing process. Since the patent procedure is long and cumbersome, tad-bit of errors are inevitable. “To err is human”, therefore, not only from clients but also, the patent office officials make mistakes. Mismatches can occur in titles, dates, in patent drawings, which might go undetected through an automated system. Hence, manual auditing and cleaning drive is mandatory for a smooth patent docketing process.

How is the patent docketing process important?

For the smooth functioning of the patent process, you cannot ignore this major aspect – patent docketing. Below are the points as to how patent docketing process plays a vital role in the patent lifecycle.

 Without patent docketing, there is no smooth functioning of the response from both the client and the patent office end. Since it helps in timely notifies the clients for timely filing and responding to the patent office (USPTO).

It is not just a data entry task but the docketer needs in-depth legal and paralegal knowledge and an eye-for-detail to maintain an efficient patent docketing system.

Multiple checks and audits by patent docketers ensure the credibility of the prepared patent drafts and documents.

Prevents malpractice lawsuits when a law firm misses a filing date which can lead to patent rejection by the patent office.

Our Patent Docketing Approach

A smooth docketing process catalyzes the patent prosecution process and ultimately helps with a quicker patent grant. Our seamless docket managers and expert professionals ensure a 100% 4-eye quality check for each document. We provide nothing but the best and robust manual patent docketing and support it with state-of-the-art docketing software. At Perfect Patent Docketing, we have an expert pool of professionals and have managed to docket almost 6500+ patents and trademarks worldwide. You can rely on our services, since, client satisfaction is our top priority and for that, we provide multiple iterations and quick turn-around-time. To know more and to claim our services, visit our service page.

* 1. **What is an Inferential Claim?**

An Inferential claim is a claim that states some facts after we apply reasoning to a certain passage. Also, it may state that something supports/implies/follows another. It defines the main objective hidden in any argument.

Types of Inferential claim:

Explicit Inferential Claim: We usually attest the Explicit Inferential Claim with concluding words that indicate some decision. These claims include indicator words like Thus, Therefore, Since, Hence, etc.

For example, Junk food contains a huge amount of cholesterol and a high level of cholesterol leads to blockage of blood vessels. Thus, Junk food may cause a heart attack.

Implicit Inferential Claim: We use an Implicit Inferential Claim to determine an inferential relationship between the statements of a passage. However, the passage does not include an indicator word.

For example, Global warming is leading to the meltdown of ice at the poles. This meltdown is raising the water level of the oceans and coastal areas are more prone to flood now.

Also Read: Tips & Tricks for High-Quality Patent Draft

Why only Patent Drafting Catalyst?

Our professional team at the Patent drafting Catalyst has an experience of more than a decade dealing with drafting formalities. We have 100+ full-time drafters that work on 1500+ applications per year. Also, we believe in 100% customer satisfaction with the most accurate results. With a quick turnaround time, precise working, handy application and pocket-friendly prices we have proved ourselves every time. To know more about our services, do visit Patent drafting catalyst.

* 1. **Patent Cost in India: Know About all the Costs Involved**

During the creation of an invention, it may come to your mind, “What is the patent cost in India?” The answer is not fixed, as it depends on you and your needs. Broadly speaking, you will have to shell out money for 2 purposes:

Government fees

Professional charges

The entire patent registration process involves different steps, some mandatory and some optional. Either way, some steps involve the payment of fees or charges. Now even these charges depend on whether you are a natural person, a small organization or a big organization.

In this article, you’ll find the costs that you need to pay for all the steps of the patent registration process. You may say that the overall patent cost in India is approximately 50,000 to 1,60,000 INR. But where will you fall within this bracket? Let’s find out.

Patent Cost in India: Everything You Need to Know

1. Patentability Search

This is the very first step. It’s not mandatory but it is highly advisable. You would want to hire a professional agency or organization for this. They’ll perform an exhaustive search for prior art in all possible databases and provide you with a patentability search report. These include patent databases of different countries, research journals, conferences, etc. Based on the results, you can determine if should go ahead with the patent filing process.

The professional charges at this step vary from 10,000 to 20,000 INR.

2. Drafting the Patent Application

Drafting a patent application is an art. A patent is a very precise techno-legal document. You need to be knowledgeable in both technical (field of the invention) and legal fields (Indian Patent Act). Many inventors try to write a patent application on their own and focus completely on the technical perspective. Neglecting the legal point of view can prove to be expensive, like facing rejection from the Indian Patent Office. Hence, it is highly advisable to hire a good professional with appropriate experience. They can improve your patent application significantly and boost your chances of getting a patent. Then you have a provisional and non-provisional application. Depending on which application you file, the prices vary.

Patent drafting charges range from 20,000 to 30,000 INR.

Also Read: Patent Types and IP Protections in India and the USA

3. Filing the patent application, publication, and examination

After you feel that your application draft is ready, you can finally file it with the Indian Patent Office. Here is a list of forms that you require while filing a patent with the IPO.

The appropriate forms along with their appropriate fees are as follows:

S. No Description Natural Person Small Entity Other than Small Entity Condition

1. Patent grant application form 1600 4000 8000 Mandatory

2. Early publication fee 2500 6250 12500 Optional

3. Patent Application Examination Request 4000 10000 20000 Mandatory

4. Cost of extra sheets over 30 sheets 160/sheet 400/sheet 800/sheet Mandatory

5 Cost of extra claims over 10 claims 320/claim 800/claim 1600/claim Mandatory

4. Renewal Fees

After you clear all the objections that the controller raises for your application, you’ll receive a grant for your patent. The validity of the patent is 20 years from the priorty date. But within those 20 years, you’ll have to pay a renewal fee from time to time. You can find the details in the table below:

Renewal Fee-Year Natural Person Small Entity Other Than Small Entity

3 to 6 800 2000 4000

7 to 10 2400 6000 12000

11 to 15 4800 12000 24000

16 to 20 8000 20000 40000

If you wish to know about the costs in further details, you can visit this link from IP India, the official website.

Also Read: IPR Issues of India: Challenges to be Aware of Before Filing

Need professional help with Patent Cost in India? – Your Patent Team

You know the various steps of the patent registration process. Needless to say, patent registration is not an inexpensive affair and there is no guarantee of getting a grant. It is vital to be sure every step of the way and for that, hiring a professional is highly advisable.

YPT is a team of 225+ technology/industry experts who speak the inventor’s language and have a deep understanding of Indian & Global Patent Laws. YPT utilizes its knowledge in patent prosecution and patent enforcement to draft patent applications, ensuring maximum enforceability and cost-saving. We have an in-depth understanding of the working style of all 4 patent offices in India and also have a good network with them to ensure expedited and accurate information.

* 1. **Trademark Registration Fees: Know All the Costs**

If you’re seeking a trademark, then the question of trademark registration fees must have come to your mind. Trademark registration can be a lengthy process, and it is not inexpensive. Hence, you should know the trademark registration fees so that you can plan out your expenses accordingly.

Seeking protection for your brand by filing a trademark is very important. You would not want anyone else to steal your brand name. So, let us dive straight into the details of the registration fee.

Trademark Registration Fees: Cost at Each Step

The trademark registration process involves some steps, and each step has certain costs that come with it. Let us understand each one with the cost to make a wise decision.

1. Trademark Search

Before even beginning the registration process, you must conduct a comprehensive trademark search. The results of the search will tell you if your mark is original and not in use. If there is an overlapping trademark then you will need to change your trademark. But, it will prevent you from filing a trademark that would face direct rejection.

You can conduct this search on your own or hire a professional trademark search service. You can choose between different regions and methods for this search. An Artificial Intelligence (AI) search will cost less in comparison to a manual search. But the result of a manual search is better. The current state of AI would not be able to distinguish between marks, industries, and uses as well as a human can.

The cost of an AI search can be around $60 and a manual search can be around $120.

2. Trademark Registration Fees: Initial Application Forms

While deciding to pay the trademark registration fees, you need to decide the basis under which you want to file. There are 2 broad categories for the basis under which you can file your application.

Commercial use (Section 1(a) filing basis) – You file on this basis when you are already using your trademark commercially. If the entire process goes smoothly, then you don’t need to pay any additional fee at all.

Intent to use (Section 1(b) filing basis) – You file under this basis when you are not using your mark yet. But, you have a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. There are additional costs that you might need to pay apart from the initial application fees.

After receiving the NOA, you must file an SOU within 6 months of the issuance of the NOA. If you don’t, then you will have to pay $125 per class of goods or services for filing an extension request.

After deciding the filing basis, you can select the appropriate initial application form.

There are 3 initial application forms that you can choose from:

Teas Plus: $225 per class of goods/services

The TEAS Plus application has the lowest trademark registration fees. However, you will also need to meet stricter requirements. They are:

File a complete application. Nearly all the fields in the form are mandatory.

You must select your goods/services from the USPTO’s Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual.

You will have to pay the fees for all the classes at the time of filing.

Provide a valid email address and authorize the USPTO to correspond to this email regarding the application.

File relevant application-related submissions through TEAS.

Teas RF: $275 per class of goods/services

The TEAS RF has a set of minimum filing requirements that you must meet. Along with it, you must also:

File relevant application-related submissions through TEAS.

Provide a valid email address and authorize the USPTO to correspond over this email regarding the application.

Teas Regular: $400 per class of goods/service

This has the highest trademark registration fees. However, you only need to meet the minimum filing requirements.

Related Articles: Online Trademark Filing: Know How to Do It

3. Other Additional Trademark Registration Fees

There are primarily 2 cases where you might have to spend more on trademark registration fees. They are before registration or after.

1. During the registration process:

When requesting an extension of time to show the use of the mark. That is if it wasn’t a part of the initial application: $125

Showing use if it wasn’t a part of the initial application: $100.

Related Articles: Overview of Trademark fees.

2. After Mark Registers:

Declaration under Section 8: Before the end of the first 6 years of the registration, you must file a declaration under Section 8. This states that your trademark is still in commercial use along with evidence. $100 fee per class of goods or services.

Renewal under Section 9: Before the end of the 10 years of your trademark’s validity, you must file for renewal under Section 9. This is done along with another declaration under Section 8, with the same requirements to get the trademark renewal. $425 per class of goods or services in the registration.

An additional fee is necessary if you are filing within the grace period. You can find a more elaborate explanation of maintenance filing requirements here.

Need assistance with your Trademark Filing? – The Trademark Filing Company

It is absolutely crucial to secure the necessary protection for your brand by registering a trademark. The trademark registration fees involve a lot of charges and it is not an inexpensive process. Therefore, if you wish to take professional aid, The Trademark Filing Company can help you. We focus on protecting your business identity from copycats. Our expertise lies in providing gold-standard trademark data and our team boasts years of experience in trademark filing. We are aware of the latest rules and guidelines that exist in the trademark laws. We’ll ensure that your trademark application adheres to them. However, we don’t stop there. You cannot worry about your trademark 24/7, so you can also use our trademark monitoring services.

* 1. **Trademark Searches: An Overview**

Trademark searches refer to brand registration searches. The trademark of a company is the most important feature of its existence. Once the company applies for the trademark registration and gets the grant, it can start using the trademark symbol. One can classify the trademark searches into different classes. A trademark search class can be a bit challenging because of numerous trademark classes having different class names. However, one can conduct a successful trademark search through the help of the database of TESS of the USPTO. We will discuss the trademark searches and their classes.

Trademark Searches Overview:

Before you try to file the trademark, it is essential to do a trademark search. The trademark classification system of the USPTO categorizes all goods and services into a total of 45 trademark classes. It includes 34 goods classes and 11 service classes. The classification of the trademark search is as follows:

1. Trademark search by class:

There are basically two criteria by which trademark searches are classified. They are goods and services. As we have seen, there are a total of 45 trademark classes including goods and service classes. So, for searching any trademark one needs to enter the class under which the trademark comes. The USPTO doesn’t lump goods and services together in the same class.

Therefore a business that sells bags of coffee to the retailer is selling goods that are in class 30. However, if the business runs a coffee shop it is providing services in class 43. If a business sells roasted beans in a coffee shop, it is selling goods and rendering services at the same time. Therefore it needs to register under two classes- a goods class and a service class.

Related articles: Trademark Filing: A Step by Step Process

2. Trademark Electronic Search System:

TESS helps in searching the already registered trademark in the USPTO database. Searching the trademarks on TESS allows you to find the trademark similar to that of yours. So, it makes sure that you do not copy someone else’s trademark.

Related articles: Benefits of Trademark Monitoring Service

3. Trademark Infringement:

A business should not infringe on the trademark rights of another business. One considers the violation of trademark rights as intentional and defaulter might have to pay the damages to the trademark owner.

Therefore, it is wise to check the registration of the trademark. One must also check the database of the home state of the trademark owner. Trademark seekers are bound to find hundreds of trademarks that look the same throughout the country. But, they need to know how to filter through their results to tell which ones are protected by the laws.

Also read: Trademark Watch and its Significance

4. Common-Law Search:

A common law search takes you beyond government records for a trademark search. With a common law search, you can check telephone listings, industrial records, internet sources and more. A common law search can help you find out whether others are using a trademark without filing the trademark protection. Common law rights follow from actual use. In general, the first person to use the mark in commerce with the USPTO holds the right to use the trademark.

Why Choose Us? – The Trademark Search Company

The trademark searches play a crucial role these days in the trademark filing process. The trademark search company (TTSC) provides clients with a world-class trademark search electronically in minimal time. You invest a lot in building your brand by creating logos and applying for trademarks. Before you put this effort, you need to make sure that it is in the right direction. At the TTSC, our aim is to let you focus on building the right brand through a comprehensive trademark search. Our team provides you with the most flexible and widest coverage at a lower price. TTSC makes sure of 100% satisfaction to our clients without compromising on the quality of work. Visit The Trademark Search Company to avail our services.

* 1. **Important Points to Consider while Doing Translation of Patents**

Translation of patents is the task of converting patent documentation into another language. These are most likely to be read by legal professionals and potential patent licensee in a foreign country. The patent translation should be such that a person having no prior knowledge of it also understands the invention. A single error can make or break the deal, so utmost care should be taken for the correct translation. Patent translations in a specific country should also meet the filing country’s specific patent norms.

Key benefits of translation of patents:

The expansion of the horizon of the patent landscape now cuts across the international boundary. Translation as an activity is most important at the time of preparation of a patent filing. One must make sure that the technical terms of the invention during the translation of patents are precise and accurate. Some of the important points to consider while doing a translation of patents are as follows:

Go for native writers of the target language:

Language is a kind of conditioning that develops slowly and steadily with the passage of time. While doing multi-country patent filings, one must submit a translation of patents document in the patent filing country’s specific language. Obviously, our main aim is to ensure that the translated document is true and correct in all its forms. One can ensure this by hiring a native person whose first language is the language we are intending to file our application. The probability of getting a patent translation correct by a native translator is quite high.

Related Article: Patent Filing: Know How to Proceed

Expert in the subject matter:

Translating the patent document is not like casual translation where we don’t bother much about grammar and punctuations. Here, a single alteration in patent translation can change the whole meaning of the document thereby resulting in financial and legal consequences. Thus, it is very important for the patent translator to be well-acquainted with the subject matter of the content. A subject matter expert can use the exact terms that one requires to express the actual idea of the document.

Acquaintances with technical vocabulary:

Patents are scientific and technical documents that contain a method, process, or technology of a particular stream. One can relate it to the engineering stream, life-science stream, automotive engineering stream, Nano-technology, or computer science. Therefore, it is important to ensure that the translator has adequate knowledge of that particular stream. He must also be well-acquainted with terminologies and vocabularies of that stream.

Formats required by the patent office:

Adhering merely to language-related norms is not enough while doing patent translations. One also needs to be familiar with the regulatory norms prevailing in that jurisdiction. If you are not familiar with the format of the respective patent office, it becomes difficult to complete the registration process. You may end up submitting your invention in a format that doesn’t meet the requirements of the respective patent office. Thus, it will increase the cost of the patent applicant to again follow the whole process. So, one should make sure that the patent translator has got vast experience and is well aware of the patent office norms.

Related Articles: How To Conduct Patent Search: A Quick Guide

An in-house multi-disciplinary team:

It is one of the most important factors while doing a translation of patents. While outsourcing patent translation works, one must ensure that the patent translation service provider is equipped with a multi-disciplinary team. The team must include translators, proof-readers, linguists, lawyers, and engineers. This is because a multi-disciplinary team can provide real and accurate inputs so that the theme of the document remains intact.

Related Article: What is the Importance of Patent Proofreading?

Looking for Patent Translation? – Patent Translation Express

 For accurate patent translation, it is important for the translator to have expertise on the subject matter. If you are looking to seek assistance in patent translation, Patent Translations Express (PTE) would guide you with the best possible solutions. PTE offers the most economical patent translation services to the clients without compromising on the accuracy of the translation. With the team of professional experts, we have been translating the patent-related documents in various technical domains. Our team of patent translators has a deep understanding of patent literature. At PTE, we optimize the manual translation effort to achieve faster turnarounds for our clients. We cover more than 40+ languages across the world for patent translations. To avail our services, Visit Patent Translation Express.

* 1. **Virtual IP Paralegal: Why Should You Hire One?**

Sometimes, in the world of IP, the best paralegal services may not be available to you physically at all times. This is why you should consider hiring a Virtual IP Paralegal. A virtual IP paralegal essentially does all the work for you just like any other IP paralegal. The only difference is the physical presence of a person for the same.

The processes of IP require a lot of time, management and needless to say money. To ensure that you get the right protection for your IP, you must ensure that you complete every process on time. These include filing procedures, court dates, responding to official documents, etc.

This is where you would require an IP paralegal. However, if you cannot find a good service near your place of residence then you can hire a virtual IP paralegal. Let’s see how they can help.

Also, Read: Intellectual Property (IP) Paralegal Facts

What does an IP Paralegal do?

An IP paralegal assists you in matters of IP like patents, trademarks, copyrights, etc. Their job is to make sure that processes such as application preparation, filing, litigation, etc. go smoothly.

Another big role that they have to play is conducting absolutely thorough IP research. Since we are talking about IP here, it has an inextricable link to technology. Hence, an IP paralegal needs to not only have the legal knowledge but also some technical knowledge/experience as well

How can a Virtual IP Paralegal Help You?

You are now aware of the work that an IP paralegal needs to do. So you might ask, “Can a virtual IP paralegal help me?” The simple answer is yes. How? All thanks to the advancement in technology.

Everything is available digitally. You can scan documents and email them to anyone in any part of the world via the internet. The physical absence of a person further reduces due to video calls to talk more easily with your virtual IP paralegal.

This lack of a person physically working in front of you can often be not felt at all. This happens if you are dealing with the best paralegal services. They will ensure that they fulfill their responsibilities in a holistic manner. Let’s understand their responsibilities in greater detail.

Virtual IP Paralegal: Job Responsibilities

Now, we’ll elaborately explain why physical presence doesn’t matter in the job responsibilities of a virtual IP paralegal. You can see that their responsibilities focus on 5 domains, which are:

Research work

You never start off by directly filling forms when it comes to IP. Whether it is trademark, patent or copyright, it is vital to perform a background check. You need to be 100% sure about your IP before filing. Otherwise, you might end up just wasting your time and money. The USPTO might reject your application. Worse, you can get tied up in litigation due to infringement of someone else’s IP. Hence, researching before filing is very important.

A virtual IP paralegal will conduct searches like:

Trademark Search

Prior Art Search

Patent Novelty Search

Patent Invalidity Search

They can assist you with other forms of searches as well, according to your needs.

Document Drafting and Filing

Perhaps the most important part of any IP process; it requires skill as well as experience. You need to make sure that your IP documents are extremely thorough, highly elaborate and irrefutable. The IP paralegal can help you with the preparation and filing of the following processes:

Trademark Preparation and Filing

IDS Preparation and Filing

Patent Drafting and Patent Filing

Patent Proofreading

Other necessary IP documents

IP Docketing

The immense volume of documents makes IP docketing absolutely essential. You will require assistance to keep them in an orderly manner. An IP paralegal can efficiently docket your documents. They utilize docketing systems to help them manage all your documents easily.

A good system for patent docketing will also ensure that you don’t miss any deadlines. Hence, it will be easier for you to stay vigilant about your application.

Dealing with Office Actions

Despite your best attempts, the USPTO might find faults in your applications. They will communicate these faults in the form of an Office action. Consequently, you must respond to them in the form of an Office action response. Drafting those responses perfectly requires you to take assistance from a virtual IP paralegal.

Monitoring your IP

The job of an IP paralegal doesn’t end here. They need to assist you in guarding your IP post its grant as well. This means being vigilant and monitoring your IP for any possible infringements. It is your responsibility to enforce your rights. An IP paralegal service can provide you with Patent Watch and Trademark Watch among other watch services.

Need Paralegal Assistance? – Patent Paralegal Force

For any technology company or R&D, the main concern is to keep track of their leading competitors, dynamically. This can become tricky to do if you are alone or new to this. You should consider hiring a professional like Patent Paralegal Force.

We provide you with patent application monitoring. We alert you on a regular basis about the latest patents in your field of invention. Our fully-functional team of paralegal professionals uses state-of-the-art tools, which reliably provide a bouquet of services. These include docketing for multiple countries, proofreading, end-to-end IDS management, document procurement, data verification and even form preparation and filing. We are currently serving our clients from more than 45 countries. Client satisfaction is paramount to us. So, we offer the best paralegal services at a negligible cost.

* 1. **Patent Proofreading Process – Complete Analysis**

A patent is all about its concreteness and clarity, which makes patent proofreading important for ensuring the enforceability of the patent. The patent proofreading process is about giving a thorough view of the patent application for looking even a tad-bit of error.

Almost 90% of the patent applications have at least 1 mistake in them. And even 2% or less issued patents contain no mistake.

Since a single mistake in any form can change the meaning of the content or might make it redundant. Therefore, spending hours on a rigorous patent proofreading makes it worth the while.

Steps of Patent Proofreading Process

Before we begin with the process, you should know that errors can occur from both applicants and the patent office end.

Applicant’s error can occur at the time of patent application drafting and are highlighted at the time of patent prosecution. On the other hand, patent office errors occur at the time of any update made by the examiner at the time of patent prosecution. These errors come into light during prosecution or after the patent grant.

Talking about the major issues, making mistakes in any part of the claim(s) proves a deterrent for the patent. This completely spoils the credibility of the patent, if not corrected on time.

Whatever is the case, our task is to eradicate the errors and mistakes at an early stage.

To commence with the patent proofreading process consider taking the help of professional proofreading services. This is advice for availing the best of the patent proofreading advantages.

To commence, a proofreader will ask you to generate the invention details (patent document) through online (in doc., or pdf. format) or offline mode.

Next is to ensure, the information provided is correct by comparing the first page (bibliographic information with the file wrapper (prosecution history).

Moving through the invention description and drawings, he/she ensures that the drawings and specifications are as per the USPTO standard.

Each and every paragraph of invention specification is subject to proofreading. This is to ensure that the “specification as issued” is the same as “specification as filed”.

Claims are the most vital part of the patent specification, hence proofreading claims becomes prudent for the patent proofreader.

Refer to – Why you need the Proofreading of Patent Claims?

Key Areas to Proofread

Although the complete patent draft is subject to proofreading, some parts of the draft play a major role in the enablement of the invention.

Grammar: the words that an inventor uses to write his/her patent application should convey the invention’s intended purpose. Therefore, during the patent proofreading process, a thorough analysis of patent specification and application for correct grammar usage is mandatory. Even if punctuation goes here and there, it can pose a huge risk for the invention’s credibility.

Claim(s): these are the most important element for the patent proofreading process as they play a major role in setting boundaries of your invention. Therefore, proofreading claims for the meaning they convey, usage of words and reducing data ambiguity becomes prudent.

Drawings and technicalities: drawings are a short-cut to a better understanding of your invention. Hence, it is wise to check if the drawings are too complex or might lack any important aspect. The usage of technical terminologies reflects the scientific understanding of the inventor. On the other hand, the elaboration of the technical terms makes the audience understand your invention better.

References: cross-verification of references and considered prior-art helps to identify missing references. You can also eradicate the references which are no longer required or might pose a problem for invention enablement.

Our Approach

The patent proofreading process involves a thorough approach of looking into the subject matter. Even misplacement of a comma (,) can pose a risk to the credibility of the patent. If you consider taking reliable professional assistance, The Patent Proofreading Company is at your end. With years of experience in the patent industry, we have rigorously proofread 1000+ patents. We follow a multi-step quality check for producing thoroughly proofread results. Therefore, we don’t let these errors become an issue for your patent. We have zero redundancy for grammatical, technical and writing mistakes. Also, we provide a certificate of correction as proof of error-free patent. To learn more and to avail our services, visit our service page.

* 1. **Unusual Patents You Never Have Thought Of**

We all know how important patents are for one to protect their invention. But there have been some unusual patents over the times which are difficult to imagine. There are instances when people come up with all sorts of ideas including inventions that are unusual. Naturally, these inventions involve some different patent illustrations which depict the invention. Even big tech companies have been getting away with these patents that have been rewarded to them by the patent office. This article will look at some of such unusual patents and their principle:

Also read: Patent Filing: Know How to Proceed

Insight on some unusual patents:

There have been some unusual but interesting ideas to get a patentrant in the past. They will surely compel you to think for a while. So if you come across a weird, yet innovative idea doesn’t brush it off. Entities in the past prove success in getting patents of such unusual patents.

1.The crispy cereal server:

Cereal Server

Figure 1

Patent No: US4986433A

The invention consists of automatic devices that provide artificial petting to comfort household animals such as canines or felines. The animal controls the device by walking onto the petting platform. Likewise, the invention is concerned with providing an audio sound or voice, preferably the voice of the dog owner. So, that provides doggie talk at the same time that the artificial petting machine is petting the dog.

2.The Greenhouse helmet:

Greenhouse helmet

Figure 2

Patent No: US4605000A

A greenhouse helmet consists of a dome containing plants within the dome worn completely over the head of a person. This helps the person to breathe in the oxygen given off by the plants. So, the air remains fresh and protects one from inhaling the polluted air.

3.Cool Shoes:

Cool Shoes

Figure 3

Patent No: US5375430A

This is one of the most unusual patents one can ever see. One incorporates a compressor-expander type cooling, or heating system into the heel of a shoe. It is powered by reciprocal gravity pressures upon the shoe which occur naturally during walking. It also consists of the evaporator and the condenser networks which change their positions as per the requirements. Depending on the locations of the evaporator and the condenser networks, a shoe can serve as a foot cooler or a foot warmer.

Also read: Better Drawings Assures Better Patent: Know Why & How?

4. Automatic pet petter:

Automatic pet petter

Figure 4

Patent No: US20060207518A1

It is a fact of modern life that most people work away from their homes. If they have pets these pets will often be alone for many hours. This can cause psychological problems for pets. This invention is a device to comfort pets such as canines or felines.

The device has an L shaped side view shape with a front part consisting of sensors. The sensors are in the form of photoelectric cells or activation pads. The sensor activates the petting hand and speaker which reproduces a sound or voice when the pet walks upon the device platform. There is also a soft artificial hand-shaped construct present. The artificial hand moves in an accurate manner to comfort the pet as the voice soothes the pet.

5.The banana suitcase:

The banana suitcase

Figure 5

Patent No: US6612440B1

The invention relates to a banana guard and pertains to a new banana protective device for storing and transporting a banana carefully. The banana protective device includes a container having a first cover member and a second cover member. The second cover member is attached to the first cover member for storing a banana. It also includes pad members which one disposes upon the first and second cover members for protecting and cushioning the banana.

Also read: Patent Watch: Why Do I Need It?

Why Choose Us? – The Patent Search Firm

 If your invention seems different from others or you have come up with unusual patent, don’t hesitate to proceed further. The Patent Search Firm (TPSF) will guide you with the whole patent registration process. Our team of professionals is expert in registering patents having their presence globally. The Patent Search Firm (TPSF) helps you to take business decisions quickly and effectively. We, a team of professional experts provide world-class services to our clients by minimizing office actions at optimal cost. We make sure that our clients are always two steps ahead of their competitors. The legal protection of the clients is our utmost priority. To avail our services, Visit The Patent Search Firm.

* 1. **Patent Draft: Major Core Principles**

Patent Draft is the details, specification, and claims of the invention that one needs to furnish while filling the patent application. Basically, it is a part of how to patent an idea. One needs to focus on even the slightest of details while drafting the patent and getting all the details right. Hence, it is important for the applicant to take his time and prepare the patent description in an appropriate way. There is a minimal chance of adding more information after drafting the patent application.

Patent Draft: Key Principles to remember

Patent application title:

The title of the patent application must describe the invention which relates to the directions of the claims. It is essential to make sure that the title of the invention in the patent draft gets approval from the patent office examiner. The unique title of the application not just enhances the market product but also excites the customers.

Related Article: What is Prior Art?

Technical specification of the invention :

The technical area or the field of the invention refers to the broad area of technology under which the invention falls. One should mention a statement that gives a broad definition of the domain that relates to the invention. Also, importantly one needs to shed light on the other unknown technical aspects of the product in the patent draft. The invention should be placed in its setting by specifying the technical field to which the invention relates. It is possible by mentioning the prior art portion of the independent claims in full by simply referring to it.

Problem-solving description of the invention:

It is very essential to provide an in-depth description of the problem that the invention solves while drafting a patent. Sometimes inventors focus only on creating the invention and acquiring the patent grant. This makes one forget about the problem that their invention intends to solve. An invention without purpose may face objection while obtaining a patent grant. The clear mentioning of the problem and its solution describes the advantages of the invention in the future. So, that makes it easy for the patent examiner to grant a patent. What one needs to do is to show how the invention presents new and a different angle.

Related Article: Significance of Patent Watching

Patent drawings :

One of the best ways to enhance any disclosure in a patent draft is through quality patent drawings. It is one of the ways to make sure that the application is covering major aspects of the invention. The drawings can also help one to make up for the written disclosures. Sometimes, they are detailed enough to cover the missing aspect of the invention. Thus, it would be good if one includes drawings while drafting the patent application.

An in-depth description of the invention :

The in-depth description of the invention includes describing each part of the invention. For a process, describe each step you start with and what you need to do to make the change. The description starts off with the general background information and progresses to more detailed information about one’s invention and its parts. One can guide the reader to a full description of his invention by increasing levels of detail. Writing a thorough description is essential as one cannot add any new information to the patent application once filed. If one wants to make any changes, he can only do so by inferring the original drawings and descriptions.

Alternative use of the invention:

The biggest challenge for inventors is to think about all the possible ways in which the invention can be used. It is very important to cover all the aspects and variations of the invention which can prove to be helpful in the future. If there seems to be an alternative use of the invention, it must also be added to the application. Even if the invention is intended for a different purpose in the future, one must include it in the patent application.

Why Choose Us? – Patent Drafting Catalyst

If you are looking for a patent draft or seeking any assistance, Patent Drafting Catalyst (PDC) is the way to go. PDC is an exclusive group of the world’s leading patent drafting experts. Our team has more than 100 employees drafting quality patents. PDC consists of professional experts who serve clients globally. Our team helps innovators in drafting the patent. PDC has an in-depth understanding of drafting patents and has the ability to leverage the power of collaborative patent drafting. Our team of experts boasts years of experience in patent drafting. PDC will provide you with the best possible solutions. Ethics is the first priority of PDC and our professionals will guide you in the right direction. We ensure that the legal rights of our clients are safe. For more services, visit Patent Drafting Catalyst.

* 1. **All You Need to Know about US Patent Drawings Rules**

US Patent drawings need to follow a set of instructions by the USPTO for every illustration in your application. Almost all patent applications contain drawings. In fact, providing a drawing is vital for the better elucidation of the subject matter in the patent request. However, it is essential to follow the rules while preparing US patent drawings. They should help your case, and not hinder it while you write your patent to explain your invention. You must provide at least one drawing with your non-provisional application to make your invention clearer.

This article aims to list out the important guidelines that you need to follow while producing your drawings.

Related Article: Ways to Improve Patent Drawings Quality

US Patent Drawings: Essentials to Remember

Let’s talk about the basic drawing rules first. The Manual of Patent Examining Procedures lists out instructions that you need to adhere to:

All illustrations must be in black and white unless a part of the invention needs color to explain it.

Always use India ink on all drawings.

Ensuring that the drawing is to scale when the illustration is reduced to two-thirds the size is vital.

Each drawing should include the invention name, name of the inventor, and application number.

Submit all illustrations on a white A4 matte paper that is flexible and strong. Dimensions should be 21cm x 29.7cm or 21.6cm x 27.9 cm.

Margins should be as follows:

2.5 cm on the top

2.5 cm on the left side

1.5 cm on the right side

1.0 cm on the bottom

The superimposition of drawings should not happen.

You may use symbols and legends if necessary to describe the invention.

Avoid solid black shading except on bar graphs or to represent color.

Use lead lines to redirect the reader from the drawing to the associated symbol in the description.

Drawings aren’t restricted to illustrations and can also include charts and diagrams. The USPTO allows photos, but only for utility patents and design patents. Photographs must be in high definition to depict intricate details of the invention. They must follow the same rules in terms of the type, size, and margins of the drawing.

Note: You don’t require any drawings for patents involving chemical compounds.

Color Drawings

Color drawings are only permissible for design and utility patents and are rare to find. The first step is to file a petition under Title 37 (CFR) 1.17(h). You must also pay the specified fee of $130 for permission to include and use color drawings. The quality of the drawing should be high enough. This is to ensure that one can reproduce them in black and white on the printed patent without losing any details.

Graph forms in Drawings

You may need to include tables, formulas, and waveforms while describing your invention. Representation of these data requires you to adhere to the same rules as any other type of drawing. Formulas and waveforms have some specific conditions:

Formulas: You should label each formula as a separate figure and include brackets to show any necessary information.

Waveforms: You must represent Waveforms in a single figure that uses a vertical axis and a horizontal axis that shows time. It is important to identify each individual waveform via a letter designation adjacent to the vertical access.

US Patent Drawings: Views

You need to include several viewpoints in your drawings to depict the looks of your product and its working. Wherever applicable, you should include the following views of your invention:

Standard six views (front, back, right, left, top, and bottom) for 3D objects.

Two views (front and back) for 2D objects

Sectional views to depict the functionality

Three-dimensional perspective views

Exploded views to represent how each part works during the operation of the invention

You may exclude unornamented surfaces. Shading is another essential component of patent drawings. It depicts depth, contour, and texture. You should use dots, lines, and distinctive patterns for this.

Arrows and lead lines also play a key role in the drawings. Here are the places where you use arrows:

To signify movement direction.

An arrow on a lead line signifies the entire section to which it points to.

When an arrow is touching a lead line, it shows the surface indicated by the line.

Related Article: How to Invest less in Patent Drawings?

Key Points to Consider for US Patent Drawings

Despite all these rules, there are other considerations you should be aware of while creating US patent drawings. Some of these include:

Numbering of Sheets: You must number the drawings in Arabic numerals, and write it on the top of the sheet. This can be either in the middle or on the right, but not in the margin. Numbering must also include two numerals separated by a line to show the page out of the total number of pages. Ensure that the numbers that you use to identify portions of the drawing are not larger than the numerals.

Numbering of Views: You must number the views with consecutive Arabic numerals, and they must be independent of sheet numbering. Another key point is to use the same Arabic numerals for partial followed by a capital letter. You must not use brackets, circles, or inverted commas while writing the numbers and letters. These numbers must also be preceded by “FIG.” But this isn’t necessary if there is only 1 view.

Holes: Ensure that you don’t make any holes anywhere in your drawings.

Copyright/Mask Work Notices: You may place them in the drawing directly below the portion they pertain to, having a dimension of 1/8 inch x 1/4 inch.

Corrections: You must ensure that the corrections you submit with the patent drawing must be permanent and durable.

Security Markings: You may use them, but they must be in the center of the top margin.

Need an illustrator? Contact The Patent Drawings Company

As you can see, there are a lot of guidelines that you need to adhere to. Sometimes, you may feel that making your own drawings is tedious. If you require a patent illustrator, TPDC is at your service. Our experienced experts are skilled in the widest range of software/technologies to cater to all your needs. We believe in 100% satisfaction with our customers. To ensure this, we are willing to make any number of iterations until you are satisfied. We offer timely solutions at very affordable prices to ensure that your pocket is not overburdened.

* 1. **USPTO – A Structural Guide for IP (with Bonus Information)**

Patent offices like the USPTO are always laden with multiple patent and trademark applications. This is the result of the current competitive scenario of young inventors and entrepreneurs continually coming up with new inventions. Under a strenuous competition to make your invention and brand shine, you need secure and strong Intellectual Property protection.

The USPTO follows a first-to-file system, applicable on the patent applications filed on or after 16 March 2013.

The United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) is the federal agency for granting U.S. patents and registering trademarks.

From getting started with patent and trademark basics to filing and maintaining patents of inventors located word wide.

What is USPTO all about?

The USPTO advises the president of the U.S., the secretary of commerce and other governmental agencies on IP protection and enforcement. Along with that, it continually promotes stronger and effective IP protection around the globe.

Moreover, USPTO is a training, education and capacity building hub that fosters to develop robust IP enforcement regimes.

The USPTO cooperates with the European Patent Office (EPO) and the Japan Patent Office (JPO) as one of the Trilateral Patent Offices. It works as-

Receiving Office for patent trademark applications;

International Searching Authority (ISA)

International Preliminary Examination Authority (IPEA) for international patent applications filed in accordance with the Patent Cooperation Treaty format.

With the USPTO you can file a patent application for:

Utility Patent;

Plant Patent; and

Design Patent.

Also, you can go for trademark registration which is in the form of a logo, shape, sound, color, scent, taste or any combination of these.

Furthermore, you can find patented inventions with the USPTO Patent Full-Text Databases. It provides you convenient search options for quick and advanced searches of its patents and pending patent applications.

Similarly, the Trademark Electronic Search System is a database of USPTO which allows you to find registered and applied for US trademarks. TESS allows you to find:

Marks with common elements

Specific marks with known elements.

Location of USPTO Offices

Founded back on January 2, 1975, headquartered in Alexandria, Virginia the offices of this federal agency now have 4 regional offices.

Figure 1 – USPTO Locations

S. No. USPTO Offices Serving Regions

1 Alexandria, Virginia (Headquarters) Consolidates employees and resources, saves the federal government money, increasing productivity, and helping the USPTO attract and retain a highly-skilled workforce.

2 Dallas, Texas Alabama, Arkansas, Louisiana, Mississippi, New Mexico, Oklahoma, Tennessee, and Texas.

3 Denver, Colorado Colorado, Idaho, Kansas, Montana, Nebraska, North Dakota, South Dakota, Utah, and Wyoming.

4 Detriot, Michigan Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Kentucky, Michigan, Minnesota, Missouri, Ohio, and Wisconsin.

5 Silicon Valley, California California, Nevada, Oregon, Washington, Arizona, Alaska, and Hawaii.

Table 1 – USPTO Offices Serving Regions

With its presence in more than 4 cities, the USPTO gives inventors, entrepreneurs, and MSMEs the convenience of its services in every US time zone. Also, the USPTO furthers effective IP protection for U.S. innovators and entrepreneurs worldwide by working with other agencies to secure strong IP provisions in free trade and other international agreements.

What are the Benefits of Trademark Registration with the USPTO?

Trademark in the form of a logo, shape, sound, color, scent, taste or any combination of these is a very important asset for any business. Since a trademark is an identifying symbol of your business; it becomes essential and considered a smart decision to register the same.

Here are the 5 benefits of registering a trademark with the USPTO:

Registered in the USPTO database: once registered with the USPTO database, your trademark becomes much more secure as it avoids others from getting an identical or even a similar-looking mark. This, in turn, avoids the chances of conflicts and confusion, thereby creating healthy business opportunities.

Improved Marketing Status: getting the authority to use the symbol ® gives you products and services an added marketing status. This, in turn, lets your competitors know the seriousness and authenticity of your brand and gets you more customers for the long term.

Another sort of Protection: a registered trademark authorizes US Customs and border protection to obstruct the imports of goods that infringe upon your trademark. For this sort of protection get your mark recorded with Customs as well.

Ownership of Products and Services: you get ownership over your exclusive products and services that you record in the registration.

 An Incontestable Mark: once your trademark completes a term of 5 years of glorifying your brand, you get the right to file your mark as ‘incontestable’.

Major Benefits of Patent Filing with the USPTO

Patent protection offers you major advantages if you have an interest in launching a business or selling an invention. therefore, if you file a patent application with the USPTO, it gives you patent protection within the United States, US territories, and US possessions.

Following are the major benefits of filing a patent application with the USPTO:

Authority over your IP: getting patent protection for your intellectual property gives you the privilege of calling your invention ‘yours’. Filing patent gives you a right over it for a period of 20 years from the filing date of the patent application. Moreover, it has special rights attached to it, which involves licensing or selling your invention to generate wealth.

Market Monopoly: with patent protection, you can prevent your competitors from selling alternatives to your product, which in turn will help you establish your market.

A benefit to the Society: Article I, Section 8, Clause 8 of the US similar-looking authorizes the USPTO the power “to promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries.”

In the process of the patent grant, the invention gets a public exposure through journals, so that they can make and use the invention in the future after patent expiration.

Looking for Patent Illustration creators for Patent Filing with USPTO

Patent illustrations form an integral part of your patent application. They work as an instant catch for your detailed invention. Therefore, while filing a patent application with the USPTO you need illustrations that are as per the rules of the patent office. Skipping upon any of the requirements can prove deleterious for your invention. Hence, be very careful while drafting illustrations.

Since patent filing is a one-time opportunity that can give or take away the authority of your invention from you. Hence, if you are to file a patent application do consider taking professional services for preparing the illustrations.

We at Professional Patent Illustrators, hold years of trusted experience of drafting patent illustrations for utility and design patents. Our team delivers quick and efficient services; and offer multiple iterations, whenever needed. You can find our illustration samples for free by providing your inputs. For more information, do give a visit to Professional Patent Illustrators.

* 1. **Utility Patents: An Overview**

Utility Patents refer to the term that defines the usefulness of a new product, process, machinery or matter composition. A utility patent is also known as “patent for invention” prohibits other individuals or companies from making the invention without authorization. They provide exclusive rights to the applicant for producing and utilizing new technologies. The applicants can also protect against the import of their invention into other countries, which makes utility patents incredibly valuable. The USPTO issues utility patents which last for up to 20 years. However, the patent holder needs to pay a certain maintenance fee over that time period.

Essentials of Utility Patents:

If the invention qualifies in filing for a utility patent, one must surely do it without wasting time. A utility patent is difficult to write and understand but serves as a great advantage for the applicants.

Classification of Utility Patents:

The classifications of utility patent apply to a broad range of inventions. It includes:

Machines: Something which composes moving parts such as engines or computers.

Manufacturing processes or business systems.

Compositions of matter or chemical compounds.

Types of Utility Patent application:

There are basically two types of utility patent applications:

Provisional Utility Patent application:

A provisional patent application allows you to begin securing patent rights. Contrary to it, a non-provisional patent application is the first step toward a legally recognized patent. Some inventors refer to the provisional patent application as a provisional patent, but provisional patents don’t exist.

A provisional patent application is meant to help protect your idea and give you time to perfect it. Once you have the design and function ready, you can apply for the non-provisional patent.

Non-Provisional Utility Patent Application:

Non-provisional patent laws require inventors to submit an application for a patent within a year of showing the product in any way. This includes print, at a trade show, or images of the item. If you don’t submit within that time frame, the chance to file for a patent is gone.

Click Here to Download (Free Samples)

The requirement for filing Utility Patents:

Utility patents protect functional and new inventions and systems. Claims in a utility patent recite the essential part of the invention. To qualify for a patent, a patent examiner must find that the invention meets the following requirements:

Useful:

The invention must have a purpose and work properly to do that function.

Novel:

The invention must be new. All of the claims that make an invention unique can’t appear in multiple existing patents that a reasonable person could combine. The patent examiner can reject your invention on the basis of it not being novel. The patent examiner will have to find a patent, a patent application, or a publication that includes all elements of your invention.

Nonobvious:

The invention shouldn’t be obvious to a reasonable person. If the invention combines claims from existing patents, it should argue that no one would think to do so. There is a possibility of an examiner discovering that half of some elements exist in one reference while others exist in another reference. The examiner can combine the two references and reject your invention.

Advantages of filing Utility Patents:

Patent holders have exclusive rights to prevent others from selling, making, or using their inventions. Utility patents carry a series of numbered sentences that claim the invention. One cannot make, sell, or use the exact product that the patent owner describes in a patent claim. Otherwise, the applicant has the right to sue one for patent infringement.

Also, the utility patent teaches others and promotes innovation. They describe how to make inventions or create systems.

Also read: Do you know the Illustration types in Utility and Design Patents?

Why Choose Us? – Patent Illustration Express

Patent Illustrations play a vital role in a patent application for displaying of the invention. If you are looking for any assistance regarding utility patents, Patent Illustration Express (PIE) will guide you with the whole process. PIE is a team of professional patent illustrators, who boast years of experience in creating illustrations. We provide our clients with a super-fast delivery of the illustration services. Our team creates illustrations that have 100% compliance with the USPTO regulations. PIE provides flexible output formats for our clients with a full satisfaction guarantee. We make sure to cover a descriptive invention of our clients through illustrations. For more information, Visit Patent Illustration Express.

* 1. **Patent in India: Procedure for Grant**

A patent grant is an exclusive right that protects the invention of the applicant. The procedure for a grant of patent in India comprises of few steps. After following these steps, the Indian patent office issues the patent grant in India to the applicant. However, a patent grant does not arise automatically. An understanding of the procedure for obtaining a patent is important to understand the general patent laws in India. The procedure starts from the filing of the patent application and ends at the patent grant. There are a few steps present in between them. The detailed description of these steps in obtaining a grant of patent in India is given below.

Other Article:

Patent Filing Fees in India

Procedure for grant of patent in India:

The procedure for a patent grant in India starts after the patentability search which determines the novelty of the invention. If the invention is patentable, one has to draft a patent application that includes the description of the invention. After drafting a patent application, the procedure for a patent grant starts by filing the patent application. The step by step process for obtaining a patent grant is as follows:

Patent filing application: The first step in the procedure for a patent grant is filing the patent application. A patent application must contain specifications of the invention and other relevant details of the invention. One can file both a provisional and a complete application for their invention to get a grant of patent in India. A provisional application need only contain a description of the invention. A complete application requires full details including claims related to the invention

Publication of the application: After filing, every application goes to the Indian patent office. The Indian patent office publishes the patent application in the official patent journal. The patent application comes in the public domain after the patent office publishes it. Indian patent office publishes the patent application after 18 months of the filing date. However, if one requests, he can get an early publication within one month of the request. The date of the publication is important as the rights of the invention starts from the date of publication.

Examination of the application: The next step in the procedure is the examination of the patent application. The examination process, unlike publication, does not happen automatically by way of filing of the Indian patent application. The applicant has to specifically make a request for examining their patent application. The patent application will not move ahead to the examination cell if a request pertaining to it is not made. The examination takes place to determine whether the invention meets the statutory requirements for patentability or not. After the request of the examination, it will eventually land up on the desk of the examiner. The examiner then examines the application taking into account the prior art information of the invention.

Objection by the examiner: After an examination of the report, there is a possibility of an examiner raising the objections. During the examination, the examiner scrutinizes the application in accordance with the patent act. Based on the review of the application, the examiner will issue an examination report to the applicant. The first such examination report is known as First Examination Report (FER). The examiner will state all the objections pertaining to the patent application.

Office Action Response: Once examiner issues the First Examination Report, the applicant has to successfully overcome the objections to receive a patent grant. The whole process may involve responding to examination reports, appearing for hearing, etc. The total duration given to respond is 6 months from the issuing date of FER. This 6-month duration can be extended for a period of another 3 months by filing a request to the IPO.

Patent Grant: This is the final step in getting a grant of patent in India. Once the patent application overcomes all the objections of the examiner, the patent office will grant a patent to the applicant. After getting the patent, the IPO publishes it in the patent gazette. Patent gazette is the online patent application database where publication of all the patent applications takes place.

Why Choose Us? – Your Patent Team

If you are looking to file a patent in India, Your Patent Team (YPT) is your one-stop destination. YPT is an exclusive group of the world’s leading technology experts. Our professionals have an in-depth understanding of the working style of each of the four patent offices in India. The experts utilize their experience to help you complete the patent filing process effectively. YTP is trusted alike by the industry association for its quality services. Our professionals have expertise of patent filing to the core. We will assist you with all the steps involved in the procedure of the patent grant.

* 1. **Online Patent Filing: The Major 7 Steps**

Patent filing is essential for the patent applicant to protect his invention or idea by stopping others from using it. Online patent filing of the USPTO is an online method of filing patents. Filing patents online can be easy and secure which also helps to save the time and cost of the patent applicant. Therefore, one just needs to register himself on the USPTO site to commence the proceedings of the patent filing. Using the electronic filing system, anyone with a web-enabled computer can file patent applications and documents without downloading special software. We will discuss the stepwise procedure to file patents online.

Also read: Significance of Patent Watching

The procedure of Online Patent Filing:

Online patent filing provides you with the platform to file your application electronically which is accessible to everyone. So, the process starts with signing in as an unregistered filer and ends on the successful completion of the patent filing. The steps that online patent filing involves are:

Application data:

Figure 1

The first step of the online patent filing is to fill the application data after signing in as an electronic filer. It involves the following steps:

The first part of the application data involves the “Title of Invention”. Here the applicant needs to come up with a crisp and suitable title that defines the invention.

The next step is to fill the personal details of the applicant including name and correspondence address.

One needs to click on the “Continue” button to proceed further.

2. Attaching documents:

Figure 2

This is one of the most important steps of online patent filing. It involves the following steps:

You will have to attach all the relevant documents including claims of the patent applications in a PDF form.

Then, the next part is to select the category of your respective invention.

After filling the category, you will have to provide the document description of your invention in the “Document Description” box.

Then, you need to click on the “Upload and Validate” button and move further in the application process.

Also read: Patent Filing Requirements in USPTO – in a Nutshell

3. Reviewing documents:

Figure 3

After attaching the file, one needs to review the document to check the correctness of the document. So, you need to click on the document to review the document which is essential before submission of the patent application. Also, after reviewing your application file, click on the “Continue” button to move to the next step.

4. Calculating fees:

Figure 4

This is the next step in the process of filing patents online. The fees for filing the patents online depend on different factors. It depends on whether the application is a provisional application or a complete application. Additionally, it also depends on the number of pages your patent application takes to describe the invention. So, this step helps you in calculating the total fees you need to pay while taking into account all the factors.

5. Submission of the application:

After calculating the fees, you will get a summary of your application from application data to fee calculation steps. Thereby, the USPTO will ask you to review all of the above steps to make sure that all the details are correct. Then, you will have to click the “Submit” button to submit your patent application and move to the next step.

6. Paying fees:

The next step of the process after submitting your application is paying the application fees to the USPTO. The “Paying Fees” web page will appear in front of you after you submit the application. So, you will have to pay the application fees to make sure that your application does not abandon.

7. Receiving the receipt:

This is the final step of filing patents online. You will get a receipt for your patent application stating your personal details and details of your application form. In addition, the details of your application form include the application number, fee code, etc. of your application.

Looking for Online Patent Filing – The Patent Filing Company

Online patent filing helps you to protect your invention at a low cost and time. The Patent Filing Company (TPFC) is an exclusive group of the world’s leading technologies with a deep understanding of global patent laws. Our team of professional experts will help you with the patent filing online procedure. TPFC covers 300+ experts and serves over 45 countries. Our professionals utilize their expertise to advise our clients to help them get world-class advice and IP Protection. You get the broadest and strongest service of the TPFC at an optimal cost. Our team would ease your task of filing the patent application effectively. To avail our services, Visit The Patent Filing Company.

* 1. **What is IDS Filing and When Should You do it?**

When it comes to the preparation and filing of a patent application, you might come across the term “ IDS Filing ”. Amongst 100 different things that you must oversee, this is a simple, yet very crucial part of your application. But, what is IDS? How do you file it?

“IDS” stands for Information Disclosure Statement. Also, the name itself is quite descriptive. But, we will still provide you with a detailed description of what IDS filing means and when you should do it.

Related Article: When & How to File IDS?

What is the significance of IDS filing?

As we just told you, IDS is the Information Disclosure Statement. Now, you need to understand what its significance is and what to include in this statement.

Every patent applicant has the duty to disclose every Material of Patentability that he/she is aware of to the USPTO. This includes prior art, non-patent text, and anything else that is similar to the invention.

You can see the stipulation in MPEP 2001 and 37 CFR 1.56. Every patent applicant must satisfy this candor in order to proceed with the patent prosecution process.

Is Searching for Prior Art Necessary for IDS Filing?

You might ask yourself, “So should I search for prior art?” This can be a tricky question. But, the answer, in context with the IDS, is no. The USPTO requires you to disclose only the prior art that you’re aware of. So you need not conduct a search for the sole purpose of putting the results in the IDS.

However, you should always conduct a Patent search before proceeding with the filing process. You should be aware of your application is worth filing or not in the first place. You must include the results of this search in your IDS.

In conclusion, you should conduct a patent search, but not for the purpose of IDS filing.

What Information Should You Disclose?

Information that classifies as “material to patentability” is any information that might question the novelty of your invention. Also, if any information potentially deems your invention as “obvious”, even then it classifies as material to patentability.

There might be a situation where you are not sure if the information is relevant to your invention or not. In this case, it is better to be safe by including it in the IDS.

These might involve existing patents, patent applications, scientific journals, blogs, etc. Further, it can also be in the form of Office Actions, whether it’s dealing with the US or foreign patent applications.

Related Article: What are the Prior Art Documents required while filing an IDS?

When is the Best Time for IDS Filing?

Ideally, you should file the IDS as soon as you discover relevant information. Now, the main question is when should you prepare the initial IDS filing?

You can file the IDS (or make additions to it) at the following stages:

Within 3 months of the Filing the Initial Application

This is the best time to file the IDS. You should file it within the first 3 months from the date of filing the non-provisional application. [37 CFR 1.97(b)(1) & (2)]. The USPTO will not charge you any fee for it either.

Before the First Office Action

If you don’t submit the IDS within the first 3 months, then you can still avoid any fees for IDS filing. [37 CFR 1.97(b)(3)]. However, you must submit it before the USPTO issues the first Office Action on your application.

After First Office Action but Before Final Office Action

You will have to pay a fee in order to file the IDS after the USPTO issues the first office action. The fee will depend on when you file the IDS relative to the earliest date that the applicant found out about prior art.

If it is known for less than 3 months, you can file the IDS without incurring any fee. You must include a statement confirming that each reference is not more than 3 months old.

If it is known for more than 3 months, then you must pay a fee to the USPTO along with the reference.

USPTO fee (large/small): $240/$120

After Final Office Action or Notice of Allowance, but Before Payment of Issue Fee

Just like above, you will have to pay a fee to the USPTO to ensure proper IDS filing. [37 CFR 1.97(b)(4)]

If it is known for less than 3 months, then you must submit a 3-month statement and pay the necessary fee.

USPTO fee (large/small): $240/$120

If it is known for more than 3 months, then you must file a Request for Continued Examination (RCE). You can check MPEP 609.04(b) section III. If any applicant is unable to comply with the requirements of 37 CFR 1.97(d) then the applicant may file a RCE. This has a relatively larger fee. This is because if you exceed the 3 month period, your application must undergo another examination to ensure novelty.

 USPTO fee (large/small entity): $1,300/$650 for 1st RCE; $1,900/$950 for 2nd and subsequent RCE.

After Payment of Issue Fee

If you have already paid the Issue Fee, then you can file a Quick Path Information Disclosure Statement (QPIDS). This process exists for such a situation where you have paid the issue fee already and discover a prior art.

For this, you must submit the following documents.

3-month certification

A petition to withdraw from issue after payment of issue fee

A conditional Request for Continued Examination and RCE fee

The USPTO takes the matter of IDS filing extremely seriously. Any late IDS filing can prove to be very risky. This can lead to a reduction in patent term adjustment, or worse, a rejection in the grant of patent.

Related Article: Effect of Late IDS Filing – Reduces Patent Term Adjustment

Why Choose SmartIDS Solutions?

It is very crucial that you ensure timely IDS filing. We, at SmartIDS Solutions, are here to help you out. Timely delivery of information disclosure statements and opportune patent grant for your invention is our top priority. We provide ready to file IDS forms in USPTO prescribed format. Our team remains up-to-date with the current regulations and always comply with the rules of the USPTO.

* 1. **Patent Illustration: Key Tips to Remember**

A patent illustration is the visual embodiment of a patent description in patent applications. Their purpose is to elucidate the invention clearly. The illustrations may include diagrams, flow charts, chemical equations, standard views, reference numbers and photographs (only in special cases) of the invention. Every jurisdiction has a set of rules which you need to adhere to while rendering your patent illustration. More often than not, these guidelines are very similar with minor changes. Keeping this in mind, USPTO also has a unique set of guidelines that makes US patent illustrations stand out. The basic idea is simple, the illustrations should help you in making your case and not impede it.

Related Article: Patent Draft: Major Core Principles

This article explains everything you need to know about a patent illustration.

Patent Illustration: Key Points to Remember

1. The requirement of Patent Illustration

Your application must have at least one patent illustration to explain your invention better. Apart from the fact that it aids your explanation of the invention, it’s a requirement under the US Patent Law. Your application might face rejection if the description is vague or generic. The reason is that this makes it easier to find an overlapping prior art for it. Your explanation of the invention needs to be elaborate and distinct. Hence, including a patent illustration is always advisable.

2. Ease of explaining the invention (An example)

Let’s take a look at the patent description of an invention. We’ll let you guess the invention just by reading the description and then show the image for more clarity.

A toy device which includes a central dome structure and a skirt is used as a spinning toy. It is designed to be spun on the finger to provide enjoyment and entertainment for adults and children. It is formed of a thin-walled finger placement dome area of sufficient width and depth to provide room for initial eccentric rotation with the rotation centered along the entire inner wall. Providing rotational balance is a skirt balance area that is divided from the dome area by a step demarcation section/inner joint where the area joins the skirt balance means and aids a user in retaining a finger in the said area during spinning.

What do you think it is? It looks like some kind of a spinning toy but you can’t quite guess the exact geometry and shape. Now, let’s look at this image.

Patent-Illustration-of-a-fidget-spinner

What you are looking at is the patent illustration of the popular toy “fidget spinner”. Looking at the image, it’s much easier to guess what it is. This is exactly why it’s very crucial to include illustrations in your application. An examiner can get a hint of what your invention is, but the illustration will make it absolutely clear.

Also Read: Significance of Patent Proofreading

3. Basic guidelines to follow

Your drawings need to include detailed flow charts and diagrams. These help the reader understand the intricate parts and/or steps involved in the correct order. If your invention is a physical object, you should cover all the angles; top, bottom, and all the sides. Another point to remember is that all views should be drawn in portrait, facing in the same direction.

The USPTO has a set of specifications that you should follow while creating a patent illustration. It should have the following specifications:

All illustrations must be in black and white unless a part of the invention needs color to explain it.

Always use India ink on all drawings.

Ensuring that the drawing is to scale is key. When the USPTO reduces the illustration to two-thirds the size while publishing, there shouldn’t be any loss of information.

Each drawing should include the invention name, name of the inventor, and application number.

Submit all illustrations on a white A4 matte paper that is flexible and strong. Dimensions should be 21cm x 29.7cm or 21.6cm x 27.9 cm.

Margins should be as follows:

2.5 cm on the top

2.5 cm on the left side

1.5 cm on the right side

1.0 cm on the bottom

The superimposition of drawings should not happen.

You may use symbols and legends if necessary to describe the invention.

Avoid solid black shading except on bar graphs or to represent color.

Use lead lines to redirect the reader from the drawing to the associated symbol in the description.

Need a professional illustrator? – The Patent Drawings Company

​If you fail to comply with these standards, the examiner may raise objections about your illustrations during patent examination. This might affect your chances of getting a patent. In order to ensure that this doesn’t happen, hiring a professional illustrator is highly advisable. If you require a patent illustrator, TPDC is at your service. Our experienced experts are skilled in the widest range of software/technologies to cater to all your needs. Our team has thorough and in-depth knowledge about the latest US Patent Laws and acceptable practices. We believe in 100% satisfaction of our customers. To ensure this, we are willing to make any number of iterations. We offer timely solutions at very affordable prices because we don’t want to overburden your pocket.

* 1. **Utility Patent Cost: Must Know Before Filing**

A utility patent is one of the three types of patents- Design, Plant and Utility and is the most frequently filed patent type. Therefore, the utility patent cost is an important factor to consider before you proceed with patent filing. Since cost is different at different stages, it is important to know how much you need to pay for getting a certain procedure done. Also, utility patent cost is variable i.e. the cost fluctuates with the presence or absence of certain factors which we will discuss in this article.

To begin with, Utility patent cost, let’s just discuss a little more about utility patents. A utility patent is a patent for a machine, process, matter of composition, or any new or useful improvement thereof. The term of a utility patent is of 20 years. Similarly, the term for plant patent is 20 years. But for design patents, it is 14 years.

You can pay a maintenance fee to extend the period of a utility patent, but this is not the case with design and plant patent.

Now let’s dive into utility patent cost.

Utility patent cost – Complete Anatomy

The cost associated with different stages of patent prosecution makes a complete structure of utility patent cost. There are many factors that affect the budget of receiving utility patent for your invention. Also, the price range is different for every step in the patent lifecycle.

Patent drafting fees

You as a patent applicant need to pay utility patent cost right from the stage of patent drafting. Although, the inventor/applicant can draft the patent application on his own it is to take assistance of a patent consultant. Therefore, the drafting a utility patent application can cost you around $200-$500.

Moving to utility patent cost for filing.

Patent filing fees

The Utility patent cost for filing depends on the type of patent application – provisional or non-provisional. The cost of filing a provisional application is comparatively less as compared to a non-provisional application, but both the applications serve a different purpose. Here is an analysis of utility patent cost while filing it withUSPTO.

Type of Patent Offline filing EFS-Web Filing Small Entity Micro entity

Utility Patent $300 N/A $150 $75

Patent search fee

This search determines the patentability of the proposed invention. The conducted searches include– patent validity search, novelty search, infringement search, and state-of-the-art search are conducted to determine the credibility of the current application. These searches fall under a broader category of prior-art search. Patent office official conducts these searches through databases, scientific journals, and other authentic publications.

Type of Patent Basic Search Fee Small Entity Micro entity

Utility Search $660 $330 $165

Patent examination fees

After patent application filing the very next step is its publication in patent office journal. Very next to this is the examination of the application at the patent office. The cost can vary due to the length and complexity of the patent specification.

Type of Patent Basic fees Small Entity Micro entity

Utility Patent $760 $380 $190

Patent post-allowance fees

Once you (applicant) receive the notice after the patent examiner decides to grant a patent, you receive a notice to pay post-allowance fees. The notice directs that the application is complete and meets all the requirements.

Type of Patent Basic fees Small Entity Micro entity

Utility Issue Fees $1000 $500 $250

Utility Reissue Fees $1000 $500 $250

Patent extension of time fees

In case of discrepancies during prosecution patent office raises office actions. You (applicant) are given a three-month time period for a response to the office action. But, due to any reasons if you couldn’t come up with an office action response within the given time period, then you can go for an extension of response. The fee associated is given below:

Duration of Extension Basic fees Small Entity Micro entity

Extension for response within first month $200 $100 $50

Extension for response within the second month $600 $300 $150

Extension for response within third month $1400 $700 $350

Extension for response within fourth month $2200 $1100 $550

Extension for response within fifth month $3000 $1500 $750

Patent maintenance/renewal fees:

Although not necessary, renewal becomes essential if you want to prevent your invention from coming into the public domain. To implicate this, one needs to pay patent maintenance pay from time-to-time to increase patent validity. Renewal of patent also includes some part of the utility patent filing cost.

Type of Maintenance Offline filing Small Entity Micro entity

For maintaining patent (original or reissue), due at 3.5 years $1600 $800 $400

For maintaining an patent (original or reissue), due at 7.5 years $3600 $1800 $900

For maintaining an patent (original or reissue), due at 11.5 years $7400 $3700 $1850

Surcharge – 3.5 year – Late payment within 6 months $160 $80 $40

Surcharge – 7.5 year – Late payment within 6 months $160 $80 $40

Surcharge – 11.5 year – Late payment within 6 months $160 $80 $40

Petition for the delayed payment of the fee for maintaining a patent in force $2000 $1000 $500

Also Read: Things to Do Before Patenting Something

Factors affecting utility patent cost

Although the cost of patent protection is constant at every stage it can vary from invention to invention. There are many factors that influence the utility patent cost.It is better to have prior knowledge of the factors just so you can prepare yourself financially. Enlisting some of the important factors below:

Patent application type: there are broadly two types of a patent application – provisional and non-provisional. A provisional application is an incomplete application and also the associated fee is less as compared to a non-provisional one.

It acts to set a priority date for your invention if your invention is not in a complete state of actual filing.

It is compulsory to file a non-provisional patent application after filing a provisional application within a 12-month period. Therefore, filing a provisional application incurs a double cost as compared to filing a single non-provisional patent application.

Invention complexity and technicality: the complexity of the invention is a major factor in influencing the cost. The more technical and complex the written description and specifications are the more time and effort it takes at the examiners’ end to analyze the patent specifications.

The Invention’s written disclosure quality: this directly influences the legal fees. This is quite straightforward, the more the disclosure is comprehensive the lesser time it will take for the attorney to understand the invention. This majorly reduces the legal cost. Make sure you inform your attorney of any changes in the technicality of the invention. Otherwise, it will incur more costs.

Size of the organization: the cost of patenting is majorly different for different entities. If you are a small entity the cost for all the stages is comparatively less than that for a bigger firm. Whereas, the cost for a micro-entity is halved the patent cost for a small entity.

You are a small entity if:

You are a person;

A non-profit organization; or

The organization qualifies as a non-business concern.

Conducting a patent search: Although, patent search is not a compulsory step but proves beneficial if carried out. Conducting a patent search prior to filing brings to light if your invention is patentable or not. This reduces the upcoming costs associated with the quest for the patent grant.

You can go for a patent search on your own. But for a deep search hire a patent attorney. The cost of the process will fall in the bracket of $2000-$3000.

Number of Claims: claims are the part of the specification for which you seek a patent grant. Hence, claims are the most important factor of any patent specification. The minimum number of claims is one per patent application. Also, the cost varies with the number of patent claims present in that application.

If your patent application has more than 3 claims then there is an extra cost of $220 per claim.

If there are more than 10 claims per application, then the cost is $52 per claim.

Office actions response: if during prosecution the patent office examiner raises office action, the applicant responds with an “office action response” within a period of 3 months. This incurs an additional cost of filing the response. Also, an additional time extension for office action response incurs more charges for the applicant.

Utility patent cost benefits with Professional Patent Illustrators

By now you know the cost associated with the patent grant is no less. A well-prepared patent draft as per the patent office rules brings down the cost to a great extent and also saves time. Patent illustrations play an important role in a patent application and are specifically as per the patent office rules. If you are looking for services providing high-quality patent illustration reach out to us at Professional Patent Illustrators.

We are a team of experienced professionals producing best-in-class utility and design patent illustrations. Your needs and interests are our priority. Hence, we provide multiple iterations until we meet your needs. We take care of the deadlines and regulations so that you do not pay any added cost. You can find our patent illustration samples free of cost by making a little inquiry.

* 1. **Utility Patent –Requirements and Process**

When people talk about patent, they are most likely to talk about utility patents. This is because out of all the categories of patents filed with the USPTO, the majority of them are utility patent applications. But what is a utility patent? In general terms – a utility patent protects the usage and working of the invention. To be more precise, a utility patent tends to protect any machine, manufacture, process, and matter of composition, or any new or useful improvement thereof. A utility patent is enforceable for a period of 20 years.

How to fetch a Utility Patent?

Now that you are ready with your invention, or at least with a blueprint of it, but wondering how to proceed further.

To be on a safer side conduct patentability search for your invention. Although, not a compulsory step but it will help save your patent filing cost if your invention doesn’t follow the patentability criteria.

The very next step is to find a patent office of your jurisdiction to file a patent application. Ask yourself whether you want patent protection in your own jurisdiction or you are seeking protection in many countries. That is whether you want to go for a national phase application or an international application (PCT application). Be it any type of utility patent application, the very first step is to file an application in your own jurisdiction.

Document checklist for Utility Patent Application Filing

Once you find that your invention is novel or new, you can now proceed with the patent filing process. But, for that, you need to fulfill certain requirements of the patent office. The USPTO demands the following written essentials for effective patent application filing.

Utility Patent Application Transmittal Form: it comprises the list of all the elements that make up a patent application. It is mandatory to complete it and signed by the applicant if you submit it with the application. If there are more than 1 inventor, then all of them need to sign the transmittal form o can give power of attorney (POA) to one of them to sign the correspondence on behalf of them.

Fee Transmittal Form: this form describes the fees that you submit with the patent application. That is, with a non-provisional patent application, there are basic filing fees, search fees, and examination fees. This is applicable to small and micro-entity applicants as well. File the transmittal form at the time of patent filing; else this will incur a late filing surcharge. Also, if you file the application through offline mode, then you need to pay a non-electronic filing fee.

Application Data Sheet: this sheet contains bibliographic data of inventor’s information, applicant information, correspondence address, application, domestic benefit, foreign priority, and assignee information. This form becomes even more important when an inventor assigns their rights to a company (assignee) and then the assignee files the application as the applicant.

Small and Micro Entity Status: if you are a small or micro entity, get the advantage of certain fee discounts. If you qualify for the same, you need to submit no special forms to assert your entitlement to reduced fees. But, you should submit the exact small entity fee with the application after ensuring that you qualify for the small entity status.

Specification: a written description of the invention. Make sure you write it in full, clear, concise and exact terms that any person knowledgeable in the same field of technology or science would understand the invention. But, do not include the information which is not related to the invention. following are the elements of the specification:

Title of Invention: the length of the title is between 2 to 7 words and cannot exceed a character length of 500 words. The title is such that it describes the invention technically. It appears at the top of the first page or in the application data sheet. Note: do not use words such as “new” or “improved” as part of the title.

Cross-Reference to Related Applications: if your application is with an earlier filed provisional or non-provisional patent application, you may identify the applications after the title of the invention.

Statement regarding Federally Sponsored Research or Development: if you are a federally sponsored applicant, then you must state this fact at the beginning of the application.

Reference to a “Sequence Listing” (if Applicable): information like gene sequence listings, tables of information (more than 50 pages). The specification must include a reference to the compact discs and the total number of discs (including duplicates) and the files on each disc. Keep the text strictly in ASCII format. Submit the sequence listing(s) via EFS-Web instead of on compact disc(s).

Background of the Invention: provides a context to the invention. It describes any information known to the applicant in reference to the invention.

Brief Summary of the Invention: this section gives a general idea of the claimed invention. It states the purpose, advantages of the invention and how it solves the existing problems that you mention in the background of the invention.

Brief Description of Drawings: if there are drawings, include a list of all figures by number as Figure 1, Figure 2, etc. with corresponding statements explaining what each figure portrays.

Detailed Description of the Invention: in the part explain the making and using of the invention in clear and concise terms. The description is such that anyone knows about that technology can make and use the invention without any extensive help.

A Claim or Claims: claims define the part of the invention that you seek patent protection for. Write the claims in one line and, the least number of claims is 1.

Abstract of the Disclosure: this part describes what is new about the invention in a narrative form. Begin it with a new page and do not exceed the word length from 150 words.

Drawings: drawings make the invention more understandable. Hence, most of the utility patent applications contain drawings. Also, depict every feature of the invention just the way you specify in the claim(s).

The Inventor’s Oath or Declaration: through the oath, the inventor acknowledges himself/herself as the original or joint inventor of the claimed invention. To certify that, the inventor includes his/her legal name and personally signs the document. Moreover, he/she provides it in a language understandable to the inventor. If not in English, then a translation of the language with a statement attesting its accuracy is a must.

Our Approach:

Utility patent applications need finest of patent illustrations and drawings for better enforceability of their patents. Also, USPTO and other patent offices have strict guidelines for making patent illustrations. If you consider adding illustrations to your patent application, Patent Illustration Express is at your service. Our patent illustrators hold years of experience drafting illustrations as per the patent office guidelines. Also, you can avail our services at budget-friendly rates. For your reference, you can find our illustration samples by making a little inquiry. To know more, give a visit to Patent Illustration Express.

* 1. **How to Do a Trademark Image Search in the USPTO Website**

A trademark image search is must when it comes to protecting a brand, securing the trademarks and logos. It is important to ensure right at the beginning that the mark is available for use and we are not infringing on someone else’ intellectual properties before we register our Logo and Trademarks. Here comes the importance of a full logo search or a trademark image search that will help us determine if we are investing right. Related Article: The top 6 benefits of trademark filing services

heart-key (1)

Let’s assume we are intending to acquire a Logo to the right which is a “Key with heads of circular, oval or lobed shape”. Assuming the fact that we wish to protect this logo in the United States, “The Trademark Electronic Search System” is the first trademark and logo search database that appears in our mind. The Trademark Electronic Search System, also called as TESS is one of the most preferred trademark search databases we use these days.

In the rest part of this article, we will understand the mechanics of doing a logo search on the U.S.P.T.O database and the journey of a complete trademark image search or logo search starts with navigating the U.S.P.T.O website.

Step 1: Navigate to the U.S.P.T.O website

Navigating to the United States Patent and Trademark Office is the first step which should be done while conducting a logo search.uspto\_home\_page

Step 2: Select the “Trademarks Tab” and “Searching Trademarks Drop-down” menu

Once you are there on the Home Page of U.S.PTO, you can find 4 different tabs placed on the horizontal menu, these are Patents, Trademarks, IP Policy, Learning and Resources. Select the “Trademark” Tab from the horizontal menu and click “SearchingTrademarks” drop-down option.trademark\_search\_dropdown\_menuRelated Article: Trademark Monitoring: Why is it Important for your Brand?

Step 3: Click on the ‘Trademark Electronic Search System’ title appearing at the bottom

Once we click the above-mentioned drop-down menu, we will land-up onto a page where we can find a text title “Trademark Electronic Search System (TESS)” at the bottom, clicking that text title we can enter into the main Trademark Electronic Search System database. The image below will depict the same.pic\_3rd

Step 4: Refer to the USPTO’s Design Search Code Manual

This is the fourth and one of the most important steps in the overall logo search process wherein we refer to the USPTO’s “Design Search Code Manual” to determine the search code to which the intended mark belongs.

The USPTO assigns all marks containing design figurative elements a 6-digit numerical code(s) for searching purposes. The Design Search Code Manual indexes the categories, divisions, and sections that make up these codes. For example, a five-pointed star would be coded in category 01 (celestial bodies, natural phenomena, and geographical maps), division 01 (stars, comets) and section 03 (stars with five points), resulting in a complete design code of 01.01.03. Links to the Design Search Code Manual are located in either the Structured or Free Form search options.

design\_search\_code\_manual

Determining the Design Search Code Manual is important when it comes to doing an effective and comprehensive logo search.table\_of\_content\_design\_search\_code\_manualNow let’s come to the main part of logo search wherein we will have to define the components of our logo. In this case, we have “Keys with heads of circular, oval or lobed shape” and we need to find the exact class where keys with heads of circular, oval or lobed shape belong to. In the first instance, it seems prudent to search Class 14 (Hardware, tools and ladders; non-motorized agricultural implements; keys and locks). See the below image:class\_14“Keys with heads of circular, oval or lobed shape” are coded in category 14, division 11, sections 1 to 9. Section 2 (Keys of some other shape) could be the most relevant for our search.keys\_sectionsSo, let’s pick 14.11.02 code and search it on the TESS database.executing\_the\_searchMind that, here we have searched the “Structured Search Form Option” and the fields that we used was “Design Code”. Below are the results.last\_stepUnfortunately, our intended mark is too similar to already existing logos and thus, we will have to abandon the idea.

Assistance from TTSC

Our experienced search professionals conduct the searches manually at the most cost-effective price to help you build a strong brand. Not only do we conduct trademark searches but we also provide monitoring service to keep your brand secure. To know in detail about our Trademark Search Service and Trademark Watch Service, please visit the respective service pages.

* 1. **Patent filing Strategy: The Major Tips**

A Patent filing strategy helps you to easily obtain patent protection. You must file the Patent application before the commercialization of the invention.

Many countries require absolute novelty for patentability that means you must get a patent filing date of your invention before disclosing it to the public. The best way is to get professional advice.

You must use confidentiality agreements to prevent the circulation of information about your invention before disclosing it.

Related Article: Design Patent Drawing Requirement – Important Points to follow

Patent filing strategy: Paris Convention filings

It allows you to postpone filing in succeeding countries for 12 months.

Budget-friendly, if you want to seek protection within a few countries.

You cannot delay patent filings once the invention is disclosed in public.

Many countries stick to the guidelines of the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property. This allows you to file a patent application in one country/region to receive a filing date, later you may take 12 months to file applications in related countries. Hence, you claim priority for your first filing date and these countries consider the same filing date for your application.

This is useful as you are able to file the patent application and disclose the invention. Also, you may still file other applications within 12 months for the same filing date in other countries. This saves the cost of filing additional applications and earns you time for market research or related studies.

You may file the patent applications for only those countries which provide a grace period once you have disclosed the invention before first filing. Also, you must file the patent application before the grace period gets over, even if the Paris Convention period of 12 month ends later.

Patent filing strategies: PCT filings

It allows you to postpone the filing process in discrete countries for 31 months.

Most efficient when you are seeking protection in various countries or want to keep the choices open for other than 12 months.

You can use the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application to secure a filing date for 150+ participating countries.

The first phase of the PCT process is the international phase, in this, the International Searching Authority makes the search for the most relevant prior arts. Then you can make amendments to the claims and request examination by an International Preliminary Examination Authority to receive a preliminary examination report for future amendments.

You must get into the national phase or regional phase of each country/region of your interest between 20 to 31 months of the PCT filing date. Most countries of interest provide a deadline of at least 30 months. You must comply with the rules of translations and concerning fees of every country. Now, every national patent office considers the date as of PCT filing while examination.

The PCT strategy is helpful for the forthcoming disclosure of your invention. You may file a PCT application, make the disclosure and get into the national phase in various countries. The PCT application filing has higher fees as compared to the direct national filings

However, the Patent filing strategy of PCT is more useful as compared to the Paris Convention, when your invention is already disclosed to the public. You may utilize the additional monthly delay in the commercialization of your invention and selecting the scope of patent protection.

Related Article: Patent Watch Services: A Vigilant Eye on Patent

Paris Convention and PCT filing in combination:

You may combine the PCT and the Paris Convention. However, it may not provide you an extra time span to enter the national phase but allows you to use the provisional application while deferring the expenses. Thus, you only pay the drafting and filing cost of the first application. Afterward, you may file the PCT application (more expensive) within 12 months.

You may increase the benefits of this strategy if your invention is not publically disclosed. Also, you may file the first application, make public disclosures and then file the PCT application within 12 months.

Moreover, if you already disclosed the invention before filing a patent application, you may still file the PCT application. However, this only allows you to get into the national phase of grace period countries. You must ensure to file the PCT application within 12 months of the public disclosure, even if the time period of 12 months of the Paris Convention ends later.

Effective Selection of Patent Filing Strategy:

It is not necessary that the above patent filing strategies are cost-efficient. However, they buy you some time for product commercialization, raising funds, prior art searches and many more. You may find other paths of cost deduction in the individual patent office later after you select a filing strategy.

Basically, the more delay in opportunities of filing strategy, the more you spend. However, the cost spreads over a longer span.

The above filing strategies are not the only strategies possible. There exist many aspects that may affect your conclusion. It includes progress in R&D of your invention along with different national rules regarding patentability for a particular type of the inventions.

How The Patent Filing Company helps you?

The Patent Filing Company has a team of experienced patent attorneys that are willing to help you with a deep knowledge of best IP practices. We own 300+ technical domain experts that cover a wide range of technical and legal subject matter. Also, we provide you the most profitable output within minimum expenses. You can place, track your order online and expect a quick turnaround time. Our priority is 100% customer satisfaction and long term benefits for you. Moreover, we have proved ourselves for the past 10 years. To know more about our working and service benefits, make sure to visit The Patent Filing Company.

* 1. **Why do you need Patent Illustration Service?**

Patent illustration service helps you to represent an object or an invention in a 2-D platform for a better understanding of a common person. It is necessary to provide an illustration for a patent application which is generally known as a patent illustration or patent drawing.

Moreover, the Patent Law demands a good patent illustration that makes the patent drafting easy and wraps up the complete process in time.

However, there is a different scenario with a chemical compound/composition.

There are a number of people that highly picture oriented than word orientated. These people can easily understand the invention while looking at the drawings only. They understand the invention better via patent illustrations.

Thus, we need a patent Illustrator for creating these Patent illustrations. The patent Illustrator is an expert with a deep knowledge of machinery, chemical structures, and biological substances. They also own good artistic skills and creative mind that is earned through years of working.

Related Article: Why patent assertion is important?

Patent Illustration: Guidelines

The majority of the patent offices approve drawings on paper or digital media, but there are specified guidelines regarding shape, format, and size. Some patent offices ask for flexible sheets while others demand rigid cardboard for filing on the paper. Also, drawing specifications like surface shading, dash lines, and thickness of the line have considerable differences in different patent offices.

Moreover, the drawings must consider the following universal requirements:

Clear visibility of features (text and illustration).

Must create neat drawings (without erasure/ error marks).

Maintain throughout readability.

Must use the metric system (preferred globally).

Make visually appealing Drawings to lure more attention.

Provide every possible view (top, bottom, side, sectional, exploded, etc.)

Note: USPTO, IPO & EPO have approximately the same regulations.

Click Here to Download (Free Samples)

Patent Illustration Service: Benefits

The Patent illustration service serves a lot of benefits to the applicant. Although it charges a bit it is worth spending your money. Some of the major benefits of the Patent illustration service are:

The Patentee must mention all the details about the Invention of the written draft. An applicant can miss some of the details. However, with the help of Patent illustration services they can avoid omitting any key points.

The Illustrators remain up to date with the rules and guidelines of USPTO for Patent illustration. Also, they create illustrations considering the guidelines. This increases the chance of Patent grant.

The Patent examiners may hold the process of the patent grant if we fail to submit proper Patent illustrations. Also, in some cases, they may nullify the complete process. Thus, we require a patent illustration service for perfect patent drawings.

Related Article: PCT patent Filing: All That You Need to Know

Why Trust The Patent Illustration Express?

The Patent illustration express owns a team of professional patent experts and illustrators from different backgrounds. They not only have a deep understanding of their field but also detailed knowledge about the patent drawing rules. Also, we believe in 100% customer satisfaction with valuable outcomes and trustful advice. Our team is eager to work with you with a quick turnaround time and a budget-friendly price. Moreover, you can place your orders online in various formats and keep a track of the status of your work every time. In addition to that, we provide you free iterations until you get what you want. For more of our services, do visit The Patent Illustration Express.

* 1. **The 5 Key Benefits of Hiring a Trademark Registration Consultant**

A trademark registration gives an applicant the right to exclusively use the trademark to distinguish their product from someone else. Trademark registration consultant makes it easy for the applicant to get trademark registration in minimal time. A trademark can almost be anything as long as it makes easy for the consumers to identify it. A trademark registration gives the right to the applicant to use the mark and oppose legally if someone else tries to benefit from it. It prevents others to use the same without unauthorised access. So, a trademark registration consultant saves your time and energy and also ensures you of the smooth process while registering a trademark.

Key Benefits of Trademark Registration Consultant:

Trademark consultants prepare and present applications for their clients. They advise clients on intellectual property matters and represent clients before the registrars during the prosecution. Some of the benefits of trademark registration consultant are:

Advise Clients on IP related matters:

One of the most important benefits of trademark consultant is that they advise their clients on the registration of trademarks. They advise their clients with the trademark licensing requirements, transfer of intellectual property and protection of existing trademark rights. They also represent their clients at proceedings before the trademark opposition boards and other proceedings.

Timely delivery of the application:

One should spend his valuable time on building his business and not on learning the ins and outs of the trademark registration. That is why it is essential for you to hire a trademark consultant to look after your registration process. A trademark registration consultant helps you to file the trademark application quickly and handle all process until the registration completes.

Prevents mistakes in the application:

There is a high probability of making mistakes in the trademark application for an inexperienced person. This can affect your application while proceedings before the trademark opposition board. So, filing the trademark application again can be costly and time-consuming.

 This is the reason why one should go with an experienced trademark consultant. A trademark consultant can help you avoid common mistakes and avoid the extra cost. He also makes sure that your trademark is in compliance with the trademark rules of the trademark office. They ensure you of avoiding re-filing of your trademark application and get the trademark quickly to promote your brand.

Guide clients throughout the process:

A trademark registration consultant handles your trademark application from filing through registration. You don’t have to worry about the various stages in the trademark process and corresponding deadlines. The consultant monitors your application, files necessary responses and advises you of the progress of your application at every stage. He also makes sure to protect your trademark from trademark infringement.

Conducts Trademark Search:

One of the important parts of registering trademarks is to avoid trademark infringement. A trademark consultant can help you avoid costly legal problems by conducting a comprehensive trademark search before filing your application. A comprehensive search will ensure that you do not choose a trademark already registered in the trademark office database. They also help you to search for a different and unique trademark to attract your customer base.

Why Choose Us? – Your Trademark Team

You invest a lot in building your brand. You not just invest money in creating your logo and trademark, but the hours of effort into promoting your brand. Before you put this effort, you must make sure that it is in the right direction. Your Trademark Team (YTT) is a team of professionals who have years of experience in the trademark filing process.If you want to register your trademark, YTT with its world-class facilities and professional expertise would help you in doing so. We file quick and easy trademark applications for our clients at an optimal cost. Our team also provides timely notifications to our clients at each step. YTT is well aware of every guideline and the latest trademark laws to ensure our client’s trademark safety. We will also report you with the proper updates. To avail our services, Visit Your Trademark Team.

* 1. **Patent Filing Timeline: How Long Does it Take to Get a Patent?**

When you’re deciding if you should file a patent, then it is good to know the patent filing timeline. You must understand the duration of the process so that you can prepare yourself for the upcoming months. Generally, it takes about 22 months for getting a patent approval with the USPTO. The whole patent registration process involves different stages of the patent application process which make up the patent filing timeline. Therefore, you should be aware of all the deadlines and response times so that the entire procedure goes smoothly. We’ll be focusing on the timeline of a non-provisional application. Read about provisional patent filing here.

Related Article: A Career Guide for IP Paralegal Jobs

What are the steps comprising the patent filing timeline?

Let’s understand every single step of the patent process and the amount of time it is likely to consume. Each step in the patent filing timeline has equal importance. Hence, you must ensure you devote a decent amount of time to them. They are as follows.

1. Patent Search

Duration: 1 week to 6 months

This step involves extensive searching for prior artto check the patentability of your invention. If your invention is novel, non-obvious and functional, then you can get a patent for it. This search confirms whether or not you should go ahead with the process. Hence, you should invest a lot of time on this step in order to be thorough.

2. Drafting the Patent Application

Duration: 2 weeks to 1 month

It is vital to draft your patent application properly. Needless to say, everything depends on the quality of your draft. So you must make sure that you cover everything in your draft. This includes perfecting your description, patent claims, and patent illustrations. Hence, spending a lot of time on perfecting your draft is highly advisable.

3. Patent Filing and Prosecution Process

Duration: 12 months to 32 months

This is the longest step in the patent filing timeline. A non-provisional patent application goes into the USPTO database for a publication on the USPTO website. This is done to put the invention’s information in the public domain as a part of the public disclosure of the invention. After this, the USPTO queues your application for an exam. In addition, there are variations in the time it takes for your application to reach the desk of an examiner. We’ll talk about them further below.

The average time an examiner takes to review an application is 21 months. Furthermore, you need to wait for about 32 months to get a patent. But, the time duration depends on your interactions with your examiner. Once he is through with his examination, he will send you a report, which is an office action. This will contain the technical and non-technical errors in your application. Ultimately, you need to fix all of these in order for your application to get a patent grant.

Variances in a Patent Filing Timeline

Your wait period can vary depending on the type of application you file, the invention type, and the priority status. You can get priority status by paying more money so that you can have an expedited process.

Track One: This is a type of priority you can get for your application. The goal is to provide a final disposition within 12 months of receiving priority status. You must note that you can file 4 independent claims and no more than 30 claims in this.

Accelerated Examination: This provides the applicant with the opportunity to have a final disposition within 12 months. It is similar to track one but it has its differences. For starters, it costs less. The downside is that it limits your claims to 3 independent claims and 20 claims in total. Another downside is that to acquire this priority status, you will have to pass an interview.

Need a professional to file your patent? – The Patent Filing Company

The patent filing timeline can become long and tedious if you are not careful. You may feel the need to take the assistance of a patent professional. It is important to keep all the steps and deadlines in mind. You should consider engaging a patent professional / firm who has years of experience in the patent field. Consider The Patent Filing Company to cater to your needs. We offer complete support for provisional patent application filing, design & utility patent Applications, patentability search reports, non-provisional patent application filing, patent drawings and much more.

* 1. Major Tips to Make Complex Illustrations Easy

While illustration tends to work upon the clarity of the invention, complex illustrations might create confusion in heads of patent examiners. But you need not worry. What if complex illustrations are the demand of that invention?

Remember the complexity of an illustration lies in its execution!

An illustration might become complex when there are minor details that you need to highlight. In such scenarios, some minor details require more elaborative detailing for a clearer view. A well-executed illustration can become equally eye-appealing as that of a not so complex one.

There are 3 major reasons for rejection of complex illustrations:

The illustration not complying with the specifications of the invention

The illustration not expressing the invention properly

Illustration being too complex not complying with patent illustration rules.

Our aim through this article is to eradicate these probable reasons for rejection for enforceable complex illustrations. Let us learn how we can do this.

Related Article: Patent Paralegal: Duties to Perform

Make complex illustrations your strong point

The complexity of your invention makes complex illustrations inevitable. This, in turn, makes the invention more difficult to cognize. But, this can work in your favor if you follow the below-stated measures which are as per the USPTO requirements.

Execute drawings in durable, black, dense and dark and uniformly thick and well-defined lines and strokes. The drawings are strictly black and white without coloring.

While executing complex illustrations or the simpler ones always highlight the Cross-sections by oblique hatching which should not impede the clear reading of the reference signs and leading lines.

Figure 1- Cross-sectional view (US9232941B2)

Keep the scale of the drawings and the distinctness of their graphical execution in such a way that a photographic reproduction with a linear reduction in size to two-thirds would enable all details without difficulty.

Every element of the figures is proportionate to the other in the figure. But where you need more clarity such as in complex illustrations, different proportions of the elements give better clarity.

The minimum height of the numbers and letters is 0.32 cm.

Although, the same sheet of drawings contains several figures. But, in the case of complex illustrations, you can draw figures on two or more sheets to form a single complete figure. You can assemble these figures without concealing any part of any of the figures appearing on the various sheets.

Arrange different figures on a sheet or sheets without wasting space, preferably in an upright position, clearly separated. If not arranged in the upright position, then present them in a sideways manner. This means the top of the figures on the left side of the sheet.

If you denote same features with specific reference signs, you those reference signs for those figures throughout the international application. Also, if there are a large number of reference signs, then attaches a separate sheet listing all reference signs and the features denoted by them.

File a petition for submitting color drawings or photographs for better clarity of the invention in case of complex illustrations.

Make it a point to always deliver the illustration in theUSPTO prescribed format. In compliance will lead to serious repercussions. While patent drafting and preparing illustrations, focus upon well detailing the illustration and coming up with clearer and enforceable results.

* 1. **Writing a Patent Draft – The Major Requirements**

It is not a cake-walk writing a patent. If you are a first-time applicant, you need to learn precisely how to draft a patent. Moreover, it is advisable to take the assistance of professional services. There are multiple requirements of USPTO to meet at the time of patent filing. Also, you need to meet those requirements strictly in order to receive a patent grant.

Here, we are going to discuss those requirements in detail so that you don’t miss any of them.

 Writing a Patent Application – Provisional and Complete Applications

According to 35 U.S.C. 111, a patent application under the provision on or after December 18 is:

A written application by the inventor or otherwise by an attorney, submitted to the Director.

Broadly the contents comprise of:

Specification: it comprises the whole of your invention details.

Drawing(s) (if any): drawings/illustrations give a visible tour to your invention. You need to follow USPTO guidelines describing the dos and don’ts of patent drawings important for your patent draft.

An Oath or Declaration: an oath or affirmation made before any person within the United States authorized by law to administer oaths. An oath made in a foreign country made in accordance with 37 CFR 1.66.

Patent application fee: the USPTO charges patent filing, search, and examination fees. The fee amount for different proceedings is different. An applicant needs to pay extra charges in case of any additional proceedings like office action(s), if any.

Claim(s): they describe the novelty of your invention, in the form of statements. You get a patent grant for this part of your invention. Therefore, they are the most crucial while writing a patent draft.

Patent application transmittal letter: filed with the application form. It identifies the items being filed i.e. the specifications, claims, drawings, declarations, etc.

Datasheet of the patent application: any domestic or foreign priority claim made maintained in the application data sheet. In order to update previously filed ADS, you need to file another ad with corrected information.

Statement Regarding Federally Sponsored Research or Development (if Applicable): this section should contain a statement as to rights to inventions made under federally sponsored research and development (if any).

Reference to Sequence Listing, a Table, or a Computer Program Listing Compact Disc Appendix (if Applicable): Refer any material submitted separately on a compact disc in the specification. The only materials accepted on compact disc are computer program listings, gene sequence listings, and tables of information.

The filing date is the date on which an applicant submits the specifications, with or without claims to the USPTO. You can submit the oath or declaration, fee, and 1 or more claims after submitting the specifications. For this, you need to pay a surcharge, an amount prescribed by the director.

These are the elements that are present in general in a patent application. Now let’s specifically discuss the provisional and complete patent application.

A Provisional Application is an incomplete application, which is basically devoid of the claims. This application sets a priority date for the complete application.

Crucial Elements of a Patent Draft

A Patent draft comprises many crucial elements. You can’t skip even a single of these elements to receive a patent grant for your invention. Make sure you meet all the USPTO requirements while writing a patent draft and before filing the same.

Here, we will discuss the specification part in detail as it is the whole-soul of the draft. It has the following elements in it:

Title: while writing a patent the title explains what the invention does. It is clear and concise within 500 characters range.

Applicant(s) Information: Name, Nationality, and Address of the applicant, in that order.

Invention background: it contains the description and drawings of the related field of invention. This helps the USPTO to identify the subject matter and forwards the application to that specific unit or examining group.

The written description: it describes the invention and the manner or process of making and using it. The language is clear and concise so that a person knowledgeable of that domain can make and use the same.

Description of Related Art: this portion describes what prior technology problem this invention ought to solve. Therefore, in this portion, the applicant needs to put forth already published applications and prior art Moreover, mention only that information which is common between the prior art and the current invention. Hence, the description is kept concise.

Claims: they define the scope of the invention. In essence, you get patent protection for whatever you mention in the claim section. It is an innovative or novel part of the invention. Therefore, be very precise and clear while delivering the claims. Also, the claims can vary i.e. there can be independent claims, Jepson claims, Omnibus claims and multiple dependent claims depending upon the invention. Claims comprise Preamble which recites the invention’s name and use. Secondly, the transition, it connects the preamble and the body. Finally, the body which comprises the claimed elements of the invention. Precise drafting of claims is of paramount importance. Do visit- “How to Draft Accurate Patent Claims” to learn the same.

Abstract/Summary: conclude the specification part with a summary or abstract of the invention. It is a single paragraph with 150 words providing a narrative of the invention. It gives a brief on the overall invention like a narrative of a play.

Note: Always write the application in English Language and do the numbering in Arabic numerals.

Tricks and Hacks for Writing a Patent Draft

Out of 100 patent applications filed only 60 of them gets through the process of prosecution. Hence, your application should immediately grab the attention of the examiner in a positive way.

You need to take care of a few things while writing a patent draft. These include:

Clarity of description: always portray the invention in a very clear and easy to understand manner. Don’t use too complicated vocabulary. But do use technical words wherever necessary. Write it in such a way, that a person knowledgeable of the domain of the invention easily understands what the invention purports to explain.

Usage of the Invention: do mention the potential application your invention has utilization for.

Terminology: use precise terms related to your invention. No ambiguous or vague expressions should include in the description. Do take advice or professional help in case of any kind of doubt. Do not hesitate!

Professional Patent Drafters at Patent Drafting Catalyst

By meeting multiple USPTO specifications, in their particular order and considering too many dos and don’ts one prepares a patent draft. Writing a patent draft surely is not a cakewalk. In case if you think there is a need for professional help, we are here at your service.

We, at The Patent Drafting Catalyst, provide unparalleled patent drafting services across the world. With 100+ experienced professionals and highly efficient team force, you get up to the mark patent drafts delivered within time. For us customer satisfaction is of paramount importance, hence we make no compromise on the quality of our results. You can fetch patent drafting, office action support, patent drawing, paralegal support, and prior art search services with just a click.

* 1. **A Quick Guide to Trademark Electronic Search System**

The Trademark Electronic Search System (TESS) is a database of every trademark that one registers or applies for. Each record in it includes many important elements of the mark. Each element is a searchable piece of information. The trademark electronic search system allows you to find any marks that have common elements. It contains the record of active and inactive trademark registrations and applications. Searching TESS to check for pending and registered trademarks before applying may reduce the risk of trademark infringement.

Trademark Electronic Search System: Search options to consider

Before searching on the trademark electronic search system, it is important for one to choose search options. There are different search options having different features, but all searches are the complete database. One should search on the trademark electronic search system according to his preference and proficiency with TESS. The different types of search are:

Basic word mark search:

Use this option if you are searching on the basis of words in the mark, serial number and registration number. They give the most straightforward and most slender search options.

Word/Design mark search (Structured):

Novice users mainly use this option. It has all the functions of the more advanced fee-form search option. It helps you to search in any field and helps you construct and format your search criteria.

Word/Design mark search (free-form):

You can use this search option if you are an expert in trademark electronic search system functionality. It is the most efficient search option for experts. It requires you to set up your search.

The steps to be followed for TESS search:

The first two steps are common in all of the above three searches. We will discuss the next steps as we move further.

1. Choose a field to search:

A field is a type of information that associates with a mark. Name, address, goods and services and serial numbers are all examples of fields. One needs to choose an option from the field drop-down list.

Combined Word Mark: It searches the English words in all marks and the English translation of foreign words in all marks.

Serial or Registration Number: Search by the seven digit serial numbers of marks that one applies for.

Owner Name and Address: Search by owner name and address.

All: Search all fields

2. Choose a Search Term:

A search term is the data TESS searches for in the field you choose. For example, to find all marks that a specific person owns, your search term would be the name of the person. Moreover, you would search for the name in the ‘owner name’ field.

Basic Word Mark Search:

3. Choose what your results may contain:

If the search term is of more than one word, then one has to select any of the three options below:

All Search terms (AND): Every search term in your search term must appear in the field you chose for a mark to show up in your results. The words can appear in any order.

Any Search terms (OR): At least one word in your search term must appear in the field you chose for a mark to show up in your result.

The exact search phrase: The exact search phrase must appear in the field you chose for a mark to show up in your result. The words must appear in the order you entered them.

4. Choose singular, plural, love or dead:

One has to choose plural and singular, or singular only. “Plural and singular” returns both the plural and singular forms of your search term. While “singular” returns only the singular form of the search term.

Word/Design mark search (Structured):

3. Choose ‘yes’ or ‘no’ from the plurals drop-down box:

If one chooses ‘Yes’, it returns both the singular and plural forms of your search term. ‘No’ returns only the singular form of the search term.

4. Choose an operator. (Optional):

Choosing the operator helps one to connect the search strings. A search string is the combination of a search term and a field. Combining two search strings with an operator can help one expand his results to see more marks that are relevant. The most common operators are “or”, “and” and “not”.

Word/Design mark search (free-form):

3. Add more search criteria. (Optional):

One can add more search strings and connect them with operators. This helps one to expand his results as seen in the above point. One can see filtered results that are only relevant to him.

4. Choose ‘yes’ or ‘no’ from the plurals drop-down box:

If one chooses ‘Yes’, it returns both the singular and plural forms of your search term. ‘No’ returns only the singular form of the search term.

After performing all of the above steps, you need to click on the ‘submit query’ option to search for the trademark.

Why Choose Us? – The Trademark Search Company

The trademark electronic search system plays a crucial role these days in the trademark filing process. The trademark search company (TTSC) provides clients with a world-class trademark search electronically in minimal time. You invest a lot in building your brand by creating logos and applying for trademarks. Before you put this effort, you need to make sure that it is in the right direction. At the TTSC, our aim is to let you focus on building the right brand through a comprehensive trademark search. Our team provides you with the most flexible and widest coverage at a lower price. TTSC makes sure of 100% satisfaction to our clients without compromising on the quality of work. For more information, Visit The Trademark Search Company.

* 1. **A Complete Guide to Patent Novelty Search**

Introduction: Seeking for U.S. patent protection requires the presence of features like novelty, non-obviousness, and usefulness in the invention. Another aspect of patent protection is Patent Novelty Search or Novelty Search which aims to dig out pre-existing knowledge for checking the uniqueness of the applicant’s invention. This sort of pre-existing knowledge search in a particular technical field is known as prior art search, which is performed on behalf of any patent applicant. Patent novelty search basically focuses on a number of aspects:

It basically works for testing the novelty feature, since the non-obviousness feature is difficult to be claimed using limited chances of finding drafted set of documents.

It aims to determine whether the invention or its main concept has previously been disclosed publicly, before the filing date or not.

It determines whether to pursue patent protection or not by checking for its novelty.

It determines the weak points in the invention or areas, which are similar to the existing patents. Thus, helping out in strengthening the application.

It is generally performed before the filing of the patent application.

This search is beneficial not only in determining the patentability of an invention but also for the following number of reasons:

Enhances patent drafting: It enables the patent drafter to emphasize on the advanced technology in a better way so that it clearly distinguishes the invented work from the prior art. It requires deep knowledge about the prior art, so that novel claims would be drafted in a more relevant and precise way with the invention.

Enhances prosecution speed: It enables the applicant to make corrections and be careful in areas which are anticipated as weak sections. It allows claims to be made in such a manner that it prevents the prior art before the Examiner’s own search. This depends upon the time, budget, and skills of the searcher.

Enhances defensibility: It ensures that the Examiner considers the most relevant prior art in future patents during prosecution.

Want to know more about Patent Novelty Search? Read Novelty Search Basics: Things You Should Know to gather more information.

The truth about Patent Novelty Search

It is to be noted that a patent novelty search may sometimes appear as a search that finds concepts and products similar to the current invention that might infringe on the current invention. But the fact about novelty is that if any patented invention is taken as a reference or a base to invent something new as its derived product, then it does not hamper the novelty terms until and unless the derived product is non-obvious. Thus, a patent search must not be thought of as a product clearance or an infringement search.

Patent searches do not place any time-based constraint or do not limit the search on how far back could be searched for prior art. It is allowed to look into all evidence of past public use or sales, granted patents, non-patent literature, and all the patents published anywhere in the world. Cost is the only factor that limits the extent of a patentability search. On the other hand, prior art search which is performed by any skilled searcher believes to be the most cost-effective way for searching prior art.

Find out from here the list of countries and languages we are covering.

Patentability Search Types

There are two classes of patentability searches, which are described below:

Basic patentability search: It is a cheaper way of searching only in properly classified U.S. patents and published patent applications. This search provides rationally priced results which are not that comprehensive but still works.

Premium Patentability Search: It is a more costly and detailed way to search in European and Japanese patent applications (which may be issued or published by the USPTO, EPO, PCT, and JPO).

None of the above two searches can be found in periodicals and textbooks since they are not properly classified and finding them would cost a lot more time and money.

Critical Dates

Invention date: The date on which the applicant files about his/her invention in the patent office. This date is known as the first-to-file date and the U.S. became the first-to-file country on 16th March 2013. Countries that follow this law only require references that are published or mentioned anywhere before the date of filing a patent application, to claim novelty.

Priority date: This date is of one year before the filing date. Novelty could be challenged if the references that are published or mentioned in the new invention, are found in publications of more than one year before the application date or if found in public use or on sale in the U.S. before the application date.

The need of Patent Search

The following are some facts about patent and prior art search:

Not legally recommended: Performing prior art search is not legally recommended and it is not even required by the patent office before the filing of an application. U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has even stated that the patent inventors do not hold any rights to conduct any prior art search.

Adding to this, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) and the European Patent Office (EPO), both agree for the fact that patentability search must be conducted, while there is no requirement for conducting prior art search.

Incurs extra cost: Performing prior art search incurs extra cost over the main cost of preparing, filing, and prosecuting a patent application.

Provides guidance: Performing prior art search will forecast the misleading, problematic areas of the invention that may arise during the time of prosecution. These all can be corrected, thus creating more opportunities for receiving a patent without any delay.

Self-Conducted approach: No law states that this search has to be performed by only any professional searcher or attorney. It can be self-conducted depending on the applicant’s understanding level and skills related to the technology used.

Even after it’s a self-conducted approach, it is still better to take help or advice from an experienced patent search professional.

Post-Filing of Patent

Once the filing is done, USPTO starts its official examination process with the searching phase. It is difficult to perform patent searching by a beginner since it requires a lot of skills and experience to find the right details from the right place. The European Patent Office believes that it requires deep insight and eyes for details (EOT) to interpret the results, something neither the inventor nor a patent searcher is able to do.

Thus, it is recommended to take help from an experienced patent attorney.

How can TPSF assist you?

We are a team of experienced search experts serving the IP industry for more than 8+ years and conducting 100+ search assignments on a daily basis. We deal in multiple technical domains covering 100+ countries in a vast array of languages. We deliver your results timely without compromising on quality.

* 1. **Patent Monitoring – A Not To Skip Procedure**

You come up with a superb invention. What is the very next step you think of taking? Getting it patented. Indeed. But, as you proceed, keep in mind that there are other people out there innovating in the same field as yours. Don’t panic. Here is where patent monitoring comes into action.

Patent monitoring is all about keeping vigilance on your competitors and on your patent, to protect it from possible infringements. But how will you get to know where your competitor is and at what stage of IP lifecycle he/she is at? This becomes quite tricky if you are an amateur. Handover this task to a patent monitoring services professional for the best and comprehensive results.

PAIR and PALM- Reliable Patent Monitoring Tools

One of the ways of reliable patent monitoring is by using the Patent Application Information retrieval (PAIR) system. Since, after a period of 18 months, patent applications are published and are publically available.

Therefore, it is quite beneficial to use such a system that reliably provides a comprehensive list of applications related to your field of invention.

USPTO offers this reliable system with 2 modes – Public and Private PAIR

Private PAIR reflects the status of your patent application in a very confidential and secure manner. On the other hand, Public PAIR performs a search for issued patents and published patent applications of various people in different domains. While performing the patent prosecution status of your application, you can also monitor the latest patent applications.

The PALM (Patent Application Locating and Monitoring) System is the automated data management system used by the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) for the retrieval and/or online updating of the computer record of each patent application.

USPTO provides a very user-friendly interface for searching through the database within minutes a patent application gets filed in the patent office.

Patent Monitoring- Essential Elements and Significance

By now you know, in order to make your invention shine with the patent grant, it has to be unique. Therefore, keeping an eye on the competition becomes a must. But, you should also know the different aspects that make patent monitoring a significant step for saving a patent grant. Also, there are many aspects of patent monitoring, so let’s dive into them.

Competitor monitoring: the first and very obvious is competitor monitoring. As the name suggests it is about keeping a track on your competitors’ patent application. But it is not about an all-time activity. Professionals keep a timely vigilance on your competitors which can be weekly, monthly or on a yearly basis.

Related Article: Significance of patent Watching

Legal Status monitoring: patent monitoring is also about keeping an eye on your patent application as well. A patent attorney who keeps an eye on your patent application gives you updates regarding any amendments to make through office action response or for other related procedures. It also ensures the viability of your patent.

Infringement monitoring: this works both ways. Infringement monitoring ensures that you are not violating already patented invention n your domain. At the same time, it ensures that patent application is safe and sound, i.e. it has not been infringed by a competitor. In any of the cases, patent monitoring prevents chances of litigation.

Related Article: What are the Different Patent Watch Techniques?

Latest Technology monitoring: technology is something that changes very drastically these days. Also, patent grant procedure is something that takes years; hence there are bright chances of the present technology to become obsolete. Hence, a vigilant eye on the latest technology becomes unavoidable.

Why Patent Drafting Catalyst?

Indeed patent monitoring is not a cakewalk. It requires expertise as it is a recurring task and demands an eye-for-detail. Also, monitoring of a single database will not suffice the purpose, since inventions take place all over the world. Without proper monitoring, you might face serious consequences such as patent litigation, which will cost you both time and money. Therefore, it is advisable to let a professional carry out the task.

At Patent drafting Catalyst, we monitor 100+ patent applications every week. We hold a great team of patent paralegals and attorneys with years of experience. Also, we provide comprehensive reports using state-of-the-art tools. We make it a point to over both patent and non-patent literature in every possible domain of technology.

We hold trusted client account in 100+ countries delivering patent watch and monitoring services for more than 10 years at cost-effective rates. Along with this, you can also seek patent drafting, patent filing, and paralegal support services from us. To know more, please visit Patent Drafting Catalyst.

* 1. **How to Make the Best Illustrations for Utility Patents**

Utility Patents are the most common form of patents in the US. Judging from the trends of the last 5 years, the USPTO grants nearly 300,000 utility patents in a year.

A huge part of these utility patents is the patent illustrations. Patent illustrations are drawings that provide a visual description of your invention. They aid your claims and descriptions by elucidating them in a manner that no amount of words can. However, you must ensure that they follow the strict set of guidelines set by USPTO for patent drawings.

So, how can you ensure that you make the best illustrations? Let’s find out.

Why do you need patent illustrations in Utility Patents?

According to the guide from USPTO for utility patents, you MUST include patent illustrations in your application. This is because illustrations are necessary to understand the subject matter for which you seek the patent.

The illustrators must show every feature of the invention which exist in the claims section. You must also note that you cannot introduce an illustration into your application after filing the patent application. The reason is that there is a prohibition against introducing new matter in an application.

How to make good illustrations for Utility Patents?

The guidelines and requirements are based on 37 CFR § 1.84. All applicants of utility patents must ensure that their illustrations fall in line with these rules and guidelines. This will ensure maximum chances for you to get the utility patent grant.

Understanding the Guidelines

First, let’s understand what exactly does USPTO wants when you write a patent. The Manual of Patent Examining Procedures (MPEP) lists out instructions that you must follow:

You must create all the illustrations on white A4 matte paper and it needs to be flexible and strong.

The dimensions of the paper should be 21cm x 29.7cm or 21.6cm x 27.9 cm.

Only use India ink on all drawings.

All illustrations must be in black and white unless a part of the invention needs color to explain it.

Ensure that every drawing clearly mentions the invention name, name of the inventor, and application number.

Margins should be as follows:

2.5 cm on the top

1.0 cm on the bottom

1.5 cm on the right side

2.5 cm on the left side

Ensure that the drawing is to scale when the illustration is reduced to two-thirds the size.

Superimposition of drawings should not happen.

Avoid solid black shading except on bar graphs or to represent color.

You may use symbols and legends if necessary to describe the invention.

Use lead lines to redirect the reader from the drawing to the associated symbol in the description.

Charts and Diagrams

Drawings aren’t restricted to illustrations and can also include charts and diagrams. In fact, if you wish to get a process patent, you MUST include flowcharts to explain the entire process. You may also need to include tables, formulas, and waveforms while describing your invention. In order to represent this data, you must the same rules as any other type of drawing.

Photos

The USPTO allows you to add photos for utility patents. The photographs need to be in high definition to depict intricate details of the invention. They must follow the same rules in terms of the type, size, and margins of the illustration.

Color Drawings

Color drawings are extremely rare to find in utility patents. The first step is to file a petition under Title 37 (CFR) 1.17(h). You must also pay the specified fee for permission to include and use color drawings. The quality of the drawing should be high enough. This is to ensure that one can reproduce them in black and white on the printed patent without losing any details.

Using Views Optimally

You need to include several viewpoints in your drawings to depict the looks and functioning of your product. Wherever applicable, you should include the following views of your invention:

Standard six views (front, back, right, left, top, and bottom) for 3D objects.

Two views (front and back) for 2D objects

Three-dimensional perspective views

Exploded views to represent how each part works during the operation of the invention

Sectional views to depict the functionality

You need not include unornamented surfaces. Shading is another essential component of patent drawings. It depicts depth, contour, and texture. You should use dots, lines, and distinctive patterns for this.

Arrows and lead lines also play a key role in the drawings. Here are the places where you use arrows:

To signify movement direction.

An arrow on a lead line signifies the entire section to which it points to.

When an arrow is touching a lead line, it shows the surface indicated by the line.

Other Tips to Focus On

Despite all these rules, there are other considerations you should be aware of while creating drawings for utility patents. Keeping these in mind will boost the overall presentation of your drawings. Some of these include:

Holes: Ensure that you don’t make any holes anywhere in your drawings.

Copyright/Mask Work Notices: You can add these in the drawing directly below the portion they pertain to. You must ensure they have a dimension of 1/8 inch x 1/4 inch.

Numbering of Sheets: You must number the drawings in Arabic numerals, and write it on the top of the sheet. This can be either in the middle or on the right, but not in the margin. Numbering must also include two numerals separated by a line to show the page out of the total number of pages. Ensure that the numbers that you use to identify portions of the drawing are not larger than the numerals.

Numbering of Views: You must number the views with consecutive Arabic numerals, and they must be independent of sheet numbering. Another key point is to use the same Arabic numerals for partial followed by a capital letter. You must not use brackets, circles, or inverted commas while writing the numbers and letters. These numbers must also be preceded by “FIG.” But this isn’t necessary if there is only 1 view.

Security Markings: You may use them, but they must be in the center of the top margin.

Corrections: You must ensure that the corrections you submit with the patent drawing must be permanent and durable.

Conclusion

The USPTO demands you to follow a lot of rules for drawings in utility patents. However, if you ensure that everything is in order, then the USPTO will not object to the illustrations in your application. Rather, illustrations will not only help you in securing the patent grant but also protect the patent from infringements. A good set of illustrations will make any potential infringers think twice.

Need an Illustrator’s assistance? – Professional Patent Illustrators

You may have a brilliant invention, deserving of a patent. Naturally, you will need to ensure that your illustrations are spot on. But, by now you already know how tedious the entire process of creating a drawing is.

Hence, it is important it is to hire the right professional. Professional Patent Illustrators boast 10+ years of experience in delivering top quality patent illustrations. We specialize in Utility patents and design patents, with thorough knowledge of the latest guidelines and norms. Our turnaround time is incredibly fast and we guarantee any number of iterations until we satisfy your needs.

* 1. **Top Reasons to buy Accurate & Professional Patent Illustration Services**

You need to ensure that your patent drawings to strike the hammer on the nail while describing your invention. Hence, it is wise to seek illustration services to achieve this target. A drawing is less time consuming and easier to understand in contrast to going through long paragraphs of descriptions. Basically, patent drawings are an indispensable part of your application. An examiner finds it easier to differentiate between your invention and prior arts if your drawings are meticulous and elaborate. Hence, any inaccuracies can hamper your shots at getting a patent.

Furthermore, this doesn’t limit to just the grant of patent. An elaborate yet precise illustration enables a judge to distinguish between inventions and make informed decisions during patent infringements. Moreover, if you prepare your drawings meticulously, then it discourages potential infringers to copy your invention. To ensure that all the checkboxes in your drawings are hit, you should consider taking assistance from illustration services.

This article highlights the most important reasons for you to go for patent illustration services for rendering your drawings.

Illustration Services: How can they help you?

1. Technical Specifications

Every patent office has a set of drawing rules which you need to follow for all your illustrations that go with a patent application. So, you may file an application with the USPTO, or with any other country’s patent office, or file an international application via PCT. However, you must ensure that you follow these guidelines like the Bible. Right from the dimensions of the sheet you produce the illustration on to nomenclature that you need to use. Illustration services ensure that all your drawings are up to the mark and are following these guidelines.

2. Illustration Services for Utility Patents

The guidelines for Utility patents are quite rigid. Some key things to remember are:

Ensure that scaling of figures is correct

Every line, number, and letter must be dark and uniform

All the figures must have a proper description.

You may also include tables, formulae, waveforms, symbols, etc. depending on the invention. You need to make a plan or elevated view, isometric projections, perspective views, sectional views, exploded views, etc. It is a good idea to render specific views of your invention. These views may illustrate a problem the invention solves, a particular advantage it provides or a need it fulfills. Also, you may depict prior art to differentiate your invention from an old one, or the innovation on an existing invention. If your invention involves a lot of intricate parts, seeking help from illustration services is highly advisable. Even if that is not the case, a good professional can ensure that your drawings are top-notch.

Also, check out some of our sample utility patent drawings here. Like our work? Click here to view our pricing and procedure for ordering a utility patent drawing.

3. Design Patent

If design patents were to have a heartbeat, then their patent drawings would be it. USPTO guidelines stipulate a few very important points.

The drawing disclosure is the most key aspect of an application.

The drawings comprise of the entire visual disclosure of the claim.

Your drawing must be excellent in describing the design, such that nothing is left to conjecture.

Most countries follow similar rules in their guidelines with minor changes. For instance, USPTO requires you to appropriately and adequately shade all the surfaces of drawings. This is a standout requirement which makes USPTO design drawings appear more artistic in comparison to other countries. However, after submission of your drawings, you cannot correct any inconsistencies unless you can do it without adding new matter. The USPTO law forbids you to add or remove any matter after you file the patent application. Hence, the importance of getting the drawings right is noticeable here.

Check out some of our sample design patent drawings here. Like our work? Click here to view our pricing and procedure for ordering a design patent drawing.

4. Formal over informal drawings

Sometimes, you may wish to file an informal drawing. The reason being, to avoid the cost of preparing formal drawings early in the product development process. Formal drawings may take as long as a week or even two (for a large application) to prepare. So you might go with informal drawings which may or may not be as descriptive as you would like. Later, as you formalize the drawings, you would have much more descriptive and clear illustrations. But a stringent examiner may reject it because the details in these new illustrations might qualify as “new matter”. You might find yourself in a tough spot when dealing with a picky examiner. Examiners may or may not accept disclosure of new matter and this can lead to rejection of your application. Hence, instead of taking a gamble on your invention’s patentability, it’s a safer bet to invest in formal drawings. If rendering your own formal drawings intimidates you, it’s worthwhile to consider investing in illustration services.

5. Computer vs Hand-made drawings

You always have the option of handmade drawings if you believe in assiduously ensuring that your drawings are perfect. However, if you are looking to save time and money, a more economic option is going for computer-aided design (CAD) drawings. This helps you or your draftsperson avoid wastage of time in recreating drawings. Another big advantage is that you can conveniently make changes to your existing drawings if need be. Essentially, right from rendering a new drawing to reproducing one with modifications, working on a computer is faster and simpler. However, there is nothing wrong with hand-made illustrations. As long as it’s serving the purpose of fully describing the invention, it stays.

Convinced to hire an illustration service? – The Patent Drawings Company

We’ve listed out a justified set of reasons as to why you should go for illustration services. The Patent Drawings Company (TPDC) has specialized experts offering the best illustrations. We cover the widest range of software/technologies to cater to any output format that you need. Our target is 100% satisfaction of our customers. Your pocket shouldn’t be overburdened, so we ensure that our prices are very affordable. We also guarantee a lightning-fast turn around time. We are more than happy to make any number of iterations for you until you are satisfied. To make an inquiry, contact us on The Patents Drawing Company.

* 1. **Patent Illustration Requirements: An Overview**

There are certain patent illustration requirements that one should know while filing the patent. An illustration requires you to explain and outline the subject matter that associates with the patent. The illustrations are essential in almost all patent applications. To increase the chances of getting a patent grant, it’s important for you to know the patent illustration requirements while making patent illustrations. The illustrations don’t have to be works of art but describe and demonstrate the invention with a great deal of accuracy. Clear and precise illustrations also help the applicant to make valid points while litigating with the infringers.

Patent Illustration Requirements: Rules to follow

Good quality patent illustrations are very important for the correct disclosure of the invention. So, there are some of the general requirements while creating a patent illustration. The patent illustration requirements are as follows:

1.Utility Patents:

There are strict requirements for drawing utility patents. So, it becomes important for one to make sure that the illustration is as per the requirements. One can use tables, waveforms, mathematical formulae and symbols in the utility patents depending on the invention. Utility patents also include specific views to illustrate a problem that the invention solves. The patent applicant can use prior art to show a contrast or to differentiate his invention from the older one. The more complex is the invention to define, the more valuable the illustrator service becomes to accurately define the invention.

Related Article: Prior-Art Documents required for filing an IDS﻿

2. Design Patents:

Unlike utility patent application, the application for design patent fully relies on the drawings. In design patents, the drawing disclosure is the most important element of the application. The reason is that it constitutes the entire visual disclosure of the claim. One notable rule that the USPTO requires is that the shading of all the surfaces of the drawings must be appropriate. This requirement makes the design patent illustrations appear more artistic than other drawings.

3. Colour drawings:

Utility and Design patents rarely accept colour drawings. Sometimes, they may be necessary as the only practical medium to disclose the subject matter. The colour drawings must be of sufficient qualities such that all the details are reproducible in black and white printed format. Although, one cannot use colour drawings in the PCT application.

4. Graphic Forms in illustrations:

 Tables, formulas of mathematics and waveforms are subject to the same rules as any other type of drawing. Formulas and waveforms also have specific requirements:

Formulas: One needs to label each formula as a separate figure and include brackets to show any necessary information.

Waveforms: The presentation of waveforms must be in a single figure that uses a vertical and a horizontal axis to showtime. Each individual waveform must have a letter designation adjacent to the vertical access for identification.

Tables: The tables in the illustration should be present in the sideways of the sheet. The top of the table must be present on the left side of the sheet to make it look desirable.

Related Article: Patent Paralegal: Duties to Perform

5. Views of the illustration:

It is one of the most important factors in the patent illustration requirements. To show how the product looks and works, one needs to use several viewpoints in the drawing. If possible, one should use the following views of the invention:

The standard six views include a front, back, right, left, top and bottom view.

Perspective views with three dimensions.

Only the front and back views of a flat object.

Sectional views to show the function of the object.

Exploded views to show how a single part works during the operation of the invention

6. Margin Requirements:

Margin requirements are also an essential part of the patent illustration requirements. The sheets must not contain frames around the usable surface of the object. But they should have a scan target point that means cross-hairs printed on two corner margins. Each sheet must include:

A top margin of at least 2.5 cm.

A left-side margin of at least 2.5 cm.

A right-side margin of at least 1.5 cm.

A bottom side margin of at least 1.0 cm.

7. Identification of the illustration:

The patent application must include identification of the illustrations. It should include the title of the invention, inventor’s name, and the application number. If the assigning of the application number has not taken place, one should use the docket number. The placement of these to identify the illustration must be on the front of each sheet, centered within the top margin.

8. Papers used for the illustration:

The paper must be white, flexible and strong. The USPTOallows only one side writing on the paper. One should use black ink on white paper. The paper size must be either 21 cm by 29.7 cm or 21.6 cm by 27.9 cm.

Looking for Patent Illustration? – Professional Patent Illustrators

Patent Illustration plays a vital role in a patent application for displaying of the invention. If you are looking for any assistance regarding patent illustrations, Professional Patent Illustrators (PPI) will guide you with the patent illustration requirements. PPI is a team of professional patent illustrators, who provide our clients with super-fast delivery of the illustration services. Our team creates illustrations that have 100% compliance with the patent illustration rules. PPI provides flexible output formats to our clients with a full satisfaction guarantee. We make sure to cover a descriptive invention for our clients through illustrations. To avail our services, Visit Professional Patent Illustrators.

* 1. **All You Need to Know about USPTO**

The United States Patent and Trademark Office is often known as USPTO is the federal agency for granting patents and registering trademarks. The USPTO reviews patent and trademark applications for federal registration and determines whether an applicant meets the requirement for federal registration. Also, the patent grant protects the invention of the applicant while the trademark rights protect designs and expressions to identify a particular product. Hence, it helps to fulfill a specific constitutional mandate which promotes the growth of science and arts. In addition, the USPTO serves to advise federal agencies on matters that relate to intellectual property protections.

Essentials of USPTO:

The USPTO examines applications and grants patents on inventions to the patent applicants after they meet the requirements. After that, it publishes and disseminates patent information, records assignments of patents, maintains search files of U.S. and foreign patents. Also, it maintains a search room for public use in examining issued patents and records.

Structure:

The USPTO structure mainly comprises Commissioner of Patents and Commissioner for Trademarks under the secretary of commerce for intellectual property.

The Commissioner for Patents oversees three main bodies. They are the Deputy Commissioner for Patent Operations, the Deputy Commissioner for patent examination policy, and the Commissioner for Patent Resources and Planning. The Patent Operations of the office also divided into nine different technology centers that deal with various arts.

One can appeal the decisions of patent examiners to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, an administrative law body of the USPTO. Also, one can further appeal the decisions of the BPAI to the United States Court of Appeals for the federal circuit. The United States Supreme Court may ultimately decide on a patent case. Under the America Invents Act, there was a conversion of BPAI to the Patent Trial and Appeal Board or “PTAB”.

Similarly, one can appeal the decisions of the trademark examiner to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, with subsequent appeals directed to the federal circuit.

﻿Functions:

The role of the USPTO is to grant patents for the protection of inventions and to register trademarks. Hence, it serves the interests of inventors and businesses with respect to their inventions and corporate products and service identifications.

It also advises and assists the Secretary of Commerce, the bureaus and offices of the Department of Commerce in aspects of intellectual property. Also, the Office assists other agencies of the government in matters involving all domestic and global aspects of “intellectual property.”

Through the preservation and classification of patent information, the Office promotes the industrial and technological progress of the nation and strengthens the economy.

By protecting intellectual endeavors, it seeks to preserve the United States’ technological edge, which is key to the current and future competitiveness. Hence, the USPTO also disseminates patent and trademark information that promotes an understanding of intellectual property protection.

Also read: Patent Search Types: ‘The Major Eight’

Location:

The United States Patent and Trademark Office operates a headquarters in Alexandria, Virginia and four regional offices.

The regional offices give inventors, entrepreneurs, and small businesses the benefit of a USPTO presence in every U.S. time zone. So, staff in these offices work closely with intellectual property services, start-ups and job-growth accelerators in their regions. They collaborate with local science, technology, and mathematics organizations.

America Invents Act of 2011 grants office the ability to establish at least three regional offices. The first of the new offices, the Elijah J. McCoy office in Detroit had commencement in 2012. Also, the commencement of the Rocky Mountain Regional Office in Denver was in 2014. After that, the Silicon Valley office opened in San Jose in October 2015 and serves the West Coast region. Lastly, the spread out of Texas Regional Office was in Dallas in November 2015 and serves the region across the southwestern U.S.

Figure 1: Location of the USPTO Offices across the US

Benefits:

There are major benefits of filing patents and registering trademarks with the United States Patent and Trademark Office. The benefits are:

Benefits of Patent Filing with the USPTO:

The patent applicants increase the profit of their product to reap the benefits of a patent. A patent allows an inventor to sell his unique product at a higher price. If the demand for the product is high, the inventor gets the benefit of the patent. As no one else can sell a similar product, the profit generation of the product peaks. If someone else was able to introduce their own version of the patented product, prices would drop.

When a patent gets a grant, the disclosure of the invention in the public domain takes place. So, by disclosing the invention in public, it will demonstrate the inventor’s good command and his technical subject background. This will attract leading and high-end business partners.

The patent not only helps the inventor but also society as a whole. The patent system encourages inventors to innovate by granting a patent for their invention. So, the inventor gets a patent grant for a limited period of time in exchange for others to use the invention.

Related Article: Patent Filing Requirements in USPTO – in a Nutshell

Click Here to Download (Free Samples)

Benefits of Trademark Registration with the USPTO:

A trademark becomes a mark of identification for a specific brand, company, etc. so that one can easily identify it in a broad market. Hence, it becomes easy for the customers to easily distinguish the brands and get what they want.

It uplifts the image of the product in the market. This is one of the most significant trademark benefits. Moreover, if the trademark gets initial success, it becomes easy for the owner to generate funds from different sources. This challenges other brands to provide better quality to the consumer which is essential for the market growth.

Trademark registration provides the protection to the owner’s trademark to use the mark anywhere on their product. Moreover, the trademark owner gets legal rights to sue someone if anyone is found using his mark for their benefit. Protecting the mark becomes important as it saves the reputation as well as the trust in the brand Quality of the product.

Why Choose Us? – Patent Illustration Express

It is very important for one to protect his invention and avoid patent infringement. If you are looking for any assistance regarding patents or trademarks, Patent Illustration Express (PIE) will guide you with the whole process. PIE is a team of professional patent illustrators, who boast years of experience in creating illustrations. We provide our clients with a super-fast delivery of the illustration services. Our team creates illustrations that have 100% compliance with the USPTO regulations. PIE provides flexible output formats for our clients with a full satisfaction guarantee. We make sure to cover a descriptive invention of our clients through illustrations. For more information, Visit Patent Illustration Express.

* 1. 3 Basic Must-to-Have Possessions of A Patent Translator

A patent is a very complex technical document. The translation of patent into some other language is known as patent translation. So, it requires a high-skilled patent translator having a good amount of experience in patent translation. The patent recognizes the rights of the creators, designers, and inventors to exclusively benefit from their invention. The patent needs translation, especially in the current global business scenario. Patent translations have to be correct, unambiguous, and accurate to clearly define the scope of the product. So, what one includes in the final patent matters a lot which depends on the skill of patent translator.

Related Article: Significance of Patent Watching

The 3 must qualities of patent translators:

There are several important qualities of a good patent translator. The qualities such as translating a complicated invention with ease and presenting it thoroughly to the examiner are some of those qualities. But the three basic qualities which a patent translator must possess are:

Technical Expertise:

Technical expertise denotes the skill of a patent translator in the domain of the subject of the invention. This means that he must understand the technical terms of the concerned field and understand the concepts clearly. This ensures the applicant that the translation of the invention will be precise and accurate. The translator must also hold some experience of patent translation.

Patents are precise documents since they are the legal documents that state the claims or the scope of the inventor’s work. Therefore, translations or word-to-word exchange must be accurate and unambiguous. The slightest mistake in language or in technicalities can alter the effectiveness of the entire document. This gets even worse when the application abandons after a large investment due to mistakes in technical areas of the application.

Language Expertise:

One of the most important qualities that a translator must possess is an excellent understanding of the language of patent translation. The aim of the translator should be to make sure that the translation of the patent is error-free and precise. The translator should be good at grammar, jargon, and structure for every sentence of translation. This means that he must be well educated and must possess the degree of certification as well. Having actual experience in translating patents will serve as an add-on feature in the clarity of the claims.

The translator needs to make sure that the patent translation covers all possible claims of the invention in the desired language. So, one needs a good translator who is proficient in the spoken language of the patent filing country.

Related Article: Importance of Patent Proofreading Services

Legal Expertise:

Legal expertise denotes expertise for the legal requirements and the filing process for the target country. One can only fulfill this pre-requisite when any legal expert performs the work of translation. This is because he has complete knowledge about the laws of target countries where one needs a patent translation. This skill will make him eligible to complete the patent filing process, potentially editing it for compliance and quality.

The translator can even cover the flaws in technicalities or language once the application goes to the examiner. But if it goes against the governing laws, then the application will be abandoned by the court. Therefore, legal expertise must be significant enough to make patents consistent with industry standards, approved terminology, and related style guides.

Related Article: 5 Major Benefits of Patent Paralegal Service

Need Patent translation Service? – Patent Translations Express

For accurate patent translation, it is important for the translator to have expertise on the subject matter. If you are looking to seek assistance in patent translation, Patent Translations Express (PTE) would guide you with the best possible solutions. PTE offers the most economical patent translation services to the clients without compromising on the accuracy of the translation. With the team of professional experts, we have been translating the patent-related documents in various technical domains. Our team of patent translators has a deep understanding of patent literature. At PTE, we optimize the manual translation effort to achieve faster turnarounds for our clients. We cover more than 40+ languages across the world for patent translations. To avail our services, Visit Patent Translations Express.

* 1. **Why Trademark Search Service is So Important?**

To do a trademark search is to look out for other related trademarks and make sure you do not infringe upon others’ trademarks. Also, to create a trademark that uniquely defines your brand. This is not a superficial search; hence, taking up a trademark search service proves very useful.

You can conduct a preliminary trademark search on your end, but it won’t help you in the long run. A trademark search is beyond database searches and involves an investigation into unregistered trademarks as well. Also, you cannot rely on simple keyword search; trademark owner, TM image and TM number search help in in-depth searches.

Trademark Search Service vs. In-house Trademark Search

Although there is nothing wrong with conducting an in-house trademark search, rather it is a free-mode of the trademark search. But with this approach chance of skipping related trademarks is real high. This, in turn, leads to a huge loss of time and produces erroneous results.

A person may conduct an in-house trademark search from the databases of national patent office databases such as the USPTO. He/she might go with the database of WIPO for multi-country searches. While doing international searches it is important to consider phonetic, linguistic and national variations.

You can consider it as a preliminary approach of trademark search, but do consider taking trademark search service for effective results.

On the other hand, a trademark search service is not a superficial search; rather it provides a deeper look into the already existing trademarks in the market. It is a more sort of strategic search which provides a complete analysis of all the active trademarks. You cannot afford to overlook the process of trademark search for effective trademark filing with USPTO.

 Here is a list of the benefits that you reap by taking a trademark search service.

Comprehensive Results: The first and foremost benefit of taking a trademark search service is that the results are thorough. They are experts at tailoring the results as per your TM search needs.

Lesser Issues: with years of experience in the Intellectual Property industry they are well knowledgeable of the correct approach for trademark search. Also, the experts have international connections; therefore they do not face linguistic, phonetic or national barriers.

Updated Software: the trademark search specialist always keeps themselves updated with state-of-the-art tools for trademark search. These licensed software help in finding deep-seated trademarks. Therefore, there is no compromise on the quality of search results. Note: Although the software can eradicate the mistakes made due to human error, it surely can’t replace manual search.

Well known trademark search databases

Since searching through global databases marks the first step for a trademark search, it is important to follow authentic databases only. These databases provide an easy step-by-step approach for trademark searches. You can conduct a basic search by just adding keywords related to your trademark.

WIPO global brand database: the World Intellectual Property Organization offers the Global Brand Database which is a hub for 38,090,000 trademark records. This encompasses 55 national and international jurisdictions. WIPO database is the topmost choice for international trademark searches.

The Trademark Electronic Search System (TESS): is yet another important trademark database offered by USPTO. Just as the Global Brand database, TESS also provides an easy approach for TM search. It also provides you design code search feature if your trademark is essentially a design mark. The design code is a 6-digit numeric code for search purposes. These design codes are essentially applying for the design code search manual of the USPTO.

Related Article: Artificial Intelligence (AI) Tools for Trademark Search and learn its importance in TM search.

Our Approach

It is not only money that you invest in building your brand, but also, time and efforts on promotion and recognition of it. This certainly proves how important it is to produce a trademark that uniquely identifies your brand. But, before you invest your resources in finalizing a trademark for your brand, conduct a comprehensive trademark search.

By now you must have understood the importance of taking trademark search service and if you are in search of one, The Trademark Search Company is at your end. Our manual searches are accompanied by state-of-the-art tools and artificial intelligence technology. We make it a point to provide a detailed search report that encompasses the different boundaries of the world. You can also check our trademark search samples free of cost by making a little inquiry. We also provide trademark search, trademark monitoring and international search results at cost-effective prices.

* 1. **Patent Filing Deadlines – Know When to Take Action**

Since the first-to-file system is now in effect by the law from March 16, 2016. A person with an invention should file an application as soon as possible. The patent filing deadlines begin from this very stage when your application reaches the USPTO. The procedures are quite specific and strictly time-bound. Therefore, one needs to ensure that they keep a vigilant eye on their patent application and on the related procedures. Also, they do guarantee that he/she meets all the requirements within the specified deadlines, to avoid delay in getting the patent grant.

Here in this article, we are going to cover all the possible events that occur during the complete patent life-cycle. We will also discuss the associated time span it takes to move from one stage to another.

Some Pre-requisites before Patent Filing

Consider hiring a patent attorney, he/she may help you with many procedures which will further help you with all the patent filing deadlines and requirements. These include:

Patent Searching: this is also known as Prior Art search. This involves finding proof that whether your invention is actually novel or not. Performing a thorough prior art search gives you the liberty of taking your application to the patent office with confidence. This part will also save your patent filing cost if you find your invention not meeting one of the patentability criteria.

Drafting a Patent Application: if you don’t find any matching prior-art, you can now move with drafting a patent application. You need to prepare a draft that is devoid of errors. An application comprises an invention description, illustrations, claims, and related paperwork. This procedure can take months of time. But you can finish it in a few weeks with the assistance of an attorney or with reliable patent drafting services. When you draft your patent application with an attorney, do make sure signing aNon-Disclosure Agreement.

Factors of Variation in Prosecution Time

There are many factors that affect patent prosecution. These factors affect the patent filing deadlines and timeline. The factors consist of:

Invention’s complexity: this involves the length of the specifications, claims, and drawings for examination. The more the number and complex the details the more time it will take.

Examiner(s) at Patent Office: technical inventions are subject to the allotment to a group of examiners at the USPTO. Therefore, depending upon their queue and availability, it can take longer or shorter wait times.

Track One: through this mode of examination your patent application gets special priority and you will get the final result within 12 months period of time. This is applicable to your utility and plant patent applications. Moreover, the requirements are less as compared to a regular utility patent application. Also, there is no need to perform a pre-examination search with Track One prioritized examination.

Patent Filing Deadlines on the Patent Timeline

Patent prosecution is a very strict and time-oriented procedure. Therefore, if you are to file a patent application you need to keep certain patent filing deadlines in mind. Also, there are deadlines on USPTO as well in which they complete the examination and decide whether to grant or reject patent rights for the proposed invention.

Figure 1 – Patent Lifecycle

Here we will discuss the US National phase examination of the patent application, starting from the stage of Patent Filing.

Patent Filing: patent filing is the process of submitting an application in the patent office requesting a grant of a patent to your invention. This is the first step for procuring a patent grant. the patent filing deadlines start from this very stage.

Publication: of patent application in the patent office journal after 18 months of the date of filing. Patents are subject to publication for public awareness of what is seeking patent protection. Along with this people can also learn from the work of the inventor. It meant keeps the industry updated with new innovations while encouraging more inventions.

Request for examination: a request for examination of the patent application is filed within 48 months of the filing date or the priority date. If you don’t file within the prescribed time the application shall be deemed as withdrawn by PTO.

Pre-grant opposition: when a third-party raises doubt over the patentability of the invention after its publication.

Pre-grant opposition can take place within 6 months from the date of publication.

On receiving opposition controller of PTO office issues a notice to the patentee.

The patentee needs to submit his statement and evidence against the raised issues within 3 months from the date of notification by the controller.

The controller of patent office dispose-off the pre-grant opposition within a 1 month time period either by:

– Rejecting the opposition and granting the patent

– Accepting the opposition and rejecting the application

– By amending the application and granting the patent.

Issuance of First examination report: the examination report issued by the patent office is the First Examination Report (FER). It comprises a list of objections raised by the PTO examiner that are both technical (whether the invention is patentable) and format related. Generally, there is a maximum of 3 office actions.

Filing Response: these are the response to the office actions after making the required amendments in the patent application sought for patent grants.

– The time period for filing an office action response is 1, 2 or 3 months (maximum extension- 6 months).

– File a response within 2 months of final office action then there is no fee charged by USPTO for filing the response.

Request for Continued Examination (RCE) – an applicant files an RCE when the applicant receives the final office action and wants a continued examination of the amendments made to the claims of his invention. The deadline for filing RCE is within 6 months from the notification of final office action.

Patent Grant: patent grant is the right given to the inventor over his invention (product, design, and utility thereof) for a limited period of time. 20 years for utility and plant patents and 15 years for design patents. It takes around 3 years’ time to get a patent grant.

Post-grant opposition: a third party can raise post-grant opposition anytime from the date of grant of a patent to one year from the date of expiry from the date of publication. You can find the grounds of filing post-grant opposition in Section 25 (2) of Patents Act, 1970.

Either of the following will happen after the post-grant opposition-

Rejection of the opposition and grant of patent.

Acceptation of the opposition and rejection of the application.

Amendment of the application and granting of the patent.

This is a complete profile of patent filing deadlines and other procedures. Be very particular of these deadlines and meet all the patent office requirements for an effective and timely patent grant. Consider hiring a patent attorney or patent filing services to share the burden of remembering dates and particularly for not missing any deadline.

Meeting Patent Filing Deadlines with The Patent Filing Company

It becomes a cumbersome task to meet so many patent filing deadlines. You need to keep a vigilant eye on the deadlines, as missing them will lead to a lost chance of a patent grant. With the patent filing company, you will get timely updates of the upcoming deadlines for a smooth prosecution process. Our experts ensure timely giving office action responses and meeting other USPTO requirements within the given time span. We provide proper filing of provisional and non-provisional applications and generate patent search reports as per the patent office guidelines. For more information, visit The Patent Filing Company.

* 1. **Thomas Edison Drawing of 3 Life-Changing Inventions**

Patent drawings play an important role by giving a visual representation and a quick understanding of the invention. Here we will discuss Thomas Edison drawing and inventions of the 20th century. It aids the patent examiner in the smooth prosecution of the application description and specifications. Also, it largely helps people understand the invention at the time of publishing.

Patents under the name of Thomas Alva Edison:

One of the most renowned scientists of all time Thomas Alva Edison has a number of patents (both national and international) under his name. In the span of 84 years, he got a total of 2,332 patents under his name out of which 1,093 are U.S. Patents and the other 1,239 patents are non-U.S. He got these patent awards in 34 different countries. He received his first patent for the invention of Electric Vote Recorder, in June 1869. We all know that “Necessity is the mother of Invention” and Edison’s inventions fulfilled the major necessities of life. Thomas Edison drawing and inventions on modern life influencing inventions include- the light bulb, phonograph, the telegraph, the telephone and many more.

Related Article: Virtual IP Paralegal: Why Should You Hire One?

Thomas Edison Drawing: The Important ones

Phonograph: while Edison was working on the telegraph and its variants the idea of recording sound on tinfoil-coated cylinders came across his mind.

 In the year 1877, he made a machine with 2 needles, one for recording and another one for playback. As he spoke through the mouthpiece the recording needle would create indentations on the tinfoil-cylinder. He got patent for this on February 19, 1878.

This detailed Thomas Edison drawing of a phonograph gives a frontal and side view of the phonography.

Figure 1- Edison’s Phonograph

Light bulb: the year 1879 marks the anniversary of the incandescent bulb which majorly replaced the gas lights.

An incandescent light bulb comprises a thread-like object or filament which gives off light when heated by an electric current. In the beginning, they used a platinum filament; being expensive it was later replaced with carbon filament. Furthermore, this highly coiled carbon filament offers great resistance to the current producing radiation. He got patent for this on January 27, 1880.

Related Article: Patent Monitoring – A Not To Skip Procedure

He kept the carbon filament in a vacuumed glass shell in order to prevent oxidation and injury. Then passed the current with the help of Platina wires sealed inside the glass. This Thomas Edison Drawing gives an outline of an electric lamp.

Figure 2- Edison’s Electric Bulb

Webermeter: in our day-to-day lives we consume electricity for light, power and other purposes. It is very much desirable to keep track of electricity consumption.

In the year 1880, Edison came up with a device which automatically records the current used and gives instant result. He got patent for this on April 26, 1881.

This is Thomas Edison drawing of a Webermeter that gives a complete outline of the machinery of it.

Figure 3- Edison’s Webermeter

What do we bring?

A patent drawing gives a visual description of your invention. At the same time, it also gets your patent application flow faster through the process of prosecution. Our expert illustrators at the patent drawings company have perfected the art of patent drawings for your inventions. We take great pride in preparing complex patent drawings with great ease, in compliance with the USPTO norms. We provide a super-easy platform for ordering and receiving your patent drawings at cost-effective rates. To know more about our services, visit The Patent Drawings Company.

* 1. **Why is Writing Patent Claims Accurately Very Important?**

A patent claim is that part of the patent specification which defines the boundaries of patent protection. Writing patent claims mean writing the details and claims of the invention which one needs to furnish while filling the patent application. They form the base of the protection of the patents. Patent claims explain the limits of what a patent covers and they are an important part of the patent application. They form a protective boundary line around your patent that lets others know when they are infringing on your rights. It means that your words and phrasing in claims define the limits of this line.

Also Read: Patent Filing: Know How to Proceed

Essentials of writing patent claims accurately:

Accurately writing patent claims while filing the patent application to the USPTO is the key to receiving complete protection for the invention. So, it is important for one to draft the claims in the right manner with a proper format. One must include the scope, characteristics, and structure while drafting patent claims. The advantages of writing patent claims accurately are:

Technical specification of the invention:

Patent claims include all the technical specifications of the invention. So, mentioning all the technicalities of the invention in a broad manner is very essential. Also, importantly one needs to shed light on the other unknown technical aspects of the product while writing patent claims. The invention should be placed in its setting by specifying the technical field to which the invention relates. It is possible by mentioning the prior art portion of the independent claims in full by simply referring to it.

Problem-solving description of the invention:

It is one of the most important parts to cover while writing patent claims accurately. Patent claims include the solution to the problem that the invention solves. So, one cannot afford to make any mistake in the patent claim. An invention without purpose may face objection while obtaining a patent grant. The clear mentioning of the problem and its solution describes the advantages of the invention in the future. So, that makes it easy for the patent examiner to grant a patent. What one needs to do is to show how the invention presents new and a different angle.

Also read: Tips & Tricks for High-Quality Patent Draft

An in-depth description of the invention:

The in-depth description of the invention includes describing each part of the invention. For a process, describe each step you start with and what you need to do to make the change. The description starts off with the general background information and progresses to more detailed

information about one’s invention and its parts. One can guide the reader to a full description of his invention by increasing levels of detail. Writing a thorough description is essential as one cannot add any new information to the patent application once filed. If one wants to make any changes, he can only do so by inferring the original patent drawings and description.

Alternate use of the invention:

Writing patent claims accurately is essential as it also includes the alternate use of the invention in it. The biggest challenge for inventors is to think about all the possible ways in which the invention can be used. It is very important to cover all the aspects and variations of the invention which can prove to be helpful in the future. If there seems to be an alternative use of the invention, one must also add it in the application. Even if the intent of the invention is for a different purpose in the future, one must include it in the patent application.

Protect intellectual property:

As we know, the patent claims to protect the intellectual property rights of the inventor, so it is important to draft them accurately. Well written claims are the foundation of a good patent. They help you keep the exclusive rights to your invention and design. They also give a basis for prosecution if someone makes or sells your invention or design.

Also Read: What is the role of an Intellectual Property Paralegal?

Looking for Patent Claim – Patent Drafting Catalyst

If you are looking for a patent claim or seeking any assistance, Patent Drafting Catalyst (PDC) is the way to go. PDC is an exclusive group of the world’s leading patent drafting experts. Our team has more than 100 employees drafting quality patents. PDC is a team of professional experts who serve clients globally with our team helping innovators in drafting the patents. PDC has an in-depth understanding of drafting patents and has the ability to leverage the power of collaborative patent drafting. Our team of experts boasts years of experience in patent drafting and will provide you with the best possible solutions. Ethics is the first priority of PDC and our professionals will guide you in the right direction. We ensure that the legal rights of our clients are safe. To avail our services, Visit Patent Drafting Catalyst.

* 1. **PCT Timeline: An Overview**

When you are seeking to file a PCT application, you must have a clear view of the PCT Timeline. The Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) is an international patent law treaty that assists patent applicants to seek patent protection internationally. There are 152 contracting states under the PCT and they all are under the control of the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO). By filing one PCT application, one can simultaneously seek protection for an invention in a large number of countries. A majority of the world’s countries are parties to the PCT, including all of the major industrialized countries.

Fig.1: Demo graph of countries under PCT (WIPO)

Procedure for PCT Timeline:

There are a few steps that you need to follow to file a PCT application. PCT offers an alternative route to file a patent application in several countries simultaneously, so the applicants tend to go for it. It saves the cost of filing a patent application in every country. The procedure for filing a PCT application is:

Related Article: Patent Filing Process in India

Local filing of the application: The first step of the PCT Timeline process is to file the local application with the Indian Patent Office. It sets the priority date after which one can file a PCT application. It is essential for you to file a local patent application as you cannot file a PCT application without the local filing. The Indian patent office again deals with the application once the international phase ends.

Filing of the PCT application: The filing of a PCT application takes place after the local filing. You can file an international application with a national or a regional patent office after 12 months from the priority date. While filing a PCT application, you need to comply with the PCT formal requirements in one language and pay one set of fees. The nomination of all the contracting states is automatic on filing the PCT application.

International Search: After filing the PCT application, an international search by the “International Searching Authority” (ISA) starts after 16 months from the priority date. ISA finds the most relevant prior art documents regarding the claims of the subject matter. The search result in the “International Search Report” (ISR) establishes a written opinion regarding patentability. This search report shows whether an invention is patentable or not.

International Publication: International Publication of the PCT application is the next step of the PCT Timeline process. International Bureau at the WIPO publishes the PCT application. The disclosure of the content of the international application takes place after 18 months of the earliest filing. The publication of the PCT application can also take place early on request of the patent applicant.

Supplementary International Search (optional): Supplementary International Search is an optional process for the patent applicant. Although it is optional, applicants tend to go for this process. Supplementary International Search permits the applicant to request for one or more supplementary searches. This search is in addition to the main international search. “International Authority” carries out this search rather than the “ISA”, which carries out the main international search. Requesting supplementary international search reduces the risk of citing a new prior art while the national phase process.

International Preliminary Examination (optional): “International Preliminary Examination” (IPE) helps to seek an additional patentability analysis on the request of the patent applicant. This is also an optional process. The “International Preliminary Examination Authority” (IPEA) conducts this examination after 22 months from the priority date. The objective of this examination is to formulate the novelty of the claimed invention. This results in an “International Preliminary Examination Report” (IPER). One must demand to file “IPE” within the time limit. It subjects a preliminary examination fee for benefit of the “IPEA”.

PCT National Phase Entry: Finally, at 30 months from the priority date, the international phase ends. The PCT application enters the national phase. The national phase of the PCT application resembles the national filing in each of the contracting states. The decision to grant a patent in one’s country now depends on the patent office of the respective country. Although, the national examiner often follows the search report conducted in the international phase.

Related Article: Patent Filing in United Kingdom

Looking for PCT Filing? – Your Patent Team

PCT Timeline process is a quite time-consuming process. If you are looking to file a PCT application, Your Patent Team is the best possible way to do so. YPT has its presence in 90+ jurisdictions worldwide to help clients get the strongest IP protection. YPT utilizes its knowledge of both the international phase and the national phase to help its clients get the PCT application. Our team of experts boasts years of experience in filing the PCT application. YPT will help you save a lot of money during prosecution and after grant. Ethics is the first priority of YTP and our professionals will guide you in the right direction. We ensure that the legal rights of our clients are safe. For more services, visit Your Patent Team.

* 1. **Patent Illustration Requirements – The Major Do’s and Don’ts**

Patent illustration requirements are the set of rules set forth by patent offices of respective jurisdictions. Creating patent illustrations is not a cakewalk, as these requirements are very peculiar. Illustrations although not necessary, make your patent application more catchy and invention more understandable. But skipping on any of the requirements would take your invention far from the award of patent grant. Thus, be very prudent at the time of drafting patent illustrations as per the patent office rules.

Further, in the article, you will find the benefits of following patent illustration requirements. Along with this, you will find some of the chief patent illustration requirements set forth by the USPTO. There are also separate guidelines of PCT for patent illustrations at the time of filing international applications.

Why Patent Illustration Requirements are Important?

Rules and regulations are there in every official work so that things flow according to a standardized process. The same goes for Patent Illustrations. There are certain rules and requirements of patent offices to create patent illustrations. Following those rules prove fruitful for both the inventor and the authorities who examine the applications. Some major benefits include:

It gives an idea of what to and what not to include in the illustrations. In essence, it sets limits to what suffices a patent illustration.

Patent illustration requirements are different for different jurisdictions. It gives an indication of the jurisdiction for which you want to process the patent application.

It gives an indication to the patent attorney to make the invention step by step.

It provides a standardized and presentable look to the illustrations acceptable in every jurisdiction.

Do refer to the general rules for patent illustrations before filing the patent application for your invention.

Patent Illustration Requirements of USPTO

Here, you will find the USPTO rules and guidelines mentioned in the Manual of Patent Examining Procedure. You need to thoroughly abide by the guidelines so that your application gets accepted at the patent office. Moreover, this also will increase your chances of getting the patent grant.

Pertaining to the importance of following patent illustration requirements, let’s now learn the major rules of USPTO for Patent Illustrations.

Use of Ink: use black and white or Indian ink only for drawing and shading purposes. File a petition if you require producing colored drawings and photographs with a specified fee given in 37 C.F.R. 1.17(h). The dimensions of drawings and photographs vary a bit; therefore, consider either submitting photographs or drawings.

Identification indicators: mention the invention and inventor’s name, and application above each drawing.

Paper make and dimensions: consider using A-4 size white paper with dimensions of 11 inches by 8.5 inches. Moreover, the paper is non-shiny, flexible, free of folds and strong/durable.

Margins: the dimensions for margin are 1 inch on top, 3/8th on the right and 5/8 inch on the bottom.

Shading: perform line and stipple shading. Know when it is best to perform shading for patent illustrations.

Numbering of pages: number each and every in Arabic numeral and keep the pages in order. The minimum height of numbers is 0.12 inch (0.32 cm). For lettering of illustrations prefer the Latin style, and Greek, when customary.

Views of illustrations: add top, bottom, and side views showing the illustration from different perspectives.

Patent drawings Instruments: make legitimate use of drafting instruments and tools for clarity and accuracy of patent drawings.

Don’ts of Patent Illustration

There are limitations to what a patent illustration may comprise of. Here are some of the factors that you should avoid while preparing a patent illustration.

Do not overlap the drawings;

Avoid holes and creases in the paper;

Do not introduce erasures and cuttings in the illustrations;

Avoid using solid black shading. It is acceptable only in the cases when you want to show colored area and bar graphs;

Make legitimate use of sheets without wasting space.

These are some of the major patent illustration requirements of the USPTO mentioned in Manual of Patent Examining Procedure § 1.84

Click Here to Download (Free Samples)

Why Choose Patent Illustration Express?

If abiding by all the patent illustration requirements seems a daunting task, let the experts help you. We, at, Patent Illustration Express have a team of skilled professionals providing with the best of patent illustrations for your inventions. For us, customer satisfaction is of top-most priority. Thus, we offer quick turn-around-time and unlimited iterations. You can find our illustration samples by making a little inquiry.

* 1. **The top 6 most unusual drawings for Patents**

It seems that nowadays USPTO allows a fair bit of artistic freedom in the form of unusual drawings. The history of patenting is full of these unusual drawings from various exciting and bizarre patents. They give a clear indication of how creative a human being can be. There are instances when people come up with all sorts of ideas, which may include invention too. Naturally, these inventions involve some different patent illustrations which depict the invention. Even big tech companies have been getting away with some odd-looking artwork that has been rewarded with patents. This article will look at some of such unusual patents and their respective drawings.

Insight on some unusual drawings:

There have been some unusual but interesting drawings to get a patent grant in the past. They will surely compel you to think for a while. So if you come across a weird, yet innovative idea doesn’t brush it off. Entities in the past prove success in getting patents with the help of such unusual drawings.

Animal ear protector:

Figure 1

Patent No. US4233942A

This invention provides a device for protecting the ears of animals from becoming dirty while the animal is eating. The device provides a generally tubular shaped member for containing and protecting each ear of the animal. The ear protector and animal’s ears are held away from the head of the animal by two straps.

2. Paddle wheel rotorcraft:

Figure 2

Patent No. US5265827A

This invention relates to the vertical take-off and landing capabilities of the aircraft. Such aircraft derives aerodynamic lift from opposed rotatable paddle wheel assemblies of airfoil-shaped blades in place of wings and propellers. They have the first and second laterally extending paddle wheels rotatable on a central axis. They are generally perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the aircraft.

3. Pillow with retractable umbrella:

Figure 3

Patent No. US6711769B1

This invention consists of a pillow with a retractable umbrella, comprising an assembly with first and second ends. The first and second ends have a channel extending there between. The supporting assembly has a rotating means adjacent to the third end. The use of this invention is to protect the user from the sun. One can store this invention as it is easy to carry in an open position. One can lay his head on the pillow while covering the face from sunlight.

4. Animal Toy:

Figure 4

Patent No. US6360693B1

It is one of the most unusual inventions containing unusual drawings. Animals, in particular dogs, have a habit of chewing and they make inappropriate selections as to what they will chew. It is an object that an animal may carry in its mouth. The invention describes a stick like an animal toy. It is an apparatus for use as a toy by an animal to fetch, carry or chew. The formation of the toy can be of any material including rubber, plastic or wood including wood composites and is solid. It is either rigid or flexible. One can add flavoring scent to it if one wants to.

Related Article: What is The Role of an Intellectual Property Paralegal?

5. Light Bulb Changer:

Figure 5

Patent No. US6826983B1

A light bulb changer method contains components that allow for instantly detecting a burned-out light. It automatically removes the burned-out light and replaces it with a replacement bulb. The changer operates without human intervention and one can assemble it from a kit having replacement hardware. One can also use a changer as a retrofit for other light fixtures such as a table lamp.

6. Motorized Ice Cream Cone:

Figure 6

Patent No. US5971829A

Motorized ice cream cone is the invention for supporting, rotating and sculpting a portion of ice cream while one consumes it. It continuously moves the ice cream portion while one’s tongue is held in a relatively stationary position. It contains a rotating cup on a handheld housing which has an electric motor, driving mechanism, and energy source. All these forms into a device for spinning a portion of ice cream or other malleable food.

Related Article: Patent Monitoring – A Not To Skip Procedure

Need help with your drawings? – The Patent Drawings Company

If your invention seems different from others containing unusual drawings, don’t hesitate to proceed further. The Patent Drawings Company (TPDC) will guide you with the whole patent illustration process. Our team boasts of experienced professionals offering quick services at a low cost. TPDC offers accurate drawings of the invention no matter how complex the patent drawings you are looking for. We have established our name for the clients by providing our clients with the most flexible output formats. Our turnaround time is incredibly fast and we guarantee 100% satisfaction to our clients. To avail our services, Visit The Patent Drawings Company.

* 1. **Advantages of Patent Illustration Service**

The drawings in the patent application that describe the invention in a descriptive way are known as patent illustrations. It has become important nowadays to get patent illustration service to strengthen and enhance patent applications. They help the overloaded patent examiner to understand the invention faster. Simple and precise images also help to instruct judges in case of patent infringement, often clarifying the patent owners’ claims. More importantly, a good patent illustration helps in avoiding potential patent infringement by covering most of the aspects of the invention.

Patent Illustration Service: Key Points to Consider

Patent filers should not underestimate the importance of illustrations in their application. Patent office applies certain criteria to accept the illustration, but one needs to pay more attention than just meeting those requirements. A patent applicant’s safest option is to use the patent illustration service by hiring a specialized patent illustrator. Some of the services are:

1.Technical Specifications:

The patent office accepts the drawings from paper to digital media, but specifications on size, shape, and form often vary. There can also be significant differences in the drawing specifications when it comes to surface shading, broken lines, and line thickness. The illustration must meet the requirement of the USPTO and the country of patent filing. Some requirements such as clarity in drawings and A4 page sizes are universal. So, the patent illustration service helps the applicant to cover all the requirements given by the patent office.

2. Utility Patents:

There are strict requirements for drawing utility patents. So, it becomes important for one to get a patent illustration service. One can use tables, waveforms, mathematical formulae and symbols in the utility patents depending on the invention. Utility patents also include specific views to illustrate a problem that the invention solves. The patent applicant can use prior art to show a contrast or to differentiate his invention from the older one. The more complex is the invention to define, the more valuable the draftsperson service becomes to accurately define the invention.

3.Design Patents:

Unlike utility patent application, the application for design patent fully relies on the drawings. In design patents, the drawing disclosure is the most important element of the application. The reason is that it constitutes the entire visual disclosure of the claim. One notable rule that the USPTO requires is that the shading of all the surfaces of the drawings must be appropriate. This requirement makes the design patent illustrations appear more artistic than other drawings. So, hiring good illustration service is a must in case of design patent illustrations.

4. PCT drawings:

The PCT applications only require drawings where they are necessary for an understanding of the invention. This is mostly the case for an electrical or a mechanical invention. A good patent illustration service helps the applicant in providing the explanations of the functions and descriptions of the invention. As PCT is an international application, clarity in illustrations is essential to cover all the possible use of the invention broadly.

5. Creating formal drawings:

It’s essential for the patent illustrator to create formal drawings for the applicant to avoid delays while getting a patent grant. In the case of informal illustrations, the poor quality images cause the patent application to lose integrity, quality, and details. So, it takes longer for the illustrator to remove the existing low-quality material in the form of drawings. Then it takes even more time to execute the formal drawings thereby increasing the cost of the applicant.

One more disadvantage for the applicant submitting informal drawings lies in a proverb “Catch 22”. It means that there are two reasons due to which a patent application gets a reject. One is due to the inconsistency of informal drawings in the application. Secondly, because of the addition of a new matter in the patent application.

So, creating a formal drawing saves time, energy and cost of the patent applications which increases the chance of patent grant.A

6. Computer vs. manual figures:

It is not the quality of the equipment but the skill of the draftsperson which is essential. By choosing a patent illustration service, one can either go for software tools or a fully handmade process. It completely depends on the invention of the patent applicant to choose any of the following as per the requirements. A good illustrator knows when to make drawings manually to show the view of the invention accurately. On the contrary, he also knows when to use software tools like CAD to organize the information of the invention effectively.

Related Article: Unusual Patents You Never Have Thought Of

Looking for Patent Illustration Service – Professional Patent Illustrators

If you want to get a world-class patent illustration service, Professional Patent Illustrators (PPI) would ease your task in doing so. We are a team of professionals who are experts in providing you with world-class patent illustrations. Over the years, by offering quick and accurate services to several corporations, we have established our name for the clients. No matter how complex is the patent drawing you are looking for, our experts are well equipped in handling those. We provide our clients with the most flexible output formats at a minimal cost. PPI also uses the latest software along with the manual expertise for the illustration with 100% compliance to patent office rules. To avail our services, Visit Professional Patent Illustrators.

* 1. **Patent Illustrations rules for Best Quality Patent Drawing**

A drawing that easily conveys the required information about an invention visually is called a quality patent drawing. However, you must follow the patent illustrations rules to get a good patent drawing.

Patent illustrations rules are the requirements that are set by the USPTO for drawings, photographs, diagrams, and flowsheets that you must submit during the patent application process. An Inventor must follow the set rules properly for an invention to qualify for a patent without any question. Moreover, an impressive patent drawing helps in capturing a filing date and for an impressive patent drawing, you need a qualified patent illustrator.

Related Article: Unusual Patents You Never Have Thought Of

Patent illustrations Rules: Points to consider

You must follow some set of rules or guidelines provided by the patent offices in order to prepare a good patent drawing. Also, this helps you to save time, money and extra efforts. Some of the patent illustrations rules that you must consider are as follows:

Black and White drawings:

The patent office generally demands black and white drawings. You must use India ink, or equivalent to secure black lines for drawings.

Color drawings:

You must use the color drawings on rare occasions. They must have ample quality so that one can print every detail of the color drawing in black and white format. However, color drawings are prohibited in international applications according to PCT 11.13.

The Patent Office may accept color drawings only after the grant of a petition that explains the significance of the color drawings. The inventor must file the petition.

The petition includes:

Petition Filing fee.

A black and white photocopy of the color drawing with similar details and 3 sets of color drawings.

You must amend the specification in order to insert the following paragraph at first in the drawing description: The patent or application file contains at least one drawing executed in color. Copies of this patent or patent application publication with color drawing(s) will be provided by the Office upon request and payment of the necessary fee.

Black and White Photographs:

The Patent Office accepts the photographs if they are the only possible medium for illustrating the invention. For example, cell structure, chemical structures, beauty products, etc.

Also, they must have adequate quality so that one can print every detail of the photograph in black and white format.

Colored Photographs:

A Color photograph is accepted only if you satisfy the conditions for the acceptance of black and white photographs and color drawings.

Drawing identifications:

A Drawing Identification must include:

Title of the invention.

Name of the Inventor.

Application number/Docket number.

You must place this information on the front page and align it to the center with the top margin.

Paper type:

You must choose a drawing paper that is flexible, durable, white, non-shiny and smooth. Refrain using sheets with folds and creases. Also, you must only use a single side of the sheet. Try to avoid erasure marks, overwriting and alterations.

Size of the Sheet:

Every drawing sheet must own a similar size. You must stick to the following dimensions:

21.0 \* 29.7 cm

21.6 \* 27.9 cm

Margins:

Every sheet must follow the following margin scale:

The top margin of 2.5 cm.

Left side margin of 2.5 cm.

Right side margin of 1.5 cm.

The bottom margin of 1.0 cm

Types of Views

A drawing must contain every possible view of the invention i.e. top view, Bottom view, Side view, Front view, Back view, etc. Also, you must arrange all the views together on the sheet. Also, avoid wasting sheets, keep the position, maintain the proper gap between the views.

NOTE: Do not use similar sheets for views and claims.

Click Here to Download (Free Samples)

Some other general types of views are:

Exploded Views:

It shows the working, order or relationship of an assembly of different parts. You must place an exploded view within the brackets.

Related Article: Significance of Patent Proofreading

Partial Views:

You may break the view of a large device or machine into partial views. You must include a view of the comparatively small scale that shows the positioning of all the partial views.

Sectional Views:

A sectional view is used to show a hidden area or part of an object by cutting/removing some of the parts of that object. The cutting line is termed as cutting plane.

Scale:

You must create a drawing with a scale that shows the mechanism of the invention without crowding. Also, you cannot use indications like actual size or scale 1/2 on the drawings.

Shading Requirements:

Shading indicates the surface conditions or shape of any object. Spaced lines are preferred for shading. They must be thin, few in number and must contrast with the rest of the drawing.

Moreover, you must assume the Light coming from the upper left corner at an angle of 45° for shading. Pitch black shading is prohibited. However, you may represent bar graphs with them.

Symbols/Graphics:

You may use Graphical drawing symbols for conventional elements. You must use symbols to illustrate devices that own a conventional meaning around the world and acceptance in the art.

References:

You must keep the reference characters such as sheet or view numbers legible and avoid using brackets or inverted commas.

Orient them in the direction of the view.

Use the English alphabets for letters. However, you may depict wavelengths, angles, and formulas with other kinds of alphabets.

You must keep the size of Numbers and letters to 0.32 cm in height. Place them at a clean surface and avoid placing them over figures and shades.

Lead Lines:

Lead lines connect the reference characters and referred details. You must keep them as short as possible. Lead lines may be straight or curved. Moreover, they must not overlap with each other.

Arrows:

You may use the arrow at the end of the line to indicate the following:

At the tip of the lead line to indicate the entire section in the direction of the arrow.

Indicating the direction of movement.

Copyright/Mask Work Notice:

Place a copyright/mask work just below the relevant figure and keep the size of the letters from 32 to 64 cm. Also, limit the contents of the notice as per the law.

Moreover, you must stick to the authorized language to gain a permit for the copyright/mask work notice.

 Some important tips:

Number different views and sheets of the drawing with Arabic numerals.

Place authorized security markings on the top of the page, centered at the top margin.

Submit durable and permanent correction to the Office.

Avoid holes in the drawing sheets.

Why choose the Patent Illustration Express?

Our team at the Patent illustration express comprises of experts and professionals of the field. As soon as you place the orders, they start working with all their efforts and the latest software. Our team remains updated with the current rules about the patent illustration and provides you 100% satisfaction. We serve you the most pertinent outcome and that too in a very reasonable price. Also, we work within a quick turnaround time with long-lasting results. Moreover, the outputs you receive are in flexible formats. To get to know more about our services, please visit the Patent Illustration Express.

* 1. **Patent Status: How to Know**

Patent status determines that whether your patent application is in pending status or the application has got the patent grant. Checking the status of your patent application is easy through the United States Patent Office and Trademark Office (USTPO) system. Also, patents for inventions under review by the USPTO carry a patent-pending status until the USPTO grants a patent. The status of your patent application is available through the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. In addition, PAIR gives access to the status of your patent application as well as the status of issued patents.

Patent Status: Key Points

After you submit a patent application to the USPTO, your invention carries a patent-pending status. Patent-pending status begins at the date you file your patent application. Also, patent-pending ends when the USPTO grants the patent or you abandon your application.

You can find the status of your patent application through PAIR by accessing PAIR through the USPTO website. So, to find the status of a patent on PAIR, enter the patent information under “Select New Case.” Also, you can find relevant information from PAIR that relates to your application.

Bibliographic Data

You can find basic information such as application number, filing date, inventor, patent status, invention title, and patent issue date and number.

Image File Wrapper

The documents that the patent applicant or the patent office files can be seen here. Also, one can download most documents here but you cannot download some documents known as non-patent literature. Documents that predate 2003 aren’t available on PAIR.

Continuity

Continuity shows information about patents and applications that relate to your invention.

Fees

You can find the information on fees due in this section. Patent fees are due 3 1/2 years, 7 1/2 years and 11 1/2 years after one issues a patent. Furthermore, payments must be made within six months before or after the due date. Payments made after the due date are subject to extra fees.

Address and Attorney

This shows the mailing address for the patent holder and information on the patent lawyer.

Display References

Prior art references including patents, applications, and publications.

Importance of Patent Status:

As the United States is a first-to-file country, itgives you priority in receiving a patent for your invention. In other words, the first person to file a patent application for an invention receives the patent. If you abandon an application, you lose first-to-file rights.

Related Article: Things to Do Before Patenting Something

Patent status lets you market your invention with less risk of theft. Hence, patent-pending status doesn’t give legal protection however; it does deter theft of ideas.

Others are less likely to copy a patent-pending invention because copying could lead to a lawsuit if you receive your patent.

Patent status deters similar applications because the first applicant has first-to-file rights.

You can legally copy, produce, and sell a patent-pending invention. However, you can sue copiers for royalties upon patent approval. Royalties are payments you receive when others use your invention which has a patent grant. Hence, provisional rights are your rights to sue for royalties dating to the time before a patent’s issue date.

If someone copies your invention while it’s patent status is pending, you can:

Ask the USPTO to speed up your application review.

Ask the copier to stop making or selling the invention.

Let the copier continue making or selling the invention. A copier may create a demand for your invention, which can allow you to more easily market your invention.

If your invention’s patent status is pending, you should mark the status of your product, it’s packaging and its marketing materials. Patent-pending marks can take several forms:

“Patent pending” or “U.S. patent pending”.

“Patents pending,” if you have multiple applications for an invention.

“Patent applied for” or “U.S. patent applied for”.

“U.S. and foreign patents applied for” or “patent applied for in the U.S. and abroad” if you’re applying in multiple countries.

All of these terms mean that your patent application is in pending status and has not got the grant yet.

Related Article: Patent Monitoring: A Primary Guide

Why Choose Us? – The Patent Filing Company

The Patent Filing Company (TPFC) is an exclusive group of the world’s leading technologies with a deep understanding of global patent laws. Our team of professional experts will help you with the patent filing procedure. TPFC covers 300+ experts and serves over 45 countries. Our professionals utilize their expertise to advise our clients to help them get world-class advice and IP Protection. You get the broadest and strongest service of the TPFC at an optimal cost. Our team would ease your task of filing the patent application effectively. To avail our services, Visit The Patent Filing Company.

* 1. **How To Conduct Patent Search: A Quick Guide**

It is essential for one to conduct patent search before the patent filing process. It is so because patent search plays a huge role in avoiding patent infringement which reduces the cost of the applicant. A patent search is a subset of the prior art search where one mentions similar ideas in academic and technical literature. If one has got an amazing idea, he first needs to search the patentability status of that idea. Then only he can move further and get a patent if no one has got legal rights of that idea.

Related Article: Patent Watch: Why Do I Need It?

Conduct Patent Search: Things to Know Before

As patent search involves the exploration of the issued patents, one considers it as an important prior art reference while applying for a patent. Some of the methods to conduct patent search are:

Online databases:

The USPTO has made online searching of its databases available to the public at no charge. A few other free online search systems are CASSIS (CD ROM based search engine) and the Delphion Research Intellectual Property Network. The Source Translation and Optimization (STO) Internet Patent Search System is also an online system where one can conduct patent search.

Conduct a USPTO Office Search:

Your next stop is going to be the USPTO. Now you are ready to dive right into the USPTO search engine. Inventors see the USPTO search engine to see the filing status of the invention that is similar to theirs. One can go for full-text patent search or a PDF image patent search. Also, one can go for a quick search or an advanced search. You can search for the status of the patent by simply writing the patent number and clicking on the submit button. It will result in getting the whole description of the patent there.

Google Patent Search:

If one wants to conduct patent search, he can also take the help of the Google patent search. It offers you fields like patent office, filing status, patent type, and filing date. It is a decent starting place for a broad patent search but has its limitations when compared with other search engines.

Related Article: Patent Filing Process in 3 easy steps.

Looking for a Patent Search? – The Patent Search Firm

Nowadays patent search has become an important process before filing the patent. If you are looking to seek any assistance regarding patent search, The Patent Search Firm (TPSF) will guide you with the process. Our team of professionals is experts in conducting patent search globally. The Patent Search Firm (TPSF) helps you to take business decisions quickly and effectively. We, a team of professional experts provide world-class services to our clients by minimizing office actions at optimal cost. We make sure that our clients are always two steps ahead of their competitors. The legal protection of the clients is our utmost priority. To avail our services, Visit The Patent Search Firm.

* 1. **Patent Translation Techniques : Introduction**

Patent translation comprises of different patent translation techniques. These techniques help in translating the content within the patent application from one language to another. You also need to keep in mind that such technical translations are not simple. If a word for word translation fails to convey the same message as that in the original patent document then it isn’t enough.

You must understand that a patent translation is very delicate and requires high-level translation skills. The patent translation techniques require mastery of the source and target languages. You also need a knowledgeable person that understands the subjects properly.

This will certainly have an impact when you write a patent. So it is important to get the accuracy of the patent translation right.

Related Article: How Important is Computer-Assisted Translation?

What are the Different Patent Translation Techniques?

Now, you can understand what patent translation is and how difficult it is. Let’s have a look at the different patent translation techniques.

Target Clarity and Consistency

The major focus while translating an application is to make the objectives and the description as clear as possible. You must maintain consistency with the original application for perfect results. The translation shouldn’t change the meaning of the patent document. Using the appropriate jargon, language terminology, and maintaining unambiguity within the provided information is a must.

Therefore, the translator must-have skills and experience with the background knowledge about the subject.

Related Article: Qualities of an Efficient Patent Translator

Set Language Preferences

The structural and lexical differences for languages and the culture specification vary, in terms of territorial areas. This creates a clear distinction in terms of vocabulary, especially in the use of idioms and collocations. Translators must give clarity in writing style as this could bring consistency with the previous language data.

Therefore, it’s important to maintain consistency within data. With this, you can state the author-reader conventions easily. Also, the reader or the client should be able to interpret the right meaning from the application, even after translation.

To enhance the readability of the content, translators must describe the statements using extra phrases, or statements. Or, they even can play nicely with the structure of data without changing its meaning.

Related Article: 3 Basic Must-to-Have Possessions of a Patent Translator

Focus on Standard Terminology

Amongst many patent translation techniques, this is very important. The translator should be able to understand the meaning of formulas, flowcharts (if used), diagrams or sketches, etc. Thus, he/she should be able to interpret the meaning associated with them. One wrong interpretation or a single wrong assumption can alter the meaning of claims made.

Therefore, a translator must bear utter patience to understand each and every aspect carefully apart from some basic unavoidable possessions.

Be Aware

The translator should keep himself/herself up-to-date with the relevant technology and must be aware of the recent inventions properly. For this, reading and watching can be thought of as the best option. Reading the latest books, academic journals, good quality blogs, watching related documentaries, news, etc., is helpful.

Another good exercise is summarising existing articles, maintaining a diary of related keywords, etc. Then, one can apply the translation standards on it, which should enhance the quality of the translation.

A habit of proofreading

Proofreading the patent application has a lot of advantages. It will help you in catching errors before submission which may need corrections. And, it also helps the translator become more confident about his/her work. It is always better to clear out queries than leaving it in the air.

Open to learning from mistakes

This habit of learning from mistakes comes when the translator proofreads the work. A translator must not only correct the mistakes made but also must learn from his/her mistake. This helps to avoid the same in any future work. That would, in turn, save his/her time and efforts while deploying other patent translation techniques.

For example, variations between numbers in a table, or using non-obvious symbols to refer to tables are some errors. In such cases, the translator should correct such mistakes in brackets or footnotes.

Produce Task-Specific Quality Work

The translator must bear a quality while working and using terminology as per the concerned application. This means that the degree of formality or use of complex language must depend upon the type of target document. This is one of the most important patent translation techniques, if not the most important.

For example, you must state some documents such as forms, instructions in precise and relevant field-oriented language. You must decide the type of terminology by analyzing the target audience of the work.

Need Help with Patent Translations? – Patent Translations Express

It is absolutely necessary for you to have clear translations when working with patents. Be it translating existing patents or other relevant documents or translating your application. It is pivotal to translate every word without the loss of meaning at any point. Hence, hiring a professional is advisable.

We at the Patent Translations Express, have an exclusive network of native patent translators who are subject matter experts (SME’s) apart from having native language expertise. To avail our Patent Translation Services, visit us.

* 1. **Why is Online Patent Watch Essential?**

A patent watch is a process that keeps a continuous track of the updates of the patent application. The online patent watch has become a global need for brand owners since new technologies are emerging out for market recognition. Using the web can save considerable time and money in launching a new enterprise by providing information not previously or readily available. This is not all; it also tracks your patent to avoid patent infringement.

Online patent watch focuses on patent monitoring of the new patent applications electronically to prevent any illegal use of your invention. These services regularly update their clients and notify them whenever there is a possibility of infringement. The monitoring also keeps a track of each activity of the patent application such as publication detail, legal status details, etc. The importance of watching patent online is as follows:

Related Article: Need to implement Patent Watching service

Essentials of Online Patent Watch:

Keeping an eye on a patent that can be yours or someone else’s is called patent monitoring/watching. It is essential to keep a watch on the competitors’ products in this quickly changing world. Here are some of the reasons that show the importance of online patent watch.

The continuous online patent watch helps to get an idea of upcoming technologies. Also, this aids the R&D department of the firm in terms of new ideas.

It becomes easy to track and file against the patent or patent applications that may infringe the claims in your patent.

We can identify abandoned and expired patents and use them in the future.

If the claims in your patent are somehow infringing the rights of other patent applications, these services notify you. This allows you to make necessary changes before the third party files against you.

They update you with your field of competition. Thus, you can plan accordingly and prepare your strategies for competing.

One of the most important advantages of an online patent watch is that it helps in identifying and evaluating commercial opportunities. This, in turn, helps the firm to anticipate future revenue events.

It also helps in tracking your application on the national or international stage.

For tracking your international application through an online patent watch you will have to use Madrid Monitor System.

Madrid Monitor provides the status in real-time of an international application that WIPO processes. It also monitors the status of your international registration in the national/regional offices respectively. This allows you to see what is happening to your application at any time.

Types of online patent watch:

According to the requirement of the client, he can customize the criteria for monitoring the patents or patent applications. The basic types of watch services for patent are:

Technical Patent Watch

Technical Patent watch covers the search for recently published patents that relate to a specific technical field.

Competitor Patent Watch

As the name suggests, one uses the competitor patent watch to get updates regarding publishing of the patent application of his competitor.

Related Article: Patent Paralegal: Duties to Perform

Patent Legal status Watch

This watch service provides the status of the patent application during prosecution and patent after grant. Moreover, it helps to address the client for any changes or alterations that one requires in the patent.

Design Watch

The design watch service helps to monitor the publication of the newly Design patents. It also tracks down the patent applications which get abandon due to one or other reasons.

Infringement Watch

The infringement watch service monitors fresh Evidence of Use (EOU) in different formats i.e. Goods, services, processes, and others.

Looking for online patent watch – The Patent Watch Company

It is essential for one to make sure that no one else is using his invention, thus affecting his business. So, it becomes very important to go for patent watch services. If you are looking to seek any assistance regarding these services, The Patent Watch Company (TPWC) is your one-stop destination. We possess extremely skilled professionals who boast years of experience in this domain. TPWC covers numerous technology areas checking 100+ tasks every week. We have our reach globally as we provide services in 100+ countries. Our team also monitors general activities like regulatory approvals, investments, litigations, etc. The client’s legal safety is our first priority and we aim to provide 100% satisfaction to them. To avail our services, Visit The Patent Watch Company.

* 1. **Why should you hire a patent proofreading expert?**

Proofreading is an important step in identifying errors in the patent document that can affect its enforceability. Patent Proofreading expert ensures to draft a patent professionally reducing all possible errors in the application which helps in getting patent grants. We all are aware of the important role of a patent specification for patent grants. So, one must draft the specification with most caution and care. Hence, it becomes important to hire a patent proofreading expert to minimize critical errors in the patent application. As a result, your patent grant process will become smooth and easy by hiring a professional expert. We will discuss some of the advantages of hiring a patent proofreading expert.

Importance of Patent Proofreading Expert: Key Benefits

Proofreading helps in correcting the unwanted errors that you may have made during the drafting process. You may understand the patent proofreading expert importance with the following points:

Helps in constructing claims:

Patent proofreading expert helps in constructing claims for their clients. Claims define the boundaries of the scope of the protection that the government provides to the inventor. The expert helps in analyzing the claims on the basis of the meaning they convey and data ambiguity. They also ensure the proper use of words in the claim and whether something is missing from the claim or not.

Maintains grammatical accuracy:

Using grammar in a number of ways can make a huge difference in sentence formation. The use of grammar laws must be in such a way that the sentence depicts precise and unambiguous meaning. A patent proofreading expert helps in reviewing grammatical errors and removing them to make sentences accurate with a specific meaning. They help their clients in making sentences more clear and convenient for the audience to understand.

Related Article: Patent Paralegal: Duties to Perform

Maintains a standard of the application:

It is essential to check whether the application follows patent standards according to the territorial area or not. So, one must hire a professional expert for checking all the standards according to legal laws. The patent proofreading expert also ensures that the use of page quality is in accordance with the standards of the USPTO.

Technical Formalities:

There are a lot of technical formalities that one needs to perform in order to draft a patent application. Thus, proofreading is important for the patent draft to maintain technical adherence. It is important to be elaborate and at the same time to not get away from the technical aspect of the invention. Proofreading expert helps in checking the proper terminology and technical terms when one compiles the whole description of the document at once. Since one cannot exclude specifications from the application, the professional expert helps them in writing them diligently.

Related Article: Significance of Patent Watching

Enables Invention Statement:

The invention statement should be written in a proper, precise and descriptive manner. One has to make sure that the invention statement is crisp and easy to understand. It is important that even a person who does not hold any previous knowledge in context can also analyze it. In proofreading, the proofreading expert checks and reads all the statements once again. This makes sure that the description is easier to depict for even a wide range of audiences.

Looking for Patent Proofreading Services – The Patent Proofreading Company

Patent Proofreading Service is a very important process while getting a patent grant. It reduces the number of errors in the patent application which in turn helps you to secure patent quickly. If you are looking for a world-class patent proofreading service, you should definitely go with The Patent Proofreading Company (TPPC). TPPC provides you with the proofreading services of high quality in minimal time. Our professional proof-readers identify errors and omissions before they become an issue. We constantly follow our multi-step quality check and quality assurance process. Our deep industry experience provides the most cost-effective patent proofreading solutions with a comprehensive report. We ensure 100% data security and confidentiality while maintaining high-quality standards throughout the process. For more information, Visit The Patent Proofreading Company.

* 1. **Why is Patent Docket Important?**

A patent docket is a method or system for managing the patent application process. Docketing is an important tool for patent law firms, as it can be rather difficult to keep track of all patent applications for customers. In fact, most law firms hire docketing specialists to manage the patent docket system. Since each patent application can take up to several years, more and more patents are entered into the docketing system to better manage each one.

Related Article: Most Important Points About Patent Docketing Systems

Patent Docket Systems: Guidelines to Follow

You understand the importance of patent docket systems. Let’s see the guidelines that you need to keep in mind while maintaining such a system.

The creation and maintenance of a separate portfolio for every application is crucial.

The data entries should be very specific and precise. This information should include:

Client’s name

Client’s contact information

Invention

Type of industry it serves

Digital copies of the application, forms, drawings, etc.

Status of application

Deadlines and due dates

Ensuring all the legal fees and their payment status for different applications has proper records in the system.

The system should provide standardization to maintain a consistent workflow and allow updating each and every patent application when applicable.

The flexibility of the docketing system itself is very crucial. Patent law firms should look for a docketing system that allows free text. The purpose is to allow entry of notes into each portfolio explaining where the application is still in the process.

Uses:

We will discuss some significant uses of Patent Docket systems. Law firms that deal with patent law may handle hundreds of patent cases at a time. Each patent application can take years to make its way through the USPTO system to get a patent grant. As the patent application makes its way through the approval process, there are many filing deadlines and statements to keep track of. Patent docketing ensures that all the documents are kept in the correct file in order to retrieve them in the future.

Docketing Process:

The patent application process generates a great deal of paperwork. As this paperwork comes into a law office, it is the docketers’ job to correctly label each document with the file number. It is the docketers job to place it into the correct part of the electronic or paper patent file. The patent docket also includes entering each document into a database so attorneys can easily call up a list of all the documents. So, one can easily check any application file and any dates associated with each document. For example, a patent attorney may need to see if any deadlines are coming up for filing paperwork with the USPTO. One can use the docketing database can be used to alert her of filing or other deadlines. Docketers must also scan copies of documents; create templates and forward documents to other law firms.

Related Article: Patent Watch Services: A Vigilant Eye on Patents

Insurance Requirements:

This is one of the most important points of the patent docket system. All patent law insurance carriers require patent law firms to maintain a docket that stores the patent application documents. One also needs to get alerts of any upcoming deadlines in the application process. This is to prevent malpractice lawsuits when a law firm misses a filing date and causes a patent rejection by the USPTO. Many insurance carriers require, not one, but two dockets, in which two different people in the firm calculate the deadline.

Related Article: Patent Proofreading Benefits: The Best Five

Docketing Software:

There is a great deal of specialized patent docketing software available to manage the patent docket process. Programs can track actions and calculate due dates, as well as keep track of documents, schedules, audit logs, and alerts. Most software programs also allow the docketer to add custom dates and documents that associate with a particular patent. There are many programs that can keep track of dates for patent applications in multiple countries.

Why Choose Us? – Perfect Patent Docketing

It has become essential nowadays to hire patent docket services to manage the documents of a huge number of patent applications. If you are looking to seek any assistance regarding the docketing process, Perfect Patent Docketing (PPD) is your one-stop destination. PPD helps clients to manage and track patent portfolio using commercial docketing systems as well as platform-independent delivery models. We maintain all the technical and legal documents that associate with all the relevant emails, process, and docket all the incoming emails. We serve our clients from 45+ countries, providing them with the best in class services with our experienced team of professionals. PPD guides you throughout the life-cycle of the patent process. To avail of our services, Visit Perfect Patent Docketing.

* 1. **How to Write a Patent Application Accurately?**

People come up with amazing inventions – highly purposeful, commercial with a dream of getting it patented. But, what becomes important at this stage is to write a patent application. The patent filing requirements of USPTO and other patent offices are quite particular. Hence, it is prudent to write a patent that is precise, complete and supported. These 3 factors are the determinant of patent quality. Therefore, acquiring the skill of writing a patent application becomes mandatory for new attorneys and applicant before submitting a patent application.

Since patent grant takes quite a long time, it is better to make quick and precise moves at your end. Therefore, any serious inventor should acquire this skill with practice or take help of an experienced patent application drafting professionals. Any which ways, the goal is to write a patent application that appropriately describes the invention (35 U.S.C. 112(a)).

Write a Patent Application– from Tip to Toe

When it comes to writing a patent application, you cannot miss a thing. It might seem quite a straightforward task, but it is not so. A simple description of the invention cannot pass the prosecution test at the patent office. With a patent application come prescribed formats and requirements of the patent office of the required jurisdiction. Indeed, it is impossible to count those requirements on fingers and missing even a single of them would become an obstacle.

Here follow the most important parts of the patent application and the discussion about what each section needs to include.

Title of the Invention:

The title is present at the top of the specifications. It gives a clear glimpse of the invention to the reader. Hence, the title should:

Sufficiently indicate the subject-matter of the invention. Moreover, it declares the specific features of the invention.

Keep the title crisp and precise and not more than a word length of 15 words.

Do not include fancy words to the title that creates ambiguity.

Do not include:

Words such a “new”, “improved”, or “improvement” in the title. These words will ultimately be omitted by the USPTO.

Inventor’s name.

The word “Patent”.

Abbreviations such as “etc.”

Fancy words such as “Best article”.

Articles “a”, “an” or “the” for starting the title.

The preamble of the Description:

There is a certain language of starting preamble of the patent application. In the case of provisional application, it starts with – “The following specification describes the invention.”

For non-provisional application, it is – “The following specification particularly describes the invention and the manner in which it is to be performed.”

Field of Invention:

This section purports to describe the scope of the invention and gives a brief description of the technology area to which it belongs.

The preferable beginning of the field of the invention is – “the invention relates to..”

Do not go into the details of the invention rather just give a general idea of the technology or area to which the invention belongs.

Also, do not use any language that might limit the scope of patent protection. Consider this point specifically while writing claims.

Background of the Invention (state-of-the-art):

When you are to write a patent application, the background of the invention plays a primary role. The purpose is to provide information about the existing problems that the current invention purports to solve. Hence, in this section include the information related to the closest prior art- identifying journals, publications, and experiments and pending patent applications.

Do not give specific, in-depth information related to the prior art, rather give a generic view of the same. Avoid the following for better results:

First of all, avoid using the term “prior art” while describing the state-of-the-art or anywhere in the patent specification.

Do not include the word “invention” in the title of prior art or state-of-the-art. For example title – “State of the art of the invention” is not permissible.

Prior art only highlights the problem that the invention solves. Therefore, do not give a complete solution to the identified problem in this section. Rather save it for writing it in the “objective of the invention”.

Prior art, in any manner, should not delimit the scope of the invention.

Invention Objective:

This section brings about the necessity of the invention. In other words, it talks about the aim(s) of the invention.

Here, highlight the solutions that the current invention brings about to solve the problems of the related prior art.

This section is about highlighting the advantages of the invention, giving a clear emphasis on the main objective by repeating it from time to time.

Also, the objective should broaden the scope of the invention, hence, use statements such as “Objects of the invention are not limited to the specific features or acts described in the description and drawings”.

Do not introduce words that might create ambiguity, rather maintain consistency with precise words and phrases throughout the specifications.

Summary: summary or statement of the invention describes the actual implementation of the invention. The goal here is to provide an accurate, readable and informative concise description of the invention. Hence, consider writing it a non-legal language which is understandable to everyone.

Brief description of drawings:

This section is all about giving an overview of the drawings with the help of single sentences or paragraphs. Brief description for drawings can come in 2 formats:

Example 1: “Figure 1 is the top view of a table”

Example 2: “Figure 1 is a perspective view of a table..”

Proper orientation is important as it clearly defines the invention from different viewpoints.

Important points for a brief description:

State it in 1 to 3 lines

Use consistent terms such as – “Fig. A”, “Figure A” or “FIG. A”.

Put semicolon (;) after a brief description of every figure. Put “and” after semicolon of second last figure. Lastly, use full stop (.) after the brief description of the last figure.

Invention’s detailed description:

The detailed description talks about the best mode requirement of the invention. That is the best method of making use of the invention. Furthermore, it is a detailed disclosure of the best method of performing the invention.

Be precise and avoid any irrelevant information.

Claim(s):

Claims define whatever you seek patent protection for. In other words, claims define the legal scope of the invention. Therefore, it is important for your claims to:

Define the subject-matter for which you seek patent protection.

Support the subject-matter with a clear and concise description.

Note: be aware of the fact that claims define technicality and not the commercial advantages of the invention. Also, try to keep the scope of claims as broad as possible.

Also, you can go for various types of claims depending on your invention. These include – Independent claims, Multiple Dependent Claims, Jepsons Claims, Omnibus Claims, etc.

Related Article: All you must know on Antecedent Basis

Abstract:

Abstract gives the description of the invention that is in consistence with the broadest claim. Your abstract should suffice in 150 words and should start from a fresh page. An abstract includes:

The technical fields of the invention;

The technical problem to which it relates;

The solution to the problem; and

Principle use(s) of the invention.

Write a Patent with Patent Drafting Catalyst

If you are about to write a patent by now you know it is quite a daunting task. Meeting all the guidelines and producing a detailed draft just the right way is the only the track for seeking the patent grant. Therefore, if you consider taking professional help, Patent Drafting Catalyst is at your end. Write a patent which is not only as per the guidelines but also brings patent protection for your invention. PDC is now a team with 100+ patent providing quality services across the world. Our professionals are always at your end with multiple iterations until they meet all your needs. You can find our patent draft samples free of cost by making a little inquiry. To know more, do give a visit to our service page.

* 1. **Benefits of Patent in India**

A patent grant in India is given to the applicant who invents something novel. The applicant gets the rights to reap the benefits of patent as this right is given to him by country’s government. It allows the inventor to stop others from copying, manufacturing or selling the invention without their consent. So, basically the applicant becomes the owner of the content. An Indian patent will give the owner the rights within India to stop others from importing similar products in the Indian Territory. The patent system also promotes growth in the economy by making the benefits of patent available at an affordable price.

The benefits of patent include:

A patent grant serves multiple purposes as it benefits both, the individual and the country, in regards to technological advancement. This in turn increases the economic growth of the country. Some of the other patent benefits to the inventor are:

The Barrier to entry:

It is one of the major benefits of patent as it gives inventor exclusive rights. A patent erects a barrier to entry so that others cannot compete against the inventor. If anyone enters the market with similar invention, the inventor can take profits and stop them from engaging in further activities.

Related Article: Importance of Patent Invalidity Search

Increased profits and prices:

The patent applicants increase the profit of their product to reap the benefits of patent. A patent allows aninventor to sell his unique product at higher price. If the demand for the product is high, the inventor gets the benefit of the patent. As no one else can sell a similar product, the profit generation of the product peaks. If someone else was able to introduce their own version of the patented product, prices would drop. Fortunately, the patent prevents them from introducing their version of the patented products.

Provide equal opportunities to small corporations:

Apatent provides equal opportunities to small corporations and helps them in expanding their business. There are many advantages that large corporations have over the smaller ones. Large corporations have funding and marketing channels to promote their product. So, the small company is likely to lose as compared to its counterpart.

 However, everything changes with the involvement of a patent. If a small company owns the legal rights of the invention then even large corporations cannot benefit from it. This gives the small company an advantage over its counterpart with a unique product. The patent owner has the right to sue large corporations for patent infringement if found using their technology. This helps in avoiding the domination of any company which is essential for economic growth.

Related Article: IPR Issues of India: Challenges to be Aware of before Filing

Allowing public knowledge share:

When patent gets a grant, the disclosure of the invention in public domain takes place. By disclosing the invention in public, it will demonstrate the inventor’s good command and his technical subject background. This will attract leading and high-end business partners. It will also help in raising funds and inventor’s portfolio. The image of the inventor in the market would sell or instigate the competitors to offer this invention with good range.

Encourages innovation and understanding:

The patent not only helps the inventor but also the society as a whole. The patent system encourages inventors to innovate by granting a patent for their invention. The inventor gets a patent grant for a limited period of time in exchange for others to use the invention. Hence, public can make and use the invention after expiration of the patent. The collective knowledge of the public increase as inventors teaches the public how to make and use their invention. They mention it in the patent specification description of the patent.

Looking to file a patent? – Your Patent Team

If you are looking to file a patent or seeking any assistance, Your Patent Team will help you at each step. YPT utilizes its knowledge of patent filing to help our clients get patent. We ensure that our clients get maximum benefit from the patents. YPT, with its vast experience in patent filing provides the best services with maximum efficiency and minimum cost. Our professional experts are having their presence globally to help you get your rights. We ensure that the legal rights of our clients are safe. For more services, visit Your Patent Team

* 1. **How Much Does a Utility Patent Cost?**

“How much does a utility patent cost?” If you’re an inventor, you must have thought about this at some point. It makes perfect sense if you, as an inventor, want to protect your innovation. These inventions are your intellectual property. Hence, it is natural that you would want exclusivity over its production, commercialization, and reproduction.

This is where you would go for a utility patent. So you might wonder, “How much is a utility patent going to cost me?” If you’re looking for answers to such questions, you’ve come to the right place. We’ll dissect the entire patent procedure and give you a calculated estimate of the amounts you’ll spend at every procedure.

Utility Patent: A Brief Overview

Before we dive into the finances of this, let’s get a clear picture of what a utility patent represents.

A utility patent is a patent that protects new machines, processes, matter composition, drug, chemical, business methods, and manufacturing. The patent is valid for a period of 20 years, subject to payment of renewal fees to the USPTO every few years.

Broadly speaking, there are 2 types of utility patent costs:

Government fees

Professional charges

Utility patents are the most valuable kind, which is why their cost can range from $6000 to $15,000. Often is the case that more complex the invention, higher is the cost. The utility patent cost varies at different steps depending on the size of the entity. You have the following entities: micro entity (independent inventors, small business), small entity (mid-level organizations), and large entity (big corporations).

Related Article: Things to Do Before Patenting Something

Utility Patent Cost: An Insight on Every Step and its Expenses

The entireutility patent registration process involves different steps, some mandatory and some optional.

1. Patentability Search

The very first step is the patentability search, also known as patent novelty search. It’s not mandatory but it is highly advisable. You would want to hire a professional agency or organization for this. They’ll perform an exhaustive search for prior art in different databases such as the USPTO patent database. These also include patent databases of different countries, research journals, conferences, etc. Then, they’ll provide you with a patentability search report. Based on the results, you can determine if should go ahead with the patent filing process.

Estimated Fee: $300-$3000

This part of the utility patent cost is governed by the width and depth of the research. If you wish to cover more databases, have more hours deployed for the research, you will have to pay more.

2. Drafting the Patent Application

Writing a patent is an art. A patent is a very precise techno-legal document. You need to be knowledgeable in both technical (field of the invention) and legal fields (Patent Laws). Many inventors try to write a patent application on their own and focus completely on the technical perspective. Neglecting the legal point of view can prove to be expensive, like facing rejection from the USPTO. Hence, it is highly advisable to hire a good professional with appropriate experience. They can improve your patent application significantly and boost your chances of getting a patent. Then you have a provisional and non-provisional application. Depending on which application you file, the utility patent cost may vary.

Estimated Fee: $1000-$3000

The lower bound is for drafting a provisional application, while the upper bound is for non-provisional.

3. Utility Patent Illustrations

This is a key part of a patent application. Drafting the patent application is certainly very crucial. But, the words can only go so far without pictorial representation.

With your utility patent illustration, you can make your application stand out. Once an examiner sees your illustrations, he/she can relate to the written content better and draw conclusions slightly more easily. Hence, you should give considerable emphasis on this matter.

Related Article: Patent Filing Deadlines – Know When to Take Action

If you’re looking for a patent illustration service, check out our samples.

Estimated fee: $45-$100 (per figure cost)

Check out our prices to see if we fit your budget. Our aim is to provide the best services for an economical price.

4. Filing the patent application, publication, and examination

After you feel that your application draft is ready, you can finally proceed with the patent filing process. Here is the schedule of fees that you require while filing a patent with the USPTO.

The appropriate forms along with their appropriate fees are as follows:

Some basic fees that you have to pay to include:

Fee Code 37 CFR Description Fee Small Entity Fee Micro Entity Fee

1011/2011/3011 1.16(a) Basic filing fee – Utility (paper filing also requires non-electronic filing fee under 1.16(t)) 300.00 150.00 75.00

4011† 1.16(a) Basic filing fee – Utility (electronic filing for small entities) n/a 75.00 n/a

1005/2005/3005 1.16(d) Provisional application filing fee 280.00 140.00 70.00

1201/2201/3201 1.16(h) Each independent claim in excess of three 460.00 230.00 115.00

1202/2202/3202 1.16(i) Each claim in excess of 20 100.00 50.00 25.00

1081/2081/3081 1.16(s) Utility Application Size Fee – for each additional 50 sheets that exceeds 100 sheets 400.00 200.00 100.00

1085/2085/3085 1.16(s) Provisional Application Size Fee – for each additional 50 sheets that exceeds 100 sheets 400.00 200.00 100.00

1090/2090/3090 1.16(t) Non-electronic filing fee — Utility (additional fee for applications filed in paper) 400.00 200.00 200.00

1311/2311/3311 1.16(o) Utility Examination Fee 760.00 380.00 190.00

1501/2501/3501 1.18(a)(1) Utility issue fee 1,000.00 500.00 250.00

5. Patent Prosecution Fees

After your patent application has been examined, you might have to respond to queries that the examiner raises. These are in the form of Office Actions. Your job is to respond to these objections and overcome all the obstacles in your way to get the patent grant.

Related Article: A Complete Guide to Patent Novelty Search

Also, the drafting of Office Action Responses is also not so easy. It is just as crucial as the patent application itself. Hence, people often seek legal assistance for this. The entire patent prosecution process demands a lot of time and money. Hence, patent firms charge a part of the utility patent cost accordingly for the same.

Estimated Fees: $1000-$2000

6. Maintenance Fees

After you clear all the objections that the examiner raises for your application, you’ll receive a grant for your patent. The validity of the patent is 20 years from the priority date. But within those 20 years, you’ll have to pay a maintenance fee from time to time. You can find the details in the table below:

Fee Code 37 CFR Description Fee Small Entity Fee Micro Entity Fee

1551/2551/3551 1.20(e) For maintaining an original or any reissue patent, due at 3.5 years 1,600.00 800.00 400.00

1552/2552/3552 1.20(f) For maintaining an original or any reissue patent, due at 7.5 years 3,600.00 1,800.00 900.00

1553/2553/3553 1.20(g) For maintaining an original or any reissue patent, due at 11.5 years 7,400.00 3,700.00 1,850.00

There is another miscellaneous utility patent cost that you might have to pay. Check out the entire table from the schedule of fees.

7. Patent Watch Fees

Once you get a patent grant, you have to pay a maintenance fee to the USPTO, but that is not all. In the case of patent infringement, you have to assert your rights on your own. Hence, it is absolutely crucial to watch your patent. You can do this on your own but that might take up a large chunk of your time. Hence, you can hire a Patent Watch Service. They charge certain fees and in turn, monitor your patent.

Estimated Fees: $1000-$1500 (annually)

Need a professional illustrator? – Patent Illustration Express

By now, you must have an idea about the cost of a utility patent. Our job is to assist you with the patent illustrations, one of the most crucial parts of the application.

You may feel that the margins for error are too fine and the guidelines are too many. Consequently, rendering your own illustrations may seem like a daunting task. If you feel the need to consult a professional, Patent Illustration Express is here to help you. Our team of professionals boasts years of experience and diverse skill-set of software and handmade drawings. Utility patent illustrations are our specialty. Your satisfaction is paramount to us. We offer an incredibly high turnaround time and unlimited iterations, all at an extremely affordable price.

* 1. **How to Become a Patent Paralegal? (Roles and Responsibilities)**

The domain of patents is complex, and chances are, you will require the assistance of a Patent Paralegal. First, you must understand the role of a patent paralegal and then get into the responsibilities. Finally, we’ll explain how to become a patent paralegal.

The patent process involves a large amount of legal, technical and communicative work. This amount of work for a lawyer/patent agent during the entire process may overwhelm him/her. Basically, the various types of work include communication with the client, the USPTO, document preparation, docketing, etc.

Now, you would obviously want to ensure that the entire process goes by as smoothly as possible. So, hiring a paralegal is an absolute necessity and it is a good career path. Let’s understand this in greater depth.

How to become a Patent Paralegal: Their role

Basically, a paralegal takes care of substantive legal work while working for a lawyer. As we mentioned before, the work revolves around recognition, evaluation, and communication of relevant facts and legal concepts.

You must understand that a lawyer is fully capable of doing this work alone. However, often is the case where a large amount of work needs attention in short spans of time. Hence, hiring a paralegal takes a lot of weight off the shoulders of a lawyer.

Related Article: Benefits of a Patent Paralegal Service.

A patent paralegal’s legal work naturally revolves around matters of IP and more specifically, patents. The field of patents requires a technical understanding of scientific principles and phenomena. Therefore, a patent paralegal needs to be able to grasp those scientific principles. Hence, they must have at least a basic understanding of sciences like engineering, life sciences, chemistry, etc. At the foundation of things, their analytical skills must be sharp.

Read more about the duties a patent paralegal needs to perform to understand their responsibilities better.

How to become a Patent Paralegal: Job Responsibilities

A patent paralegal needs to be versatile in different fields. They are responsible for handling a lot of paperwork and maintaining the application docket. It is a challenging task that requires a lot of vigilance and awareness.

They should be proficient in tasks like:

Research work

Before filing a patent, it is vital to perform a background check. You need to be absolutely certain and assertive about your creation. If you find something similar to your creation then you may not get protection for your IP. Hence, researching before filing is very important. The research may include conducting Patent Novelty Search, Patent Invalidity Search, etc.

Patent document preparation and filing

This is an absolutely critical task and requires skill as well as experience. Any patent document needs to be elaborate and completely unambiguous. A patent paralegal can assist you in processes like Patent Drafting, Patent Filing, IDS Preparation, Patent Proofreading, et cetera.

Maintaining Docket and Tracking Deadlines

The patent process is complex and requires a large number of documents. Naturally, they need to be organized properly so that every bit of information is easy to track. A patent paralegal should efficiently docket documents.

They must also keep track of the deadlines so that everything is done in a timely manner. Naturally, this will require working on a tight schedule at times to avoid any undue situations. This is easier when they maintain a good docketing system. This will also help them to handle multiple cases together.

Performing administrative tasks

These tasks include making copies of documents, ensuring that the office has enough supplies, etc. A patent paralegal will also have to track billable hours with the client and ensure transparency between the client and the law firm.

Correspondence with entities

Their job also requires them to act as an intermediary between the court and the client. Such processes require lengthy interactions, both via written documents and in-court hearings. A patent paralegal will help you to prepare documents such as Office action response.

Patent Watch

After getting a patent grant, you also need to guard it. If an infringement occurs, then it is your responsibility to enforce your rights. A paralegal can provide you with Patent Watch services so that you can relax. This requires vigilance and awareness of the latest news in the field of the invention.

They will monitor your patent and inform you as soon as an infringement occurs.

How to Become a Patent Paralegal: Qualifications and Experience Needed

Qualifications

Finally, let’s answer the question of how to become a patent paralegal, you must complete at least a 2-year associate’s degree in a paralegal program. This is a very basic requirement for most patent law offices out there.

While pursuing your studies, it will certainly be beneficial if you pursue specialized courses in patent law. In case you majored in a different field, you can take certification programs to bridge the education gap. These courses will cover a variety of IP domains such as patents, copyrights, design, trademark, etc.

Experience

In case you don’t have a qualification, you might wonder how to become a patent paralegal. You will need to have plenty of experience in patent law. However, you will need to acquire some qualifications through courses as mentioned above.

Also, some patent law offices may consider hiring you as an intern. Such internships are often unpaid. But, the experience you gain is crucial because it gives you a way into patent law. The experience you gain in the real world is incomparable to bookish, classroom knowledge.

Need a Paralegal? – Patent Drafting Catalyst

You are aware of the importance of a paralegal. If you’re looking to take the aid of a paralegal service, consider Patent Drafting Catalyst. Our team boasts 10+ years of experience in supporting patent prosecution with 200+ full-time patent engineers in 30+ technology areas. Our experience includes working with multiple patent attorneys/counsels from multiple countries for patent drafting.

We are always up-to-date about the latest laws and acceptable practices. Our patent engineers understand the importance of comprehensive patent claims in terms of patent commercialization and infringement litigation.

* 1. **An Insight to Provisional Patent Claims**

A patent claim is that part of the patent specification which defines the boundaries of patent protection. Provisional patent claims outline the elements of an invention that protect the invention from others using it illegally. Hence, claims ensure appropriate enablement and disclosure in instances where one processes the provisional application quickly or on a small budget. When one includes provisional patent claims in the application, it establishes an explicit record which associates with the first filing date. So, they form a protective boundary line around your patent that lets others know when they are infringing on your rights. It means that your words and phrasing in claims define the limits of this line.

Also read: Patent Search Types: ‘The Major Eight’

Provisional Patent Claims: Must Know

Provisional patent claims prevent the potential liability that stems from poorly drafted patents. Without these claims, it becomes difficult for the inventor to protect future claims. So, it is important for one to draft the patent claims in the right manner with a proper format. One must include the scope, characteristics, and structure while drafting patent claims in a provisional application.

Components:

Every provisional patent claim has three sections- the preamble, the transitional phrase and body of the claim.

The preamble is the first part of the claim. The preamble states whether the claim is for an apparatus or a method. So, to write a preamble for apparatus, the claim could start with “An apparatus for making a mark on a writing surface”. To write a preamble for method, the claim could start with “A method for making a mark on a writing surface.”

Comparatively, the transitional phrase is the “comprising phrase”. One can use three different types of transitional phrase that is comprising, consisting of and consisting essentially of. Hence, you always want to use the “comprising” transitional phrase, as it gives the broadest protection.

Everything after the transitional phrase is the body of the claim. The body of the claim defines the elements and limitations of the claims.

Also read: Patent Filing: Know How to Proceed

Important inclusions:

Only the patent claims define the scope of protection that a patent grants to the applicant. The rest of the patent specification only helps explain the invention in detail. So, it is necessary to include a full and complete description of the invention through provisional patent claims in the provisional applications.

One can always rearrange the application, but cannot add any new material to it. Therefore, having claims present at the time of filing helps ensure that at least you have given the description of your invention sufficiently. So, when drafting a patent application it is good practice to spend time drafting quality claims.

The Patent Office’s Position:

The USPTO publishes the rules regarding patent examination processes and patentability in the Manual of Patent Examination Procedure (MPEP). The USPTO denies priority when a provisional application cannot meet the written description requirements. That is why provisional patent claims must adequately describe the invention in a detailed manner. Whether the patent office will accept the provisional application or not depends on the patent claims that one includes in the application.

Enablement and written description:

Written descriptions and enablement must be met in all patent applications, especially adhering to the first paragraph of Section 112 of patent law. Moreover, enablement is met when patent specifics contain complete instructions that any expert in the area could use to make the invention.

The written description must compare how the claims describe the invention to the distinguishing parts of the final product. Hence, the inventors must have a working prototype and must describe the invention in figures, drawings, words, and formulas. So, a person of skill can verify that the assembling of the invention was correct, thus satisfying the law.

Why Choose Us? – Patent Drafting Catalyst

If you are looking for a provisional patent claims or seeking any assistance, Patent Drafting Catalyst (PDC) is the way to go. PDC is an exclusive group of the world’s leading patent drafting experts. Our team has more than 100 employees drafting quality patents. PDC is a team of professional experts who serve clients globally with our team helping innovators in drafting the patents. PDC has an in-depth understanding of drafting patents and has the ability to leverage the power of collaborative patent drafting. Our team of experts boasts years of experience in patent drafting and will provide you with the best possible solutions. Ethics is the first priority of PDC and our professionals will guide you in the right direction. We ensure that the legal rights of our clients are safe. To avail our services, Visit Patent Drafting Catalyst.

* 1. **Patent Prosecution in India – An Encompassing Guide**

The process of Patent prosecution in India starts from filing the application till the very last stage of patent grant or rejection. There is a complete timeline for the legal process with varying duration of different proceedings. The duration of these proceedings are subject to change; this depends majorly on the applicant and on the patent office proceedings.

Here, in this article, we will discuss the complete process of patent prosecution in India along with the time duration associated with each and every proceeding.

Flow chart for Patent Prosecution in India

Here you will find a flowchart depicting complete proceedings through which a patent application goes through. It starts from the stage of patent filing till patent grant or rejection. Furthermore, it incorporates timelines of important events during the prosecution.

Now, we will discuss in detail, the proceedings in the patent office after filing a patent application in India itself.

Patent Prosecution in India Flow-chart

Figure 1: Flow Chart of Patent Prosecution in India

Filing of Patent Application

The process of patent prosecution commences with filing of patent application. This can take place in the patent office of their respective jurisdictions. The controller of patent office might allocate the application to any of the patent offices, if required. In the image given below you will find the jurisdictions within India having patent offices.

Patent Office Locations in India

Figure 2: Patent Office Locations in India

The office for filing divisional patent application is the same where you filed the main patent application.

If you proceed with a provisional application, produce the complete application within 12 months for moving further with the process. If you file a PCT application it takes 31 months to become an Indian National Phase Application.

Patent Prosecution in India – The Process

Once the application reaches the patent office, send the fee bearing documents to fee counter and the non-fee bearing ones to non-fee counter.

The staff makes relevant entries in modules, stamps the documents and generates Cash Book Receipts (CBRs). They enter CBR number, date, mount of fee received, application number, patent number and other related entries.

The non-fee counter staff also makes relevant entries in document receipt module and stamps the documents so received.

Forward documents from both the counters to Electronic Data Processing (EDP) section for digitization. And the documents that do not require digitization sent to concerned sections on daily basis.

Initial Processing

On receipt of an application, the office accords a date and serial number to it. Patent applications arranged in e-wrapper.

Screening of application on the basis of:

International Application.

Technical field of invention.

Relevance to defense/atomic energy.

Correct or complete abstract.

After this they perform numbering of application on the basis of year of filing, jurisdiction and type of application. The application number is a 6-digit common continuous serial number, applicable for all Patent Offices in India.

Scrutiny of Application

There are particular requirements of the patent office according to which a patent application moves in the patent office. You as an applicant should know these scrutiny criteria before filing the application. The scrutiny criteria include:

Filing in Appropriate Jurisdiction: one of the criteria of scrutiny of patent prosecution in India is the selection of appropriate jurisdiction. If it is not right then they won’t take the application on record and you will receive a notification for the same.

Proof of Right: file it along with the application, if not file it within 6 months from date of filing of the application. Or otherwise file it with along a petition under rule 137/138.

Completion and Format of Documents: The office checks whether the application is complete with relevant documents and is in proper format. Along with this, it checks whether it is duly signed by the applicant, inventor(s) or agent (if any).

Publication of Application

From the date of filing or priority date (whichever is earlier) it takes 18 months for publication of the application. Publication takes place in the office journal. You can also make a request for early publication of the application by filling the form-9 with the prescribed fee. In this case the publication takes place within 1 month of the date of request.

Pre-grant Opposition

Pre-grant opposition can take place by a 3rd person after the publication of your patent application. They can question on the patentability criteria which includes- novelty, non-obviousness, non-patentable subject matter, non-disclosure given by the Indian Patent Office.

Examination of the Application

This is the most crucial step in patent prosecution in India or in any jurisdiction. Examination of application commences with a request for examination. This takes place by filling form-18 or form-18A (for startups) along with examination fee (electronic transmission).

Make the request within 48 months of date of filing or priority date, whichever is earlier.

If this doesn’t take place, the application is considered as withdrawn.

No examination takes place without publication and filing of request for examination.

The patent examiner looks for all the patentability criteria while examining the application. If the application is not in compliance with those criteria, then it will lead to abandonment of the application.

If there are minor errors like grammatical error, format related errors, then the office controller generates an office action. You need to update the application by correcting the mistakes within a 3 months time period.

The patent office generates a minimum of 2 office actions, but you can request for continued examination.

After this if your patent application is in compliance with the patent office rules, you will get the patent grant for a period of 20 years.

If not then your patent application is prone to rejection.

Annuity Payment

You need to pay an annuity payment to maintain you patent enforceability. It is also known as renewal or maintenance fee. Also, learn to total cost of patent registration in India.

Post Grant Opposition

After 1 year of the patent grant, a 3rd person can file a post-grant opposition. Just like pre-grant opposition he/she can question on the patentability criteria not meeting by the invention. From here the legal proceedings might lead to revocation of patent.

Why Choose Your Patent Team?

Patent Prosecution in India is indeed a lengthy procedure. It endures its peculiar requirements and deadlines. You need to meet those rations and timelines at any cost to receive the patent grant. If at any point, you think of taking professional opinion or service(s), Your Patent Team is at your end.

We cover the whole patent domain from the very first stage till the end. A team of more than 100 patent professionals, we ensure you timely delivery of services, along with quality results. Do give a visit to us at Your Patent Team to learn more.

* 1. **Top 5 Benefits of IP Docketing**

It is very difficult to organize and maintain hundreds of patent applications at the same time for patent law firms. This is where IP docketing comes into play. IP docketing is a method or system for managing the patent application process. As patent applications go through approval processes, it is important to keep track of the numerous statements, drawings, forms, and documents. In fact, most law firms hire specialists to manage the patent docket system. Since each patent application can take up to several years, one enters more patents into the docketing system for better management.

Also read: How Patent Docketing Works?

Importance of IP Docketing

IP docketing ensures that all the deadlines are met and ensures that all the documents are kept in the correct file. This helps the patent law firms to retrieve the documents anytime. We will discuss the importance of docketing below.

Organizes documents in a proper manner:

The patent application process generates a great deal of paperwork. As this paperwork comes into the law office, it is the docketer’s job to correctly label each document with the file number. Patent dockets also include entering each document into a database so attorneys can easily identify all the documents in the application file. So, it organizes the documents in a proper manner thereby making it easier for attorneys to look at a particular patent application.

Alert the firms to meet the deadline:

Docketing is one of the most important aspects of patent prosecution. The dockets alert attorneys to any upcoming deadlines in the application process. A patent attorney may need to see if any deadlines are coming up for filing a piece of paperwork with the USPTO.

One can use the docketing database to alert them of filing the documents within deadlines. Without it, people who employ patent attorneys will likely miss deadlines, and ultimately fail to receive patent protection. The fee to reinstate a previously failed application is $1620 for larger companies and around half that for smaller entities.

However, once the attorney misses the deadline, the likelihood that the client will continue working with him or her is very small. So, for law firms operating in this area, a docketing system is one of their most important features.

Insurance requirements:

All patent law insurance carriers require patent law firms to maintain a docket that stores the patent application documents. This is to prevent malpractice lawsuits when a law firm misses a filing date thereby causing a patent rejection by the USPTO. Many insurance carriers require, not one, but two dockets, in which two different people in the firm enter and calculate the deadlines.

Easy to use:

There are many different types of software available to manage the IP docketing process. Some programs allow for free text so that docketers can enter any information into the system as they see fit. Other programs calculate the due dates for docketers so that they won’t have to manually do so. Some systems have audit logs to identify the time of portfolio editing. So, the software tools make it easy for patent law firms to search for the information efficiently in a timely manner.

Also read: Importance of Understanding Technical Translation

Electronic Docketing Platform:

Electronic docketing platforms offer centralized data access, which allows patent agents and attorneys to see the whole patent portfolio. This may include prior patents, trademarks, copyrights, any related lawsuits, and the connections between them.

Docketing platforms provide standardization between policies and workflow stages. This allows for greater consistency and efficiency, focusing on the needs of each client. One needs to update the platform regularly as laws change globally.

Electronic data can improve the quality of the data because it allows users to fix errors in large portfolios of patents. Patent attorneys and agents can download all prosecution data from the USPTO as well as other patent offices. Anyone with access to this information has the ability to eliminate errors and improve the formatting of each record.

Why Choose Us? – Perfect Patent Docketing

It has become essential nowadays to hire a docketing service to manage the documents of a huge number of patent applications. If you are looking to seek any assistance regarding docketing process, Perfect Patent Docketing (PPD) is your one-stop destination. PPD helps clients to manage and track patent portfolio using commercial docketing systems as well as platform-independent delivery models. We maintain all the technical and legal documents that associate with all the relevant emails, process, and docket all the incoming emails. We serve our clients from 45+ countries, providing them with the best in class services with our experienced team of professionals. PPD guides you throughout the life-cycle of the patent process. To avail our services, visit Perfect Patent Docketing.

* 1. **The 5 Key Trademark Benefits**

A trademark is a symbol, design, word or combination of elements that identify a party’s goods or services. There are certain trademark benefits that one can get while filing the trademark. The main purpose of it is to distinguish the product of the company from someone else’s product. A trademark can almost be anything as long as it makes easy for the consumers to identify it. Trademark registration gives the right to the applicant to use the mark and oppose legally if someone else tries to benefit from it. It prevents others to use the same without unauthorized access.

Also read: Trademark Watch and its Significance

Essential factors of trademark benefits

Firstly, a trademark prevents unfair competition between companies that use consumer confusion to get more business. A trademark helps customers distinguish between products. Secondly, a trademark protects the owner’s reputation and investment.

 Some of the key trademark benefits are:

Serves as a mark of identification:

A trademark becomes a mark of identification for a specific brand, company, etc. so that one can easily identify it in a broad market. It becomes easy for the customers to easily distinguish the brands and get what they want. Some customers trust certain companies and only purchase a product of that particular brand. So, the trademark of the brand help customers in identifying the brand and purchasing the product.

Provides inexpensive protection:

Trademark registration provides the protection to the owner’s trademark to use the mark anywhere on their product. Trademark owner gets legal rights to sue someone if anyone is found using his mark for their benefit. Protecting the mark becomes important as it saves the reputation as well as the trust in the brand quality of the product. Except for the starting cost, one needs to renew the protection every 10 months after trademark filing.

Also read: Trademark Filing Fees: A Quick Overview

Provides an edge in the market:

One of the most important trademark benefits is that it provides the product with an edge in the market over others. Trademark serves as a status symbol and customers attract usually towards the logo of the product. One can easily advertise the logo and once the logo gets popular, no need for the product name for further advertisement. People are able to approach and tweet about the product on social media easily by using the logo of the product. The trademark then builds its stand comprehensively by popularity amongst consumers, providing an edge to the product in the market.

Also read: Trademark Filing: A Step by Step Process

Helps in business expansion:

Once the registration of the trademark is successful, it brings a competitive advantage to the owner. It uplifts the image of the product in the market. This is one of the most significant trademark benefits. Moreover, if the trademark gets initial success, it becomes easy for the owner to generate funds from different sources. This challenges other brands to provide better quality to the consumer which is essential for the market growth.

For example, a very famous brand “Nike” was earlier a very strong competitor in the market domain of making sports shoes. But as the product became a hit and the trademark of “Nike” was known to everyone, business expansion took place. With the help of famous trademark, they were able to diversify their business which includes athletic apparels and sports equipment in today’s market.

Boosts business reputation:

Promoting the brand of your company at an early stage is essential for the potential development and success of your business. Trademark registration guarantees a powerful and remarkable brand which helps in boosting business reputation. Registering the trademark also capitalizes the lifespan of your business, which increases the clients’ confidence in your business.

There are also other trademark benefits on which you can rely on. Trademark also helps to identify the popularity of the brand on behalf of the customer feedback and rumors among them. It also gives some extra financial benefits if anyone is found guilty of trademark infringement in the form of damages. The brand is able to take quick customer feedbacks in a short span on social media sites. This helps in improving the overall quality of the product.

Why Choose Us? – The Trademark Search Company

Trademarkplays a crucial role these days in the rising and expansion of any business. The Trademark Search Company (TTSC) provide clients with the world-class service of the trademark registration process in minimal time. You invest a lot in building your brand by creating logos and applying for trademarks. Before you put this effort, you need to make sure that it is in the right direction. At TTSC, our aim is to let you focus on building the right brand through accurate and precise logos and symbols. Our team provides you with the most flexible and widest coverage at a lower price. TTSC makes sure of 100% satisfaction to our clients without compromising on the quality of work. To avail our services, visit The Trademark Search Company.

* 1. **Trademark Filing Process: A Complete Overview**

Trademark Filing Process is the procedure of registering the trademark and logos in the trademark office for protecting it. It helps in distinguishing your products from the competitors. It also helps prevent others from using the same logo and design as of yours. A registered trademark is an intangible asset for a business and protects the company’s investment in the brand or symbol. After trademarking your logo, it is important for one to preserve that unique identity. The trademark filing process starts with the filing of the application with the USPTO and ends at the completion of the trademark registration.

Trademark Filing Process: Key Points to Consider

The filing of the trademark attracts a lot of brand recognition. The little effort of yours will preserve a trademark for generations and develop a unique identity of the brand. However, the trademark filing process involves several steps to follow. The steps are as follows:

Get Ready to Apply

The first step of the trademark filing process starts by choosing the design of logo or mark. A logo or trademark should be easy to remember and should be relevant to the product of the company. These are some of the points to keep in mind while filing a trademark application:

Selecting a mark:

Once you determine the type of protection you need, selection of the mark becomes very important. One should do it with some thought and diligence because not every mark is registrable. People usually choose marks that often connect with their product and brand name.

Mark Format:

It is also one of the important steps in trademark filing. One should be able to decide, whether it would be a standard character mark or a design mark. People also go towards stylized or sound marks.

Identification of Goods and Services:

 It is critical to decide the goods and services to which one wants to apply the trademark for. Identifying goods makes it easier for one to choose marks from a variety of sources.

Searching:

Trademark searching becomes essential as it tells the applicant whether the registration of a particular mark already exists or not. If someone is already the owner of a specific trademark, you cannot have a similar one.

Basis for Filing:

 Under the basis for filing of ‘use in commerce’, you must demonstrate that you have been using the mark in commerce. The use of the mark should be prior to registration. If you were already using a mark with all the services in your application, you may file ‘use in commerce’ basis.

Submit the Trademark Application

Once you are clear with the above steps, the filing of the trademark application becomes the next step. You need to mention all the details of the trademark in your trademark application.

Monitoring Application Status

After completion of the trademark application, monitoring of the application becomes important. It is to ensure that the USPTO timely acts upon all the documents you send or receive. One can easily review what is happening to the trademark application and not miss any important deadlines.

Related Article: Trademark Filing: A Step by Step Process

Examination of the Application

After filing, the trademark application goes to the trademark office for the examination process. The process involves:

Reviewing the application:

Once the USPTO determines that you have met the minimum filing requirements, it assigns you an application serial number. Then, the application goes to the examining attorney. The attorney reviews the application to determine the compliance of the application with the office rules.

Office Action:

The examining attorney decides whether to register the trademark or not. If the attorney decides not to register the trademark, he will issue a letter explaining the substantial reason for the refusal. The attorney will claim to correct the deficiencies of the application.

Respond to the letter:

If the examinee attorney sends an office action, the applicant must respond to the office action within 6 months of the action. The applicant needs to amend the claims which the examinee attorney wants him to correct.

Approval/Denial of the Trademark

The next step of the trademark filing process is the approval or denial of the trademarkapplication.On the completion of the examination, the attorney approves or rejects the trademark application depending on the response of the applicant. There are several steps to follow:

Publication of the Mark

If the examinee attorney raises no objection, or if the applicant overcomes all the objections, approval of the application takes place. After approval, the USPTO publishes the trademark in the “Official Gazette.” “Official Gazette” is a weekly publication of the USPTO. The USPTO sends a notice of the publication to the applicant stating the date of publication. USPTO gives 30 days of time for the opposition of the trademark to happen, if anyone wants to oppose it.

Notice of Allowance:

After the publication of the trademark, the next step is notice of allowance to the applicant. If there is no opposition regarding the trademark application, USPTO issues a notice of allowance to the applicant. A notice of allowance means the successful survival of the trademark filing in the opposition period after publication.

Filing the Statement of Use (SOU)

A time period of 6 months is given to the applicant from the date of allowance to file the Statement of Use (SOU). The applicant needs to use the trademark in commerce and file SOU. If the applicant fails in doing so, it results in the abundance of the trademark application.

Reviewing the Statement of Use:

A Statement of Use (SOU) must meet minimum filing requirements before an examining attorney fully reviews it. If SOU meets the minimum filing requirements, the attorney determines whether it is acceptable to permit registration or not. If the examinee identifies no refusals or additional requirements, he approves the SOU.

Related Article: Why should you hire a patent proofreading expert?

Trademark Registration

This is the final stage of the trademark filing process. Once you pass all of the above steps, the registration of the trademark happens. The following points are important to remember:

Registration Certificate Issue:

Within approximately 2 months after getting the approval of SOU, the USPTO issues the trademark registration. To keep the registration live, the applicant must file the specific maintenance documents. Failure to make these filings will result in cancellation of the registration.

Monitoring Registration Status:

Even if your trademark registers, you should monitor the registration on an annual basis. It is important to check the status of your registration after making any of the filings to keep the registration alive.

Protecting your Rights:

The USPTO attempts to ensure that no other parties receive a federal registration for a similar trademark. But, it is the responsibility of the owner to bring a legal action and stop others from infringement of the trademark. If the owner suspects the infringement of his trademark, he should immediately oppose the actions of the other party.

Looking for Trademark Filing? – The Trademark Filing Company

It is always beneficial to claim your trademark before someone else does. The Trademark Filing Company (TTFC) consists of professionals who have years of experience in trademark filing process. If you want to register your trademark, TTFC with its world class facilities and professional expertise would help you in doing so. We file quick and easy trademark applications for our clients at optimal cost. Our team also provides timely notifications to our clients at each step. TTFC is well aware of every guideline and the latest trademark laws to ensure our client’s trademark safety. We will also report you with the proper updates. For more information, visit The Trademark Filing Company.

* 1. Patent Filing Service – Benefits to Reap

Prior to patent filing, patent draft preparation seems a cumbersome task. But you can make things simple for you. Patent filing service help you to prepare patent applications as per the rules and demands of the patent office. Indeed the requirements are particular and demand strict compliance. Therefore, patent filing services are there to help. These are the end to end (E2E) services that provide assistance and prepare documents. The documents prepared are as per the USPTO or any other patent office requirements, depending upon the jurisdiction.

The Ultimate Benefits of Patent Filing Service

You can go about filing a patent application on your own. But this can become a bulky task if you are a first time filer. With patent filing service this hefty task is no longer only yours, but there is precise distribution of responsibilities among the professionals.

Your part is to provide them with the data and what you get is wholesome information in return. Below are some of the go to advantages of patent filing service:

Reduced Burden: patent filing involves preparation of a detailed draft. This draft meets the details of the patent office. Preparing such a draft becomes a cumbersome task if you are filing patent for the very first time. By taking patent filing service you can lessen this burden on yourself and can get an organized patent draft prepared all at once.

Patent Filing with the USPTO: the United States Patent and Trademark Office is quite strict about their patent filing rules. Even if single of the information went here and there; it would lead to serious consequences. And with serious consequences we mean multiple office actions and even patent rejection. But, with patent filing service, the professionals prepare such a draft which is as per the patent filing rules.

Meet all the Deadlines right on time: deadlines are something a person needs to take care of while patent application filing. This involves responding to the patent office actions right on/within time, filing IDS on time, etc. By taking patent filing service, you will get notice for all the deadlines and will get timely reminders.This practice ensures opportune deliverability of the requirements, which ultimately works in your favor.

Less or no office actions: a patent professional knows what all must the patent office demand for at the time of patent filing. Moreover, one gets to know if their invention is actually meets the patentability criteria, beforehand. Hence, this ultimately reduces the number of office actions and speeds up the patent prosecution.

Early patent grant: if everything moves as per the patent office requirements and there is nothing pending at your end. Then there are high chances of you getting timely patent enforceability for your invention.

Also Read: Patent Filing Cost

Types of Patent Application

There are multiple types of patent applications. The classification of patent applications is as per the context:

Provisional: this is the incomplete application. It is rundown of claims, oath or declaration and public disclosure. But, it holds its importance in setting a priority date for your invention.

Non-Provisional: also known as ordinary/complete application. This is the most crucial application, as this application is subject to examination by the patent office examiner. If you file a provisional patent application, then be mindful of filing the complete application within a period of 12 months.

International: you file an international application when you want patent grant in multiple jurisdictions. Also, there is no need to file separate application for every jurisdiction. Simply file one PCT or Paris Convention Application and you will simultaneously file patent in multiple jurisdictions.

Divisional: you file a divisional patent application on a later stage. This is when if you come to know that the pending patent application has more than one invention present.

Patent of Addition: this application comes into play when the applicant wishes to make improvement or modifications in the previously disclosed complete application.

Reissue Application: this application takes place of a previous complete application for an unexpired patent which is defective. The defect is mainly in the specification part or drawings, etc. Under these circumstances the applicant can file a reissue patent application. Mind you, the reissue application should not introduce any new claims that were previously disclosed in the non-provisional application. Moreover, this application doesn’t get a new patent term and will survive for the unexpired term of the original patent.

Continuation-in-Part Application: as the name suggest, you file a continuation-in-part application when you add new matter that was left out in the previous disclosure. With filing continuation-in-part application, you get a new priority date for the newly added material. Whereas, the priority date of filing of previous application for the old material will remain the same.

Note: Consider taking up patent filing service I you are in need of filing the above mentioned applications. As the requirements for different applications is different.

Patent Filing Service at The Patent Filing Company

Timely patent filing is the need of the hour. With every passing minute people are chase of getting patent grant through inventions and innovations. Since, a patent grant not only gets you a hold on your invention, but also is a good source of monetary value. Our professionals at The Patent Filing Company work closely with you through the entire process of patent prosecution. We have a dedicated team which will help you through each and every phase right from filing till patent grant. At TPFC, we provide all the types of patent application preparation assistance, be it provisional, non-provisional or international patent application. Customer satisfaction is of paramount importance to us; hence, we provide multiple iterations and quick turn-around-time. To know more, do give a visit to The Patent Filing Company.

* 1. **Scientific And Technical Translation: Why So Complex?**

Scientific and technical translation is not like a simple linguistic translation. It associates with itself in-depth knowledge of technical terms. These translations are very much important at any point in time. You might require a translated text of your patent application at the time of drafting the application. Therefore, it is very much prudent to produce precise translations. But this criterion becomes a major challenge since in scientific and technical translation language equivalence is not there. Scientific jargon are common while writing claims in the patent application. Therefore, there is a huge importance of technical translation while drafting the claims.

In situations where it gets difficult to find relevant words, then it is good to go with automated translation tools such as CAT tools. Also, you can use the Cross-Lingual Information Retrieval (CLIR) system which provides comparable corresponding words from the bilingual dictionaries.

The best way to avoid errors is to hire a professional technical translator with significant knowledge and expertise in such translations.

Why Scientific and Technical Translation is Tricky?

Here is to the challenges that a person comes across while doing the scientific and technical translation. Being clear about the technicalities also demands resourceful and insightful presentation of the translations. Accuracy and precision in both understanding and presenting the details are must for a good insightful patent translation. Scientific and technical translation is difficult and requires a significant amount of focus on the following aspects:

Precise Translation:

it is very much important that the translation conveys the exact meaning of the original text through non-technical terms. But sometimes it becomes very hard to find translations of those literal terms in some of the translated languages. This, in turn, poses major translation risks as it requires re-casting and re-framing of sentences.

Clarity of Concepts:

technical translation is not like normal language translation. It is a specialized type of translation where the subject area deals with the practical application of scientific information. Hence, clarity of concepts is of chief priority. By repeating some technical terms, deleting unnecessary words, and by quoting new terms we can enhance readability.

Not Considering Cultural Aspects:

with word for word translation, translators often neglect cultural phrases. In order to avoid this error, one must go beyond the literal meaning of the words. Therefore, it becomes very much important what those words mean in a particular cultural context.

Use of correct numbers:

the numbering of claims is as per specific numbering format, depending upon the territorial IP rules. While translating, the translator must ensure translating all the numbers according to the translated language and as per the client’s requirements. Another way of maintaining consistency among the numbers is to use numbers in reference to the INID codes. The patent offices’ use these codes to depict correct bibliographic details.

Creation of new terms:

the scientific and technical industry is booming at a faster rate. With that, it is also bringing new scientific terminologies. While translating, the translator is sure of the existence of a different name for that new phrase or term. This, in turn, can make the word translation simple or difficult.

Why Scientific and Technical Translations are Specific?

Scientific and technical texts are not like other literary text. These texts come into existence only through research findings and investigations. Hence, they contain technical jargon and scientific terms. Moreover, it is very much important that scientific translators produce translations that are accurate and conclusive. This is because people read scientific texts even after years of their publication.

That’s why it is very much prudent to go for certified translations by scientific and technical translators.

Scientific and Technical Translation with Patent Translations Express

Since, scientific and technical translation requires not only the basic understanding of the language but also, in-depth knowledge of the scientific jargon. Along with this, precision and context management is a mandate.

At Patent Translations Express, you will find a team of expert scientific and technical patent translators. For complete satisfaction, we offer free translation services for test purpose. We offer pocket-friendly services without making any compromise on the quality and accuracy of our results. Our experts hold Masters and Ph.D. Degrees in Science and technology with an in-depth understanding of patent literature. We provide you up-to-the-mark manually translated results optimized with CAT tools. You can find our free translation samples and can find services for PCT and multi-country filing translation services, by making a little inquiry.

* 1. **What are the Requirements for Patent Proofreading Jobs?**

A professional patent drafter is well aware of the benefits of patent proofreading and the need for the patent proofreading jobs. Patent proofreading deals with a complete investigation of patent and patent applications. There is a significant percentage of patents with errors that occur during the drafting or prosecution stage. These errors lead to the limitation of the scope of the patent.

However, patent proofreading is a laborious task, but it is important to proofread patent applications to identify shortcomings in patents, which include:

Missing antecedent references.

Incorrect status indicators.

The inconsistent numbering of claims.

Incorrect names of attorneys, inventors, and assignee.

Spelling mistakes.

Any preliminary amendment at the time of the prosecution stage.

These errors in the priority information might even lead to the abandonment of the patent.Thus, we require patent proofreaders and patent proofreading jobs. It involves a legal and technical understanding of the patent application. An experienced proofreader performs a detailed analysis of the prosecution history of the patent and locates errors made by the applicant or patent office.

Also Read: Patent Search Types: The major eight

Patent Proofreading Jobs: What do they do?

Patent proofreading is the main tool for patent drafting. You must know about certain tasks that a proofreader performs if you are searching for patent proofreading jobs. In the following segment, we will discuss a few parts related to the patent proofreading jobs:

Claims Construction:

Claims are the most crucial part of any patent. They define the limits for patent protection. Proofreading of claim catches missing references and ensures support for the claim specification. Also, it helps in omitting indefinite claims.

Proofreading provides a definite structure to the claims and helps to maintain harmony between the disclosure and the claim.

Omitting Grammatical Errors:

Grammar plays a significant role in providing a definite meaning to the sentence. A single word provides a different meaning to the sentence at different positions.

Proofreading ensures that the words must provide a proper and clear meaning to the sentence as well as the claim.

Moreover, the officials might reject the patent application if they find that the meaning of the claim is not clear. Proofreading helps in omitting grammatical errors and building precise claims. Thus, you must own good grammatical knowledge if you apply for patent proofreading jobs.

Enabling the Invention:

There are many times when a patent fails to enable the invention although you mention the details thoroughly.

The guidelines from the patent office state that it is necessary that a person with ordinary skills must be able to understand the working and make the invention while just using the provided details. Also, The Patent application might get rejected if the patentee fails to do so.

Thus, patent proofreading determines whether the draft quality is sufficient for enabling the invention or not.

Scope of the Patent:

The Patent draft decides the patent protection limits. Proofreading helps in maintaining the scope for patent protection. It must not be too broad in nature such that the chance of patent rejection increases. On the other hand, it must not be too narrow such that the patent becomes useless.

Technicality:

There exist some crucial technical formalities that one must follow while patent drafting. Proofreading ensures that the patentee completes all the required formalities. Any sort of shortcomings in technical working may lead to the rejection of the application.

Also Read: Who is an IP Paralegal and why do You Need One?

How The Patent Proofreading Company serves you?

The Patent Proofreading Company serves you best when it comes to patent drafting services. We own a number of experienced and skilled Patent drafters to work on your projects. The handlers of our company receive the work details online in .doc or .pdf format. We provide you various patent proofreading benefits via another qualified drafting team. The delivery time is within the deadline. Also, you may check the status of the work and connect with us anytime. Moreover, you may even place the orders easily at very optimum prices. To get a hold of more of our services, do visit The Patent Proofreading Company.

* 1. **How to Avail Best Patent Search Services?**

Are you the one who invented it? Or is there any prior art? Do the patent search services verify if the technology already exists or is it owned by someone else?

Thus, to know about all the prior arts before initiating the R&D work, we need patent search services. It also searches for existing similar inventions. The researchers usually rely on typical sources such as conference documentation, scientific publications, the Internet, etc.

However, patent search services not only offer a vast resource about existing technologies but also present required information about the owner of the technology. Also, it defines the major players of the field.

Patent Search Services: When?

All the patent documents contain certain information. The patent documents must describe the inventions such that a normally skilled person can reproduce the art. The insufficient disclosure may result in the rejection of the application. They contain detailed information that is unavailable in the classic scientific publications. You must do a patent search on certain occasions such as:

Prior to research

You must do a prior art analysis if you are going to enter a research project. It may save you from wasting a huge amount of money by detecting preexisting inventions. Also, it allows you to find the best partners for collaborations. Thus, you may base your R&D work according to the already existing arts and continue with genuinely creative work.

After the research

There are possibilities that even if you give complete analysis to your work at the first stage, it may fall into unexplored territories. Also, there is a continuous publication of new inventions during your research. Thus, you must keep a permanent watch and try to detect the newest publications in your work field. It helps you to stay up-to-date on the steps made by others.

Before utilizing a product/process

It is necessary to perform a deeper “freedom to operate” search before commercializing a new product/process. It is so because; there is always a chance that a third party might be using a similar product/process.

The search detects valid patents that may oppose the exploitation or marketing of your invention. There is always a chance that your invention may be partially or fully covered by another patent even if you own a patent for your invention.

Moreover, this information helps to acquire statistical analysis about the most creative firms in a field. Also, it allows you to cancel a patent being used against you by detecting prior arts that were not considered or were accidentally skipped in the patent grant process.

Patent Search Services: How?

The Patent Search Services are usually a matter of combined “concepts” that define the subject you are searching for. You may retrieve concepts by imagining 10 different wordings defining the exact invention. In these 10 different wordings, you will surely find words that express the exact concepts.

However, you must not limit the searching for a given concept to a keyword search because patent documents are classified. You may perfectly express a concept with the help of a classification symbol.

Thus, a sound search strategy involves classification symbols and a combination of keywords.

To perform a thorough search, you need experienced searchers that can use professional tools. Also, it is not possible to become search proficient within a few hours of training. Thus, it is more efficient to hire an expert and not using free patent search tools.

How to find Professionals for Patent Search Services?

Our team flashes more than 10 years of experience in supporting patent prosecution with more than 200 full-time patent engineers more than 30 technology areas. Our experience includes working with multiple patent counsels from multiple countries for patent drafting.

We always stay up-to-date about the latest laws and all acceptable practices. Our patent engineers understand the value of comprehensive patent claims in terms of infringement litigation and patent commercialization. Moreover, we make sure to draft excellent quality patent applications with the best outcomes. Also, our prices are economical and budget-friendly. To grasp more of our services, please visit, Patent Drafting Catalyst.

* 1. **How to Write a Patent Claim?**

It is essential to write a patent claim in order to define the scope of the invention. Writing a patent claim means writing the details of the invention which one needs to furnish while drafting the patent application. Once you draft a patent claim, it becomes difficult to extend the protection beyond the patent claims. So, it is important for one to draft patent claims accurately in a proper manner. Also, there are two types of patent claims. The types are dependent claims and independent claims. We will discuss how one should write precise patent claims while drafting a patent application.

Key Points on how to write a patent claim

Accurately writing patent claims while filing the patent application to the USPTO is the key to receiving complete protection for the invention. The patent claim basically consists of three sections:

Preamble:

The preamble is the first part of the claim. The preamble states whether the claim is for an apparatus or a method. To write a preamble for apparatus, the claim could start with “An apparatus for making a mark on a writing surface”. To write a preamble for method, the claim could start with “A method for making a mark on a writing surface.”

Transitional Phrase:

The transitional phrase is the “comprising phrase”. One can use three different types of transitional phrase that is comprising, consisting of and consisting essentially of. You always want to use the “comprising” transitional phrase, as it gives the broadest protection.

Body of the Claim:

Everything after the transitional phrase is the body of the claim. The body of the claim defines the elements and limitations of the claims.

Related Article: Things to Do Before Patenting Something

Advantages of Writing Patent Claims

It is essential to write a patent claim in order to secure your invention. Patent claims define the contours of legal rights on the patent grant. According to the Patent Act, every complete specification must end with claims that define the scope of the invention for protection. Some of the advantages of writing a patent claim are:

An In-depth Description of the Invention:

The in-depth description of the invention includes describing each part of the invention. For a process, describe each step you start with and what you need to do to make the change. The description starts off with the general background information and progresses to more detailed

information about one’s invention and its parts. One can guide the reader to a full description of his invention by increasing levels of detail. Writing a thorough description is essential as one cannot add any new information to the patent application once filed. If one wants to make any changes, he can only do so by inferring the original patent drawings and description.

Protect Intellectual Property:

As we know, the patent claims to protect the intellectual property rights of the inventor, so it is important to draft them accurately. Well written claims are the foundation of a good patent. They help you keep the exclusive rights to your invention and design. They also give a basis for prosecution if someone makes or sell your invention or design.

Related Article: What is the role of an Intellectual Property Paralegal?

Technical Specification of the Invention:

If one wants to write a patent claim, he must mention the technical specification of the invention. Patent claims include all the technical specification of the invention. So, mentioning all the technicalities of the invention in a broad manner is very essential. Also, importantly one needs to shed lights on the other unknown technical aspects of the product while writing patent claims. The invention should be placed in its setting by specifying the technical field to which the invention relates. It is possible by mentioning the prior art portion of the independent claims in full by simply referring to it.

Looking for Patent Claim – Patent Drafting Catalyst

If you are looking to write a patent claim or seeking any assistance, Patent Drafting Catalyst (PDC) is the way to go. PDC is an exclusive group of the world’s leading patent drafting experts. Our team has more than 100 employees drafting quality patents. PDC is a team of professional experts who serve clients globally with our team helping innovators in drafting the patents. PDC has an in-depth understanding of drafting patents and have the ability to leverage the power of collaborative patent drafting. Our team of experts boasts years of experience in patent drafting and will provide you with the best possible solutions. Ethics is the first priority of PDC and our professionals will guide you in the right direction. We ensure that the legal rights of our clients are safe. To avail our services, Visit Patent Drafting Catalyst.